



# 光之子

1  
[圣光之子]

唐家三少引领新一轮幻想风暴强势来袭

本书是唐家三少的处女作 也是他得以一览群山的扛鼎之作  
书中某些素材来自于他和他妻子相识、相恋的真实故事

# Child of Light

(光之子)

## Book 01

### Holy Child of Light

Tang Jia San Shao

(唐家三少)

Story Description:

A Chinese fantasy webnovel under the sub-genre of “Magical Campus” by the author of Doulou Dalu, Kuang Shen and Shen Yin Wang Zuo. This is not a Xianxia.

The lazy Zhang Gong decides to learn light magic, a magic often ridiculed as useless for it's defensive nature. However, he eventually becomes the legendary Grand Magister. While trying to end the continent's east and west separation in order to unite all of the different races, he becomes every race's Child of Light.

Original Story can be found here: [Link](#)

# Volume 1

## Chapter 1: The First Chapter

Early morning. It's so bright that I had to open my lazy eyelids. Why does my house have to face the sun. Waking up everyday to the sun's glare makes me want to cry.

"Are you up yet you lazy bum!"

Hearing this pleasant voice, I immediately jumped down from bed

"I'm up"

"Hurry up and come eat breakfast! You're going to be late for school."

"Okay, okay. I'm coming."

Fortunately I reacted quickly, otherwise mother's pleasant voice would have started casting the elementary water magic, water bullet, to wake me up. But mother is an Intermediate water mage, so if I got hit I would truly be miserable. (However this is not the primary reason, because if mother shoots the water bullet at me, the blanket will get wet. When I go outside to dry my blankets, all of my friends ridicule me as "Bedwetting" Wu.

Right, I forgot to explain my background. Of course, I'm the hero of this book. My name is Zhang Gong. The continent I live in is called Tianwu and in the West is the continent of Libo. In the whole world there are only these two continents and of course, the rest of the world is covered by the ocean. In Tianwu there are three countries: the kingdom of plentiful resources, the Dalu kingdom, the kingdom of knights, the Xiuda Kingdom and the kingdom where I reside, the magic kingdom of Aixia.

The kingdom of Dalu has the largest territory, with it spanning three-sevenths of continent of Tianwu's land. Furthermore it is a rich in resources, wealthy and is overall a powerful kingdom. The main army is composed of warriors, while mages supplement the main army thanks to the funding the army receives. With an army such as this, the kingdom of

Dalu has the largest army of the three kingdoms.

The kingdom of Xiuda is a country which upholds the honor of knights therefore the country does not have many mages residing in it. Their army is composed entirely of warriors, with their cavalry being the most powerful in the whole Tianwu continent. Furthermore, they possess three regiments of the unique Earth Dragoons which is composed entirely of knights at the intermediate rank or higher. On the plains it is impossible for any opposing army to withstand the assault of Xiuda's cavalry without a barrier.

Speaking of my homeland, the kingdom of Aixia is in fact an authentic magic kingdom. Every single citizen, no matter how poor they are will receive an elementary education in magic. The kingdom possesses dozens of major magic schools as every citizen has the right to learn magic. (Of course, the prerequisite is that you have the money to pay the tuition.) Even if the citizen doesn't have money there is still the town's old Zhang who will teach some basic knowledge of magic.

In this country, magic education is divided into three stages:

The first stage: Elementary magic academy. Generally students enroll between the ages of 5 to 10 years old and will continue studying there for 5 years. Upon graduation the students will take an exam to become a magic disciple or receive the title of an elementary rank mage.

The second stage: Intermediate magic academy. Admission is based on what the students scored on the elementary magic academy graduation exam and naturally students with better results will be able to enter better magic academies. Intermediate magic academy doesn't have a set number school years, instead it works on the basis of credits. Only 60 credits are required before students can graduate and obtain the title of an intermediate rank mage. In the duchy the fastest record for graduating intermediate magic academy was still three years while it generally takes 5 to 10 years to graduate for the average student. Most of the kingdoms wealthy citizens stop learning magic sometime during intermediate magic academy. The number of intermediate rank mages in the kingdom is somewhere from 300,000 to 450,000.

The third stage: Advanced magic academy. In order to be admitted into an advanced magic academy, not only is an intermediate rank mage certificate required, but it is also required to pass the examination of the Mage's Union. After passing the exam, students once again be admitted to the academy corresponding to their exam results. According the Aixia's regulations, all students who attend an advanced magic academy will not have to pay any tuition fees. The reason that all costs will be covered by the kingdom is for the kingdom's magic talent to flourish. The most prestigious magic academy is the Royal Magic Academy where only those with great magical talent are admitted. Furthermore, they have extremely rigorous examinations even for a prince. Princesses also must pass examinations before they will be admitted. After graduating from an advanced magic academy, the results of the graduation exam will determine which certificate the student receives.

Tianwu continent's three human kingdoms are extremely united because they have a common enemy, the Western continent's magic race and beast clans.

In the Western continent, there are two kingdoms. The Holy Light Empire is ruled by the magic race while the beast clans rule the Valiant Mist Empire. The magic race looks very similar to humans with the only difference being that their eyes are purple. Those of the magic race are naturally ambitious and aggressive while they inherently posses darkness magic. On the other hand, the beast clans are unable to use magic but their powerful bodies are their best weapon in addition to their high magic defense. The beast clan's ace corps in comparison to their main army is even more frightening.

The Eastern and Western continents are separated by the Tianduo mountains. Humanity sacrificed millions of warriors in order to build the most powerful mountain fortress, Telun fortress. Since the magic fortress have been built the two beast clans could not climb past the pond called Lei, enabling the continent to enjoy peace for the last 200 years.

In this world, there are six elements of magic: light, darkness, water, fire, earth and wind. Besides these six elements of magic, there are also

special elements of magic such as summoning magic, spatial magic and so on.

Magies ranks are divided into: novice mage (apprentice mage), elementary rank mage, intermediate mage, advanced mage, great mage, magic scholar, magister and the legendary Grand Mage.

Magic spells are divided 9 ranks: ranks 1 to 3 are of the elementary class, ranks 4 and 5 are of the intermediate class, ranks 6 to 8 are of the advanced class and rank 9 spells are of the forbidden class. Forbidden class spells require six or more magisters working together in order to cast. A mage who is able to cast a forbidden class spell singlehandedly would be considered a Grand Mage and only one has ever appeared in the legends.

Warriors ranks are divided into: elementary warrior, intermediate warrior, advanced warrior, knights, earth knight, heaven knight, holy knight, sword saint and the legendary War God.

Battle spirit classes are divided into: battle spirit, earth battle spirit, heaven battle spirit, god battle spirit and holy battle spirit which enables whoever possesses it to be unscratched by all spells below the forbidden class.

Summoned beasts have two types:the power growth type, which grow more powerful as they mature, and the body rank type where they will remain as powerful as they were when summoned. The higher the rank their body is, the more powerful the beast is. From ranks 1 to 9, power growth type are very rare. Furthermore, if the power growth type summoned beast encounters a body rank type summoned beast, they attempt to kill each other in order to prevent their opponent from growing any stronger.

Money is divided into: 1 diamond coin = 100 gold coins = 10 000 silver coins =

1 000 000 copper coins

Magic crystals from highest value to lowest is:purple, jade, red, blue, white, black, green

The background information is here, following this will be the main story.

A new chapter is about to begin. The wheel of history is moving to touch his destiny.

# Chapter 2: Choosing the Light Element

Cong cong

I quickly ate two mouthfuls of breakfast then hurriedly left the house for school.

“Walk faster, you don’t want to be late otherwise the teacher will have a bad impression of you. Properly learn magic! Pay attention to the road and come home quickly after school! (Author: 300 words omitted here)”

Mother sure is amazing, saying these words everyday, it’s impossible for me to not know them by heart by now. However, her concern for me makes my heart warm.

My name is Zhang Gong, 7 years old this year and living in the landlocked kingdom of Aixia’s second largest city, in the small village beside Senke city. As my family is relatively wealthy so mother and father were very hopeful and brought me to the city’s Sunke Elementary Magic Academy in order to learn magic. I’m now in the third grade. Since a young age I have shown interest in magic but by nature I’m a lazy person. In more than two years I have only learned some elementary class magic and some basic magic theory.

Today is the day I have to tell the teacher what element of magic I chose. This will determine what class I’m in. (Each mage has major and minor magic elements. They will only have one major element which they concentrate on while they can have up to three minor magic elements to supplement their major element.) What should I choose...? I like fire magic, but it feels a bit too dangerous. Since my motto is ‘safety first’ it really conflicts. So what should I choose...? Which magic is the safest?

Consideration....

Ah, yes, light magic seems the safest. In the past, teacher said that there are no attack spells of the light element past the elementary class. It’s basically purely defensive or curative and there shouldn’t be any opportunities to test it on others. Yea, I’m choosing this. (Due to the kingdom of Aixia constantly promoting magic, students in magic

academies often have to tests to increase their practical experience and confirm their magic level. However, because of our low magic levels, no one has come to test the lower grade's magic levels yet. Generally they will test it in grade 5 or in the intermediate magic academy.

I'm truly am smart! What minor magic to choose? I'll choose wind magic and learn some air blasting techniques (Major wind magic) or something. This way I can quickly escape in case of danger. Wait, no, no, wind magic is fast but it isn't capable of instant movement. Mother told me there was a spatial magic scholar who could teleport about 10km. (And he is only a magic scholar!) Spatial magic is pretty good, so I'll choose it instead then!

After such deep thought, I couldn't help but take a deep breath.

Later, a light element Grand Mage would be called the Child of Light. Zhang Gong will become a powerful figure with a widespread name. He will not escape the clutches of the hand of fate. His light magic has been chosen to be spread through the continent. (And his spatial magic which he often uses to escape.)

I happily walked to town and turned my thoughts to this beautiful life. I couldn't restrain myself from laughing due to my happiness.

“Zhang Gong”

“You’re so annoying Ao De. You scared me!”

He is both my best friend and my classmate.

“What elements of magic did you pick?”

“I’ve chosen the light element for the major and the spatial element as the minor.”

“That’s just like you! Ha ha.”

“What do you know! Why don’t you tell me why I picked these two then.”

I’m a surprised by Ao De.

“Of course, since your motto is “safety first’.”

“So annoying! You’re correct. What did you choose then?”

“I chose water element as my major and spatial element as my minor!” said Ao De with his chest out and a proud look on his face.

“I understand why you picked the spatial element (of course he would pick the same as me), but why did you pick the water element?”

“You wouldn’t understand” said Ao De while looking like a little adult.

“Hurry up and say why.”

“There are a lot of girls who pick the water element! There are basically no boys. I can bully them and take their snacks! Haha”

“This young yet you’re still so bad. I’m going to tell your father.”

I raised my head high. But then I thought, though the water element has more girls, after entering an intermediate magic academy if he continued bullying the girls, there would be a tragic consequences. The older brothers of this village were beaten horribly when they bullied the academy’s beauties. Ao De will truly be miserable after he grows up from a brat, thinking this I can not help but look at Ao De with disgust.

“Come learn magic of the water element with me!”

Because he doesn’t want me to expose him, he’s even trying to draw me in!

“No need. Just get me some good treats in the future and I won’t tell you father. Okay?”

“Okay. No problem”

“We’re at the school. Hurry up, we’re going to be late soon.”

Sunke City’s Elementary Magic Academy is the city’s biggest magic academy. It occupies over 20 000m<sup>2</sup> and there are a lot of practice fields and faculty buildings. Ao De and I are in class 3-4.

“Good thing we’re not late, otherwise the old witch will punish us again” Ao De muttered to me.

“Be quiet. The old witch is coming. (Of course, the old witch is our

class's teacher. The 50 year old fire element advanced mage, teacher Lin. She very strict and she matured into an unattractive woman. So me and my classmates gave her the nickname of 'Old Witch'"

"Morning students."

"Good morning teacher."

As soon as the old witch came in the class fell silent, because no one wanted this old volcano to erupt.

"Have all of students thought properly about what magic element to choose?"

"Yes we have"

"Good. Come line up in the front to register then."

When I registered, the old witch looked at me and said "You're choosing the light element as your major?"

"Yes, that's right teacher."

"Did you know that in the whole kingdom those who choose the light element as their major besides the professionals are only monks who use it for treatment?"

"What? Why is that? I didn't know!"

It turns out that 200 years ago when the two continents first collided, there were a lot of humans learning the light magic because light magic is the weakness the magic race. In the war, intermediate light element mage had two main functions, as intermediate light spells are capable of basic treatment of the injured and damaging the magic race. Light and darkness spells also had two other functions. But today, 200 years later, due to the peaceful 200 years without war, people are able to live peacefully. Thus light spells have slowly become entirely useless. In comparison to the practical water, fire, earth and wind spells, the light element is fairly basic. Furthermore, in intermediate class light spells are almost entirely defensive or for healing purposes. So most people choose who favor being aggressive choose the water, fire, earth or wind element

as their major and although slightly inferior to light spells, water spells are also able to heal. However, due to water spells having offensive spells and defensive spells in a more even ratio, even the girls who want to learn how healing spells give up the light element in favor of the water element. Leaving only the peace-loving monks to choose the light element as their major.

For the seven year old me, of course I wouldn't know about this. After the teachers explanation, I told her about my motto of 'safety first' and that I was set on choosing the light magic.

"Well then, all of the students who have selected their magic element, it's an early dismissal today. Tomorrow, you will all be divided into classes according to the magic element you have chosen.

Yea! Class is over!

The Child of Light's light element education begins, how it will turn out tomorrow, so we will find out.

## Chapter 3: My Teacher

Feeling accomplished, I returned home and see that mom has already prepared dinner.

“You’re home! Were you good today in class?”

“I was very good! Right, mom today I picked the major and minor magic elements I want to study.”

“Ah! Come quickly husband, our son has picked his major and minor magic elements!”

“Really? Son did you choose wind magic?”

Hearing the news, dad quickly ran over.

“Definitely not, obviously our son chose to study water magic, right son?”

With eyes brimming with hope mom looked at me.

My mom is an intermediate water element mage and dad is an intermediate wind mage. Since the moment I have been born, they have been arguing about what magic element I should should as my major.

Watching their eyes brimming with hope, ah, what am I going to do? I forgot all about them. My small brain thought quickly on how to answer them.

“No, no, not at all. The major magic element I chose was neither the wind element nor the water element.”

“What?” The two of them looked at me with surprised eyes.

“Then what did you choose? Did you choose the earth element or the fire element? Either of those is unbefitting of my son. You didn’t even consult me or your mother of choosing your magic element. This month you’re not getting an allowance!”

“Is your ass itching for a beating!?” said dad with a threatening look

“No no. Mom, dad don’t be upset. I didn’t choose the fire element or the earth element, I chose the light element. I chose it for your sakes!”

“What? Because of us?”

“Yes, of course it’s because of you two, but also for our family’s harmony. It is like this, think about it, if I chose the water element, dad would be upset. If I chose the wind element, then mother would certainly kill me, so I didn’t choose either of them. Fire magic and mom’s water magic mutually suppress each other, so for my gentle, beautiful and kind mom, I couldn’t possibly choose it. Earth magic and dad’s wind magic also mutually suppress each other, so for my handsome, charming and powerful dad, I couldn’t possibly choose it either. So I chose the light magic which doesn’t oppose anyone else’s magic in the family. Because I was thinking about our whole family’s happiness, this is what I chose!”

As I said this I looked at mother and father with eyes brimming with tears.

Looking at the teary eyed me, mother couldn’t help but come and comfort me.

“Our Zhang Gong is such a good son, doing this for the sake of his parents.”

Father also came and embraced us. I really like this loving and harmonious atmosphere but I did not expect some nonsense and two tall hats will fool them into uniting. Ha ha. (tl: some sort of chinese idiom I think? Not too sure about it’s meaning if it’s an idiom.) “Zhang Gong, in the future you must study properly. You must become at the very least an advanced rank mage!”

“Yes father, I definitely won’t disappoint you two.”

Mom looked like she suddenly remembered something. “Zhang Gong, light spells in the elementary rank and intermediate rank didn’t have any attack magic right since people rarely study light magic.”

“Don’t worry, you two can be assured that I will definitely become an advanced mage.

This has become a dirty trick. There’s no way I want to work so hard or choose light magic. Haha, I’ll trick them first then worry about it. “Well

fine, lets eat and celebrate our Zhang Gong's choice.”

A night without words.

The next day, in the morning working up by both the sun and mother's call. I eat some breakfast and Aote is already here.

“Zhang Gong it's time to go to school. Today the classes will be divided.”

“I'm coming. Let's go!”

Just like yesterday, we step into the classroom.

The old witch walked in.

“Enough, quiet down students. We're going to start dividing the classes. In this group of 5 classes, everyone has already picked their major and minor elements to study. All 5 classes will be rearranged into new classes according to the element that was chosen. Three classes for fire, two classes for water, two classes for wind and one class for earth. Now I will announce the classes each of you will be in. As I read off the classes, go to the class you have been assigned.” There's no need to question the fire element's attack power.

Impossible, how come there isn't a light element class? A huge question mark is produced in my mind.

“Tang Di, fire element class one. Li Cha, fire element class one..... Ao De, water element class two.....”

Except for me, all of my classmates have been assigned their class and one by one they left to for their assigned class. After the last student leaves for their class.

“Zhang Gong, follow me to see your teacher. Since there are only 10 light element mages in the world the academy has specially arranged for a teacher to give you a specialized tutoring.”

Oh no! Specialized tutoring, it must be a temperamental teacher. My death is assured now. (I can't suffer this old witch's pain!) While thinking this, I walked with teacher out of the classroom.

Arriving at the teacher's office on the third floor, isn't this the principals office?

"Go on Zhang Gong, come in with me." seeing me hesitating, the old witch gave me a pull.

"Oh, good, teacher."

Entering the principal's office, I see the principal behind a big office desk smiling at me.

"Teacher Lin, is this the Zhang Gong that chose to study the light element in your class? Let me introduce myself, my major element is space while my minor element is light and at the rank the rank of Great mage. My name is Xi Yu Xiu, but call me teacher Xiu."

My eyes followed the principal's hands. Ah, this is going to be my teacher? A 50 year old man? Looking him from head to toe, he looks like a spotless purple robed mage shaking with energy. On his chest is a mage badge with four stars. (A mage's rank can been seen by the number of stars on his badge. Each rank risen corresponds with an additional star while an apprentice mage has no stars.) With a serious face he looks quite ferocious.

"Hello teacher Xiu, please look after this Zhang Gong."

"Teacher Lin, no need to be courteous."

"So you are Zhang Gong. Hey, you better study magic properly under me. I'll have you know I'm very strict. I hope you will study hard as I will try my best to impart my knowledge onto you."

What can I say, my eyes were already despondent. Why did I forget that I will become cannon fodder! So miserable! God of Creation, you treat me so unfairly!

"Thank you teacher. I will put in great efforts."

"It seems from now on I will be having hard times."

On the way home, Ao De asked me who is my magic teacher. In order to save face, I boasted that I had a very benevolent teacher. Ao De enviously

tells me that his class's teacher is extremely fierce. How could he possibly be fiercer than Teacher Xiu. I can only hope that tonight Teacher Xiu has a heart attack and becomes unable to teach me.

Right as Teacher Xiu was eating dinner, he sneezed and thought 'Who's cursing me?'

Later, historians records of Xi Yu Xiu(Teacher Xiu) show that: If there hadn't been the Great Mage Xi Lu Xiu to build the foundations in to the Child of Light when he was still a child, then there wouldn't be the Child of Light as we know it.

Laying this so-called solid foundation had such a great effect that the Grand Mage, known as the Child of Light, trembles at the name of Xi Lu Xiu even thirty years later.

## Chapter 4: Basic Knowledge

“Zhang Gong, hey, what time do you think it is now.” Teacher Xiu said with eyes full of fury.

“Ah! Teacher why are you here? Ah, sorry I overslept this morning.”

The truth is that I was terrified of meeting this terrifying teacher today, so I ended up walking in circles in the front of the school as I didn’t dare to go in. I didn’t expect him to come out, I’m going to be miserable.

As expected “You overslept? Then your willpower must not be good. The most important thing for a mage to practice is their willpower. Then you’ll need to be stimulated first then. Go run five laps around the school until you’re vigilant.

With no way out, I began running at a slow and leisurely pace.

“My name is Xi Lu Xiu, obey my call, come forth my servant, Light Tiger.”

This is a level 5 magical beast. (Every person who studies magic each has their own magical beast. They can have more than one, but summoning more than one will consume a greater amount of willpower.

“Zhang Gong, you have to run faster. If you get caught by him, you know what will happen to you.”

Seeing the light tiger who is 4 to 5 times bigger than me, gave me a lot of motivation. The fear of getting eaten drew my strength out and quickly ran straight ahead. Teacher’s light tiger followed me not too slowly or not too close. When I slow down a bit, a light arrow flies over and scares me, so I immediately speed up again. (elementary and intermediate light spells only have one attack spell that’s at rank 2)

Ah, I’m truly miserable.

Finally, I finished my run which was like a long journey. Teacher Xiu unexpectedly let me rest for 15 minutes.

Ah, how does my life have so much suffering.

“Resting time is over, now we’re going to see what you have learned already. What spells do you know Zhang Gong?”

“I know the illumination spell.”

“What else?”

“Nothing else.”

“In two years you have only learned the illumination spell.”

Carrying on, Teacher Xiu asked me many questions regarding my knowledge of basic magic theory and then some problem questions. My knowledge of basic magic theory was horrible since I mostly sleep in class. However, for the problem questions, my answers were really good, as after all I am very clever.

Teacher Xiu looked at me for two minutes then let out a heavy sigh.

“How did I meet such a lazy student, ah, no wonder Teacher Lin asked me to teach you. Although I know your scores are near the bottom, I still didn’t expect it was bad to this extent. Well, lets end class for today. Don’t be late tomorrow.” I encountered such a poor student and he’s also helpless.

What, he allowed me to finish class already, and it’s still the morning. He’s so great!

“Right, I’ll give you some homework to do.” saying so, he handed me two thick books.

Receiving them, I took look. One of them says “Basic Magic Theory” while the other says “Major Light Element Spells and Explanations”. Giving me this, what does he expect me to do with it. I cannot help but wonder about his intentions.

“For tomorrow, you must memorize the basics of magic theory so you can make up for your originally poor knowledge of magic theory. I don’t want my students to be lacking in comparison to others. The other textbook is for later but you can also take a look at it. Well, you can go home now.”

“Teacher, the whole book of basic magic theory must be memorized?” I still hold onto a minuscule bit of hope.

“Of course, tomorrow I will check your knowledge. If you want to continue playing with light tiger, then you can not memorize it.

With these words, Teacher Xiu returned to the teacher’s office, leaving me in a daze.

What kind of teacher is this. Ah, he really is a demon, giving me only one day to memorize a 300 to 400 page book.

Today’s weather is quite good, sunny and no wind, makes a stark contrast with my mood.

Back at home, mother and father weren’t home, both of them were working. (Father is a metal moulder while mother is the village healer.)

I take out “Basic Magic Theory” and flipped through it. Although I’m lazy, thinking about this afternoon’s demon’s punishment.... My calf muscles are still clenching. What other alternative is there but to memorize it.

Gradually the sun went down. With my tireless efforts, I finally managed to memorise 10 pages. Only 10 pages. Ah, my life is over.

“Oi, who came home so early?” Usually the first to come home everyday is my mother.

“Me.”

Hearing my faint voice, mother quickly came over.

“My baby child, how come you’re home so early today? Why are you so listless, did you do something wrong and got scolded?”

“No mother.” Thinking about the impossible task, I rushed into mother’s arms and started crying. After all, I am only 7 years old. Hugging me, mother asked:

“What is it? Quickly tell mom. Is some bullying you?”

“Yes, yes! My new teacher is really horrible. The task he left for me, it

was impossible to begin with, but he also punishes me too!"

"Ah! What task? How is this teacher punishing you?"

Reluctantly, I told mother what happened today at school.

"Zhang Gong, you're not right. In the past, mother knew your studies weren't too good, but mother didn't think your studies were bad to this extent. Unexpectedly, even after two years you haven't learned the basics. Teacher's actions are correct. For a slacker like you, a ferocious teacher is best for teaching you. Mom and dad have gotten you so spoiled."

"What your mother says is correct. Let father see what kind of impossible task you were given."

Father also came home.

After looking at my homework, father smiled.

"My foolish son, aren't you usually very smart, then how come you're so foolish right now. Although this book is very thick, you don't have to memorize it. Let your mother go cook dinner and father will coach you." Afterwards, father taught me how finish this impossible task.

"Look Zhang Gong, this section primarily talks about applications of magic theory. In our world, there are many elements, the 6 basic elements you know about right. In order to use magic, you must communicate with your element properly, making it recognize you then gathering it around you. Afterwards, through an incantation you transform the magic essence gathered to achieve what you want. You see, this is magic."

"My name is Li Ao Wei, wind essence hear my call, come to me, protect your friend - Wind Shield!" Father, while explaining to me used actual examples to inspire me. He divided the whole book into several parts, with each part having a main idea. Then he explained each part's theory to me. Through father's pointers, the clever me immediately found a trick and gradually aroused my interest in magic.

..... .....

"Well, it's very late now. Only a bit is left, so tomorrow morning we'll

wake up early and finish it.”

“Okay father. I never thought magic was like this.” Receiving not just a little magic theory knowledge, I can’t help but indulge in how profound magic is. (In one night I have gained more knowledge than the two years I spent leisurely.)

“Zhang Gong, before mother and father weren’t good with too little concern for your studies. Father will tutor you often from now on. Our Zhang Gong will definitely become an outstanding mage.”

While patting my head, father kindly looked at me.

“Father, I will definitely properly study magic!”

The Child of Light didn’t yet know whether he was able to walk this path, but after this first time studying magic, he truly studied magic properly afterwards.

## Chapter 5: Lying Down Meditation

As a result of father's tutoring, I was eventually able to master the basics of magic theory.

"Is it right? It seems like you've finished yesterday's task. Follow me."

In the morning just as I arrived, Teacher Xiu assessed my knowledge. Although I cannot answer immediately, given some time I could find the answer. Hey, my efforts weren't in vain. I finally passed Old Xi's (Teacher Xiu) test so I don't have to run laps today.

I followed Teacher Xiu to a small house in the rear court. This is related to teaching me magic?

"Zhang Gong, you have an understanding of the basics now, but you must continue to enrich yourself. Do you know what magic power is dependent on?"

"Magic level."

"Then how do we use advanced magic?"

"Incantations!"

"Nonsense." Teacher Xiu gave me a sudden fright.

"In order to use advanced magic, you must have a lot of spiritual power. Your basic knowledge is very simple. The most effective way to increase your spiritual power is through meditation. Starting today and for the next three months, you will meditate everyday. Tomorrow I need to make a trip to the capital and I will probably be back in three months."

My heart was overjoyed, I'll finally be liberated. However, Teacher Xiu's next words brought me back down to earth.

"

"Zhang Gong, teacher's major magic is spatial magic. Although I am a Great Magician, teleporting back here is still possible. If I suddenly come back to investigate and find that you are slacking off, then you will become a national long distance running champion."

With a stern face, Teacher Xiu threatened me.

"While meditating you must concentrate spiritually, so you can feel the light essence. Try to gather and store as much of the essence as you can, this way you will gradually increase your spiritual power. During the time I am gone, you must meditate everyday for at least 8 hours. Are you listening. If I come back and your spiritual power doesn't satisfy me...."

Listening to the words of this demon, my heart has become discouraged. Meditating for 8 hours every day will bore me to death.

"The basic method for meditation, I'm sure you already know how to do it. Meditation also has some techniques, so you can go to the library and look up some books on it. Find a meditation technique you like, this way the effect will be even greater. Wait until I return then I will teach you the specifics of using magic."

"Okay then, you can start meditating now."

Under his gaze, I sat on the mat, closed my eyes and began meditating.

.....

Although the demon is gone, I am unable to accept the beautiful 49 years. (TL: No idea if I translated this part correctly. Perhaps it's an idiom? If anyone wants to check the working version and tell me what it means, that would be appreciated.) How come increasing spiritual power is so bothersome, I'll go to the library first and look at some books.

Located in the northeast corner of the academy is the library. I browsed through many books about meditation and finally found what I wanted. Haha, I'm finally freed. While rummaging through books in the corner, I found a yellow book. It looks very old, but the author is actually a light mage who wrote the book 150 years ago. The book said it is only necessary to sense the magic essence in order to gather it. Any position is fine, and the book also had a few examples. There is lying meditation, sitting meditation and others.

I can lay down and meditate. For a lazy person such as me, the lying position and the sitting position are two completely different concepts.

Haha, this is very good!

Back at the classroom (small cottage) I was the only person there. I follow the book's instructions, laid down, gathered myself and began feeling the light essence in the air. Gradually, I begin to sense the abundance of light essence in my surroundings. The light essence gave me a feeling of kindness and affection, just like mother and father's embrace. Ah, so comfortable.

"You are the light essence?" I asked the spiritual world.

I felt a sense of warmth surrounding me.

"Uncle and aunty light essences, how are you. My name is Zhang Gong Wei. From now on will you play with me?"

Again there was a sense of warmth.

"Then from now on we are friends!"

I felt the light essence forming thin threads that flowed into the space between my eyebrows. A surge of warm energy surrounds me. If anyone was there to witness this, they would surely see a layer of white light surrounding me. This continued for a long time, even I don't know how long. I gradually began to sense the light essence through a communication channel located between my eyebrows. With my whole body so warm and comfortable, I unknowingly fell asleep.

What I didn't know was that I unexpectedly gained the recognition of the light essences accidentally. On the continent, every mage practices magic by sensing the surrounding magic essence, then seizing control of them in order to gradually increase their own magic power. Following their increase in magic power, their spiritual power will also increase. In order to achieve this, they will cultivate. Personally, I don't want to meditate, so the lazy me unexpectedly looked for a way to increase magic power without putting in any effort. Naturally, I don't force the elements to gather around me and instead I communicate with the light essence, appearing innocent. To my surprise, the light essence recognized me. Since then, my magic gathering speed and recovery speed is 3 times faster than the average persons. I really did become friends with the light

essences.

Unknowingly, time passed by quickly and I felt someone push me. Bewildered, I opened my eyes to see that it was mother.

“Mother, why are you here?”

“Mother was almost worried to death. It’s so late yet you still didn’t come home. Just now I came to find the principal and he said you should be in this classroom. He said you studied so hard you fell asleep.”

Ah! I looked outside at the sky and it’s actually evening! It felt as if I had laid down for just a little bit. This method of meditation is really good! I quietly checked my magic power, unexpectedly it increased a lot for the tiny amount of magic power I had before. It has already become a small ball of light. Wow, the effect is so good, simply too good.

“Let’s hurry home, aren’t you hungry. Seeing you working so hard, mother is really happy!” How could mother know that actually, the teacher wasn’t here at all and I just slept the whole day. Haha, this is too good! Everyday I can practice while sleeping.

After returning home and eating dinner, I went to my room.

I truly am a genius, to actually come up with such a good idea. Hehe, I cannot help but be a bit narcissistic. Right, my magic power increased. Then the strength of my magic should have also increased, I better test it out. I held out my hand.

“My name is Zhang Gong Wei, light essences, for your friend, illuminate everything in sight!”

I used the only spell I know - Illumination spell.

With my spell, I felt a warm energy flowing from the between my eyebrows along with my body’s internal magic power, surging to my outstretched hand. A white ball of light emerged from my hands. It emitted a soft glow. Although it was very bright, it wasn’t dazzling.

Wow, the effect is so good. Before I could only produce a little bit of light in my hands. Yea, it’s too great, my illumination spell already has

the best lighting effects. I feel the energy continuously flowing into the palms of my hands, maintaining the ball's brightness. The light essence also continually flowed from between my eyebrows; there wasn't a single sign of my internal magic power depleting.

Too good, this is the way to practice! In the future I don't have to use exhausting methods of meditating to increase my magic power.

Well, time to sleep.

I'll use the lying meditation method to sleep. This way of sleeping is very comfortable.

So, my daily schedule is: get up early - eat breakfast - go to the school's classroom and meditate (sleep) - go home for dinner - then meditation again.

Three months later, with my constant "effort", my internal magic power gradually increased. My ball of light is now 5 times bigger.

Every time I meditate I feel more and more intimate with the light essences. They are like my elders who meticulously take care of me and I am like their child, everyday in their arms like a spoiled child.

And so, the Child of Light created a unique method of meditation. which later became the source of this Grand Mage's endless magic power.

# Chapter 6: Once Again Meeting the Demon

Ow, that hurts. The meditating (sleeping) me didn't know what suddenly attacked me.

Drowsily opening my eyes, a solemn face appeared in front of me.

"Old Demon!!" I couldn't help but shout.

"What? What did you just say?" Teacher Xiu just came back and is looking at me with some gruesome eyes.

"Ah, no it's nothing. I wasn't thinking of you just as you came back Teacher Xiu!"

"Really now? Then what's this about an Old Demon~"

My head became soaked with cold sweat. "Oh, I just now had a nightmare where lots of demons attacked me. It definitely wasn't about you! How could such a kind teacher possibly be called a demon."

"Oh, is it now?" said Teacher Xiu while giving me a doubtful look.

"I told you to come here to meditate but instead you came here to sleep. My name is Xi Yu Xiu, obey my call, come forth my servant, Light Tiger! Zhang Gong, go for a run right now."

"There's no need teacher. I've been meditating really hard lately. I was just a bit tired just now, so I took a small nap." I can't possibly tell him I was doing lying meditation, who would believe that while sleeping I can practice as well.

"Really? Then I'm going examine you. Come over here."

"Oh!" I walked to Teacher Xiu.

Teacher Xiu took out a magic stone (A magic crystal type. Specialized for detecting and measuring a mage's magic power) for magic appraisal from his dimensional space (A space that can store things. Only intermediate and above mages can use and the space is proportional to the mage's magic power) and gave it to me.

"Repeat after me. Hear my name, light essence, obey my call, gather in

front of me!"

"Hear my name, light essence, obey my call, gather in front of me!"

Following the incantation, both the light essence between my eyebrows and my internal light essence orb surged towards the magic stone in the palms of my hands. The magic stone emitted a faint glow. The faint glow gradually increased. I let my internal magic power continually flow into the magic stone, knowing that the magic power has reached equilibrium with the magic power flowing from between my eyebrows. The light emitted by the magic stone lit up the whole house, enabling one to see all the details. Unexpectedly, my illumination spell is good enough now.

Teacher Xiu was stunned. "You really didn't slack off ah. I really didn't expect that in three months time, your magic power as reached the level of an elementary mage. You must have meditated for at least 18 hours a day, wait, that's not right. Even 24 hours of meditation a day couldn't possibly achieve such a good effect."

On this continent, even with diligent cultivation it takes one year from not knowing any magic to becoming an elementary mage.

"It seems you really are a genius at light magic!"

"Of course I am, after all, I am extremely smart! Hahaha~~" I can't help but be proud of myself.

"What are you pleased about, this is nothing. I still need to see your future performance. What use is light magic power if it's not applied properly." Seeing how proud of myself I was, Teacher Xiu immediately poured cold water on me.

Teacher Xiu dismissed the light tiger so I secretly wiped my sweat. This event can be considered over; looks like I won't be having a funeral, haha. (These days I already regard lying meditation as sleeping. It's a lot more comfortable than the way I slept before.)

"It's very late now, hurry up and go home. Tomorrow you will start learning light magic. Remember to bring that book on light magic that I gave you."

“Okay, goodbye Teacher Xiu.” I ran out of the classroom as fast as the wind.

Looking at the figure of my back as I’m leaving, Teacher Xiu revealed a faint smile. ‘It seems this child is very suitable for learning light magic.’

.....

“Morning Teacher Xiu!” Because I successfully completed the task yesterday, I thought I didn’t have to run today and was in a particularly good mood. So today I came early.

“Today you came early huh. Did you bring the book?”

“I brought it.”

“Good, today we will begin learning light magic. A lot of intermediate and advanced magic spells are derived from elementary light spells. So learning elementary spells is very important. Today, the first magic you will learn - Light Shield”

“Light Shield?”

“Correct. After learning the basics of magic theory, you should know that elementary and intermediate light spells are basically all used for defense and recovery.”

“My name is Xi Yu Xiu, light essence obey my call, converge in front of me and block all evil!” A layer of faint, transparent light appeared in front of Teacher Xiu. “Light Shield can block all elementary magic attacks. The duration of the spell is dependant on the amount of magic power infused into it. You try it now.”

“My name is Zhang Gong Wei, oh great light essences, converge in front of me and block all evil!”

“That’s wrong. You recited it wrong. It should be ‘obey my call’. Ah, how can....”

A Light Shield thicker than Teacher Xiu’s appeared in front of me, stopping the words from coming out of his mouth.

“You recited it wrong, yet the effect is greater than the effect of the

proper incantation. How can this be.”

“I don’t know. I just felt like the light essence is like my elder so I shouldn’t command them and they also they speak so I recited it this way.

Teacher Xiu tried using the incantation I used but it still had the same effect as the incantation he originally used. He couldn’t make heads or tails of this mystery.

In fact, it is because the light essence has already approved of me due to me respecting them more. Therefore they are more willing to help me which has caused this situation. Although Teacher Xiu is a Great Mage, he is not a major in light magic nor is he recognized by the light essences. So naturally he is unable to reach the effect of my spell.

“Good, now test the effect of your Light Shield.”

“My name is Xi Yi Xiu, gentle water, obey my call, assemble in front of me and eliminate my enemy - Water Bullet!” (When a mage reaches the rank of Great Mage, they can use any magic element as long as the spell is an elementary class spell.) The 5 cm in diameter water bullet rushed towards me. I couldn’t help but close my eyes in fright. I felt the light shield I casted vibrate once and I didn’t feel any pain. Opening my eyes, I saw that the water bullet has already disappeared.

Haha, it seems my light shield is full of power!

Teacher Xiu seeing this situation, began attacking my light shield with various elementary class spells of various elements. When the barrage started, the light shield only convulsed a bit and nothing more. However, gradually the magic consumption of the light shield overcame my magic recovery rate. Near the critical point I shouted “Teacher, teacher, I can’t persist anymore. Please spare me.”

Teacher Xiu finally finished his magical assault.

“It seems the effect of your light shield is pretty good. It’s stronger than average. However, using the light shield also requires some technique.” After that, Teacher Xiu began teaching me techniques for using the light shield such as, as long as it’s not an omni-directional magic attack, I can

dodge as much as possible and use the light shield on attacks I can't dodge. This way, the magic consumption will be greatly reduced.

Like this, I started learning my first elementary light spell. In the next 10 days, everyday Teacher Xiu would use all kinds of elementary magic to attack me in order to let me become familiar with using the light shield. This tired out the miserable me and when I asked him to change his teaching methods, he didn't say anything but just summoned his light tiger. I would immediately say his previous teaching methods were good. He truly deserves to be called the demon teacher. Ah, with great difficulty I solved the meditation problem and I am ready to take the next lesson. (TL: Wasn't really sure about this part of the translation. I just took contextual clues and tried to make it make some sense.) It seems that with my fate in the hands of this demon, I cannot be lazy. However, fortunately no matter how much magic power I consume during the day, I just have to do lying meditation at night and the next day I'll be full of life. Additionally, I feel that my magic power is increasing at an even greater rate than before.

Thus, the great Child of Light began his life of endless learning.

## Chapter 7: Spatial Magic

Due to Teacher Xiu's "hands-on" teaching, in half a year my magic power level had a qualitative leap. Under the demon's harsh training, I am now able to endure 2 hours of the demon's magic assault. Every morning when I get to school I practice defence, defence and more defence. I do this until my strength is exhausted, then Teacher Xiu allows me to meditate and restore some magic power. In the afternoon he continues attacking me with magic.

In the last six months I have learned all of the elementary light element defence spells. I always thought that Teacher Xiu was actually a sadist while I'm just a pitiful little sand bag for him to ravage.

When I arrived at the door of the classroom, I first casted a light shield on myself then casted a light mirror to reflect magic. (Light mirror is a spell I learned in this short period of time and is my favorite spell. It's a reflection type defence magic that I am very skilled at.) Carefully controlling these two magics, I opened the door. I was really scared as everyday as soon as I enter I will be suddenly bombarded with magic. I will often get covered in dirt, so right now I'm casting some good defensive spells on myself before I enter the classroom.

"Good morning Teacher Xiu."

What greeted me was a light arrow. I hastily leaned my body to the side while using the light mirror's plane to deflect the light arrow. So why did I deflect the spell. The reason is that although the light mirror can reflect spells, it will consume a lot of my magic power. However, deflecting it can greatly decrease the power of the incoming spell and the effect is really good. Now the power of these elementary spells is already too strong. Generally, I fuse the light shield and light mirror to create a new basin-sized shield on my left. For now I'm calling it the light prism shield. Although it isn't an omni-directional defence, due to the compression of light essence, the defence power is enhanced greatly. Moreover, it can reflect magic so it's really effective. Teacher Xiu used an intermediate class spell to attack me but within this short period of time, it is unable

to break my light prism shield. (TL: Light mirror could also be translated as light prism. When combined with light shield I chose to change it to light prism shield just cause it sounds cooler. Tell me if you guys prefer light mirror shield vs light prism shield)

"It reflects very quickly! Defensive magic will now temporarily come to an end and starting today, you will learn spatial magic. This is my major magic, so hopefully you can learn it well."

"Wow, spatial magic! That's good too. In the future I can use it to flee." In the future I won't have to fear this ruthless old man anymore as long as I learn this properly. If he abuses me, then I can just use spatial magic to go home. Haha. (Is it really that simple?)

Now I will tell you the fundamental principles of spatial magic. Spatial magic is split into movement magic and attack magic. Spatial movement magic relies heavily on skill, where magic power determines the distance you can teleport and spiritual power determines how accurate your teleport is. The shorter the distance you teleport, the more accurate the teleport will be. The technique to use spatial movement magic is to use your spiritual power to designate the location you want to go to, then with a simple incantation you teleport you there. It is divided into short range teleportation, long distance teleportation and large-scale long range teleportation. Short range teleportation is generally used to dodge enemy attacks. However, large-scale long range teleportation and long range teleportation are rarely used, mainly due to the requirement of high spiritual power, low accuracy and could potentially teleport several hundred kilometers off the target. Large-scale long range teleportation also needs magic support in order to cast."

"Teacher, teacher, then you were deceiving me when you said that you would teleport back from the capital to inspect my studies?"

Having accidentally leaking that out, Teacher Xiu had an awkward expression on his face. "You go study magic properly and don't ask so many questions. Today you'll start learning short range teleportation of the spatial movement magic. If you have the magic power and spiritual power of a Great Mage, you will be able to teleport anywhere within 500

meters with this magic.”

Having said this, Teacher Xiu suddenly disappeared right in front of me and there was a clap from behind me. It turns out that Teacher Xiu used teleportation magic to move behind me. Wow, so mystical.

“Teacher, how come I didn’t hear an incantation?”

“This is what I was going to tell you next. The short range teleportation incantation is very short, just a single word. All you need to do is control the magic power, designate a place you want to go in your mind then mouth the word silently.”

“What’s the word?”

“Move”

“It’s this simple?”

“You try it then.”

“Okay.”

I begin to focus my spirit, setting the target as the corner of the classroom. Silently I thought “Move”. I felt a whoosh, then I moved to a different area.

How come there’s nothing under my feet. Ouch! Thump. I teleported to the small pond outside the classroom.

From the pond I awkwardly climbed out, spit. What, this is not good at all, the mistake was too big. I returned to the classroom. Teacher Xiu seeing my embarrassed look, couldn’t help but reveal a smiling expression on his serious face.

“Know that movement magic requires a high amount of spiritual power and during the transfer, your spirit must be focused. The slightest bit of carelessness can cause a huge difference. Today you will practice here. Try to teleport as far as possible.”

“Yes Teacher Xiu.”

Seeing that Teacher Xiu had left, I sat my butt on the floor. This is

better than the last few days, I don't have to suffer the demon's training anymore. Because of my motto of 'safety first' (fleeing career) I must practice properly. In my mind, I secretly became determined.

"Move." The place I transfer to is 3 meters in front of me. Ah, not bad. This time it was really a success.

"Move." "Move." "Move." "Move." "Move." "Move." "Move." "Move."

I kept practicing short range teleportation until I ran out of magic power to sustain the spell.

The result is not bad. I'm becoming more and more skilled. In the range of this 30 square meter house, I am basically able to move to anywhere I think of. No more practice, it's time to rest. Tomorrow I will give the old demon a pleasant surprise. While I was thinking, I gradually entered the meditation (sleep) state.

Since that day, I began to continuously practice short range teleportation. The thought of escaping the demon's training quickly left me; every morning I'm abused for 1 hour. Afterwards I practice short range teleportation. Gradually, the range I could teleport expanded. From a radius of 30 meters to 50 meters, 100 meters, 200 meters and in 1 year I can already reach the limit of short range teleportation. I can casually teleport to anywhere within 500 meters with a very high accuracy.

"Zhang Gong, come. I'm taking you to a new training ground.

I followed Teacher Xiu to the rear courtyard. The whole area had an area of 300 square meters with 5 meter tall wood stands installed and on every stand is a thick rope attached to a big sack.

"Teacher, what is this used for?"

"It's for letting you practice short range teleportation! Watch." Teacher Xiu all of the over 100 sacks down from the stand. All of the sacks interweaved together, continuously swinging. "Watch carefully." Having said this, Teacher Xiu teleported to the sacks, and continuously teleported. The sack from beginning to end didn't touch him. After 1 minute, Teacher Xiu left the circle.

"You go try. From now on, you'll practice within the swinging sacks. I'll have light tiger help you push the sacks."

"Teacher, please spare me."

"Be at ease, there's no problem. Teacher's recovery magic is not bad. Or do you want to switch the sacks with iron balls."

"Of course the sacks are good. The sacks are great." Hearing this such terrifying words, I didn't dare to complain. I immediately entered the waves of sacks. I dodged. I dodged. Not even three times and I was hit outside by the sacks. It really hurts. Teacher Xiu immediately cast elementary recovery magic on me, then put me back in. I continually dodged and dodged. Quickly I get hit and come flying out. My young body is being ruthlessly destroyed by this demon.

Another strange thing is that by enduring this inhuman torture, my body has really gotten more and more sturdy. Teacher Xiu told me that one cannot achieve glory and wealth without having been through trials and tribulations. Only by first protecting yourself will you be able survive. But the best way to protect yourself is to flee. (This matches with my ideology.)

Every week monday, wednesday and friday I study magic. Tuesday, thursday, saturday is the sacks array. The sack array also gradually increases in difficulty according to my ability. (The so-called difficulty is nothing after Teacher Xiu gave me an omni-directional intermediate magic - Falling Lightning thing)

(TL:Changed to Falling Lightning thing.)

(TL: The magic actually translates roughly as Falling Lightning something. 落雷什么的 is the original if anyone has a suggestion for the name.)

## Chapter 8: Magic Evaluation

Time passed by very quickly and in the blink of an eye, I am already 9 and a half years old. Although I suffer “inhuman torture” everyday, it didn’t affect my regular development. Height of 1.52 meters and weighing 40 kg. A head of pale blue hair reaching the shoulders. Although my features aren’t really pretty, they were gentle and adorable. (The villagers, my classmates and the teachers say this.) Father always says if you looked at my features separately, they’re not that good, but together they’re not bad. Every time, mother will glance at my mouth and sarcastically say this is due to my father’s genes. However, mother is a big beauty and though she is in her 30’s, you will not find a single sign of aging on her face.

In the past few years, although my ideals conflicts with the old demon’s teachings, I have no choice but to acknowledge them as I learned a lot of magic from him. The rate at which my ability increased surprised mother and father.

Now in front of the sacks, I can almost dodge all of the attacks of the swinging sacks. Should I begin teleporting in the array, you would only be able to see a faint shadow. Teacher Xiu cannot grasp my teleportation route and his direct magic attacks are completely unable to hit me. The me right now can already treat the array of sacks as a game, to the point that while practicing, Teacher Xiu will make a grimace. I annoyed him to the point where he thought about using advanced magic quite a few times to attack me. (Teacher Xiu is only able to use up to rank 7 spatial magic.) However, because his spatial magic is too powerful, he’s afraid it will destroy the whole site. So due to my indignant behaviour, he will summon the light tiger to chase me in the array. Anyways, my control of short range teleportation has already been brought to the point of perfection. Even Teacher Xiu is unable to catch me.

My magic power and spiritual power improvement speed is especially amazing. Now I can simultaneously use light prism shield and and teleportation and persist for more than 3 hours.

Within these two years or so I learned a few spells. (The following list has relatively unique magics that I like) Elementary light defence magic:

Light Shield - Comprehensive light element defence magic. (Now due to the more useful light prism shield I don't use this anymore.)

Light Mirror - Light element reflection magic. Due to my enhanced spiritual power, I can already at will reflect magic at any angle.

Light Prism Shield - The light element defence magic I created myself. A small area where the defensive power is close to the rank of advanced magic. The serious Teacher Xiu ceaselessly praised my magic, however he is unable to use it. Haha

Divine Guard - It can defend against poisonous gases and elementary darkness spirit magic. (A type of darkness magic that can confuse the enemy-and make them crazy.) Because it can isolate harmful gasses (gas masks??), I use it whenever Teacher Xiu farts. The result is quite good. (Teacher Xiu doesn't know this, or else....) (TL: Sure wish I had this in RL)

Elementary light attack magic:

Light Arrow - Within the whole elementary and intermediate class light spells, there is only one attack magic. The light essences will condense into an arrow.

Shape attacks. Their power is small.

Elementary light recovery magic:

Restoration technique - Elementary class recovery magic. It will generally heal minor injuries very well as well as treat fevers and colds. I really regret learning this magic, because ever since I learned this magic, mother has brought me to the village to help treat people. (I'm also not getting paid. Sigh)

Spirit Healing technique - Used to treat a variety of chaotic conditions.

Elementary spatial magic:

Short range teleportation - I'm very good at this. Within a 500 meter range I don't think that an unidirectional magic is able to hit me.

Long range teleportation – I learned the theory of it, but I've never used it. I might accidentally teleport to the territory of the magic race. Then I would be truly miserable.

Small-Scale Dimensional Cut – Spatial attack magic. The most powerful attack magic I know. It's able to tear space and everything within its range will be devoured. (Including magic.) For now, Teacher Xiu has prohibited me from using it because I had once devoured his beloved cup. I can now cast a 1 meter long dimensional cut. It's no problem to swallow an elementary class spell, but Teacher Xiu said it's devouring power is very high so if your magic power can't sustain it, it might devour you. (Of course the one I'm able to cast right now is unable to devour me. It would require a huge dimensional cut to devour me.) He told me not to use it carelessly.

These are the spells I know right now. Teacher Xiu evaluation of me is: First-class escaping ability, second-rate defense, third rate recovery magic and bottom-tier attack. (In fact, within Teacher Xi's heart he was satisfied with me, especially in my talent in defense and movement magic. The degree of control I have over my teleportation magic is even better than his, even though his is a Great Mage. I also created a new defensive magic. Generally speaking, if you didn't take into account my attack magic, my strength would be close to the level of an advanced mage's.) Hey, I didn't do it intentionally. It was just that short range teleportation was to my liking. Haha, if I can't beat it then I can just flee. Hehe.

In less than six months I will be graduating from here. Haha, I'll finally be able to escape this demon's grasp. (Despite the fact that the sack array is unable to torment me anymore, Teacher Xiu would often display his full range of intermediate magic attacks or I would often get exhausted.) I thought of my better future. Hehe.

What made me even more happy is that, in the morning when I got to the classroom, Teacher Xiu said he had to go to the capital. He said he would be gone for a long period of time, but would be back for my graduation exam. He instructed me to meditate properly at school and

increase my magic power. (If I don't then he will conduct his demon's training.) The beautiful me straightened and gave out a snot bubble.

In the following period of time, I can go back to sleeping everyday.

# Chapter 9: Encountering Danger on the Return Home

Now going to school is very relaxing! Everyday I sleep at home then I go to school and sleep some more. Haha, it feels like the 49th year is here! (TL: Not sure what the 49th year means. It might be a reference to 1949 which is the year the People's Republic of China was established? I'm not sure at all.)

I sleep!

While comfortably lying on the ground, I concentrated my spirit to sense the light essence in the air. Under their care, I gradually fell asleep. My internal light orb already occupies  $\frac{2}{3}$  of all of my meridians. Teacher Xiu said I have enough magic power to cast rank 5 spells now. However, because I am too small, it would be biting off more than I can chew so he didn't teach me any intermediate class spells and instead told me to wait to go to an intermediate magic academy. (A mage's title corresponds to their magic: Generally speaking, mages capable of casting rank 1 spells are called apprentice mages. Those capable of using ranks 2 and 3 spells are called elementary mages. Intermediate mage's are able to cast ranks 4 and 5 spells. Rank 6 spells are advanced mages, rank 7 magic is a great mage, rank 8 is magic scholar and capable of casting rank 9 magic combining with other mages is a magister. A Grand Mage is capable of casting rank 9 spells alone.)

Ah! What time is it now? While stretching I looked outside towards the sky. The sky is already dark, I should quickly go home and eat dinner, my belly is calling out. In a lively mood, I walked out of the academy in the direction of my home.

Having left Senke city, I followed the path I used everyday to go to and from the academy. Because I'm afraid of the dark, I used my left hand to cast an illumination spell, making everything within 30 meters of it to be as bright as day. Today mother doesn't know what to make for me to eat, the best would be bone soup, this is my favorite. Thinking of a luxurious dinner, I smacked my lips and felt my stomach is even more hungry.

Suddenly, I felt the surrounding temperature rise. Wa, what's going on? Who here is using fire magic? A sudden roar that shook the heavens rung in my ear. Wa, fire lions, a rank 6 magical beast, no, it's a demonic beast. (At birth if the magical beast isn't contracted with, it will then be called a demonic beast.) Already, my legs won't listen to me.

With its blood-red eye it watched me. I thought it might have the same idea I had earlier as it smacked its lips.

"Ah! Fire lion big brother, I'm still a child. Can you please not eat me. I am the homeland's flower, I don't have any meat. I'll go home and get you something to eat. Ah, no!" Without letting me finish what I was saying, the fire lion attacked me.

I reflexively used teleportation, after all, before I was often chased by the light tiger. While dodging the fire lion's attack, I fired a flare towards the sky. (In fact, it is the illumination spell in the form of a ball of light which I fired into the sky using the light arrow spell. Naturally once the flare reaches the sky it bursts open and becomes a big light. This is the mage's distress signal.)

"You foul fire lion, I refuse to comply. You can't possibly catch me." Remembering that I have teleportation magic, my heart calmed down a lot. Towards this beast, I'm still very confident. The fire lion is powerful, but it can't be more powerful than the light tiger and the old demon combined. At the very least, I can last until my magic power is completely consumed, after that, I would be helpless. (Before I consume all of my magic power, I would have ran away with teleportation. I can teleport 500 meters, then I can just teleport several times. Hehe.)

The air sure is hot. Because of the priority of safety, I decided to give try of the defensive magic I know. The first of course is divine guard since it can filter the air and isolate the heat emitted by the fire lion. Afterwards I summoned a light prism shield on my left hand.

The powerful fire lion grimaced while I recited an incantation and from my right hand fired off a light arrow towards it. Although its power is relatively small, it will still hurt to be hit by it.

Angered, the fire lion fired one after another intermediate class fire magic towards me. I blocked and I dodged just like in the array of sacks. In a relaxed manner I circled him, causing him to become confused and disoriented.

The flames atop the fire lion's body gradually weakened. I suppose it's magic power is being quickly depleted. While panting unevenly, it watched at me. Haha. There's nothing great about a demonic beast. Then I have a method to deal with it. I dispelled the divine guard and the light prism shield. (Using this much magic, my magic power is also being consumed quickly.) Even without the magic, it cannot hit me. I can just wait for rescue since the village isn't too far away from here. The village guards should be here very soon.

The fire lion suddenly raised it's head to face the sky then roared. All of a sudden I felt the air which was cooling down suddenly increase in temperature. Ah, how could this be. Not good. This is the sixth rank fire magic, Monstrous Flames. This is an omni-directional magic. I'm unable to run away now. My name is Zhang Gong, great light essences, assemble in front of me and obstruct evil! I barely managed to cast a light shield. The monstrous flames came at me like they were hiding the sky and covering the earth. (TL: Some chinese idiom. Basically a huge AOE attack.) Everything within a 300 meter radius was enveloped in the spell. As a result my careless teleportation, I wasn't enveloped in the spell. I used all of my body's magic power to fuel the light shield while continuously reciting the light shield incantation. However, the power of the monstrous flames is truly too great. In a moment I won't be able to withstand it, then I'll become a fire roasted Zhang Gong.

"The water essences in the air, listen to my call, transform into the conquering hail and eliminate all the evil before me!"

Ah! I'm saved. Following this incantation by an unknown person, the pressure on me is gone. The hail technique offsets the fire lion's magic. The fire lion is also nearly spent; his magic power is also nearly depleted like mine. Just was just his last attack. That's all.

"Ah! It's Zhang Gong. Hurry up and come Zhang Gong's mother. It's

your son.”

Mother came. It’s finally alright now. I fainted.

.....

I don’t know how much time passed. I gradually regained consciousness. I opened my eyes to see mother with her red eyes sitting by my side.

“Zhang Gong is awake. Father of the child, come over. Zhang Gong how are you feeling? Are you better now?”

Yesterday my magic power was at it’s very limits. My body was burned in various places by the fire lion’s magic. Additionally, my spiritual power and magic power were consumed until I fainted. Under the treatment of mother’s water magic, I have basically completely recovered, just not in very good spirits.

“Mother, I’m fine.”

“Son, how are you? Are you better now?” Father ran in from the other room.

“I’m a lot better now father.”

“If you didn’t grow old, then you wouldn’t have been able to see mother anymore.” Saying this, mother hugged me and cried.

“Zhang Gong, how did this happen?” Father asked.

I explained the circumstances as to what happened.

Father said seriously: “You little fool, you must remember to never show any opening to the enemy. With your magic as it is now, if you encounter an intermediate mage who is an enemy, then you must immediately flee. Because besides from fleeing, you don’t have any method to damage the enemy. Moreover, when facing the enemy how could you be careless. If you had been using the light prism shield to guard, then you probably wouldn’t have gotten hurt.”

I didn’t listen to father’s following words at all. But I remember very clearly to flee when encountering an enemy. From that point on, no

matter what kind of enemy I face, I always take my protection seriously.

The Child of Light passed his first difficult trial in life.

## Chapter 10: Between Friends

Because I was injured, mother helped me get a leave of absence from the school so I can rest at home.

After eating breakfast, mother and father went to work, leaving me alone to lie on the bed. Bored, I just watched the heaven's flowers blocks.

"Zhang Gong, Zhang Gong, are you home? Quickly come open the door."

"Who is it? It's still so early."

"It's me, Ao De. You can't even recognize my voice anymore?"

"Ao De, why did you come visit?" I said as I opened the courtyard door.

"Zhang Gong, I heard you got injured. Are you a bit better now?"

"I'm a lot better now. Yesterday was unbelievable, I was just in time. Say, why do you think there was a demonic beast on the outskirts of the village?"

"Who knows. Here, this is some Snow Spirit powder. I grinded this out for half a day at my dad's place.

"Ah. You brought your father's treasure for me to eat?" Snow Spirit powder is not only the village head's treasure, but it also took Ao De's grandfather many years to refine.

"No need Ao De. Thank you. I'm already almost fully recovered; no need to waste the spirit powder."

"Okay, okay. No need to be so polite, just hurry up and eat it. When you're better I want to exchange pointers on magic with you."

"Ao De, thank you." With red eyes, I ate the Snow Spirit powder. I felt a burst of cold seep into my whole body, thus making me feel very comfortable.

"Thanks for what. In the future don't tell my father and I hope in the future once we've developed that you won't forget me."

"Good. From now on we are blessed brothers, we'll face our troubles

together and live well together. Haha.” I’m older than Ao De by 2 months and grew up with him since childhood so he calls me boss. (Why do I have to be older than him. We played together in our childhood, with us mutually respecting each other. It is said to respect the old and cherish the young. Sigh.) I really didn’t think Ao De would treat me this well.

The sincere feelings between children are something to be treasured.

“How come you didn’t attend class today Ao De?”

“My class’s teacher has recently let us meditate to increase our magic power at home. In a few months we’ll be having our graduation exam, so they first let us have one month of leave. Meditation over there isn’t the same at all.”

“Oh, you guys have it nice. Compared to your luck, I’m just... Sigh.” Looking at Ao De, I really regret not choosing water magic with him.

“Zhang Gong, we’ve been so busy these last two years and haven’t had any time to do something together. How has your light magic studies been? How is your teacher? Whenever I see you you’re listless.” Since I’ve started learning from the old demon, it’s everyday from morning to evening, causing me to rarely see Ao De. Even in the evening when I return in the evening and see him, I’m too exhausted from the old demon’s torment. So we didn’t have any contact at all. I didn’t think that Ao De is still thinking about me. A friend in need truly is a friend indeed.

“How could he possibly be good. He is simply a demon. The old witch isn’t even one tenth as terrifying as he is.”

“Ah! Even worse than the old witch. Then you truly are miserable.” Bewildered, Ao De couldn’t close his mouth.

“Ao De, what kind of good spells did you learn?”

“I’ve learned a few water element therapy spells and water element attack spells. My minor magic of air element I’ve learned quite well. Right now I am number one in my class at using the storm spell.” Haha.

Looking at Ao De’s proud look, I cannot help but have some doubts. To investigate I asked: “Is it because you took your class’s girl’s treats that

they ran away?"

Ao De's cracking laughter stopped. Astonished, he asked: "How did you know??"

Hahahaha.

We both laughed.

"Zhang Gong how many days will you be resting at home?"

"It should be about 4 to 5 days!"

"Then I'll come everyday to play with you. Then once you're better, us two brothers will exchange pointers for a bit." (

"Okay. Kids will bully me saying that I don't have attack magic. I will have to wait and see." Ao De practiced well, but he couldn't possibly have more magic power than me, I'll just wait until he's exhausted.

After all, we are still children; we still have strong ambitions.

Quickly, two days passed and my injury has already healed. Ao De came to see me everyday. Today we're having a contest. I'm also very eager to see for myself to what extent his skills have reached.

"Boss, I'm here. Hurry up and come out."

"Coming, coming! Why are you so anxious to court death, haha!"

"Heng Who is going to win isn't certain. You don't even have attack magic, how are you going to beat me?"

"Try it then!"

Ao De assumed a fighting stance. He first casted a storm spell on himself, then a water shield and afterwards began reciting the incantation for his attack magic.

I calmly watched him. I wasn't even a bit worried because I know at his rank, he wouldn't know any area attack magic. My teleportation magic can surely avoid it.

As expected, a water bullet flew towards me. I used teleportation to move to the left 1 meter. The water bullet flew by and brushed against my

side. Ao De rubbed his eyes, as he believed his eyes were deceiving him. Subsequently, all kinds of elementary water spells unceasingly attacked me. How could this kind of magic possibly hit me.

“Boss, what kind of magic is faster than my storm spell.”

“This is of course the spatial magic’s teleportation.”

“Boss you’re shameless. How can you call this a contest if you just dodge?”

“Fine then. Then I won’t dodge anymore. Come now.” While saying this I casted a light prism shield on myself.

Seeing that I’m not dodging anymore, Ao De promptly fired a water bullet at me. I wryly smiled. I faced the light prism shield towards Ao De, then the water bullet hit it and bounced back. I didn’t waste any of it when returning it to Ao De, causing him to be drenched from head to toe. The impact also caused him to fall down.

“No more, no more. What is this. I concede.” Ao De got up from the floor.

“You’ve submitted. If it isn’t an area magic then it’s impossible for it to have any effect on me. My defense and dodging has already reached the level of an intermediate mage.”

“You indeed deserve to be called the boss. I didn’t expect that even without attack magic boss is so powerful. From now on I’ll follow you then.”

Seeing Ao De’s eyes full of admiration, I felt elated.

“Tomorrow we’ll go to school together then. I’ll bring you to a place that’s good for learning how to dodge. Although you can’t be like me and teleport, it will still greatly improve your storm spell.”

“Great! Thanks boss.”

Hey, hey. Thanks? Tomorrow I’ll let this kid taste the power of the sack array.

# Chapter 11: Royal Academy

Early in the morning Ao De came to find me.

"Why did you come so early? I still haven't slept enough. Let me sleep some more."

"Let's hurry up and go. Didn't you say you would help me improve my storm technique today? Lets go, lets go!"

I hugged my blanket and ignored him.

"Are you coming? If you're not, then I'll use water magic on you!"

"So annoying, so early in the morning yet you don't let other people sleep. I'm up, I'm up." Hearing him begin reciting the spell, I immediately got out of bed. This fellow, how can he be so eager to suffer. I'll help him out then. Hehe.

.....

Within the sack array, Ao De is rapidly moving. He's not bad. This fellow really progresses quickly. In two months he can almost persevere for an hour in the sack array. (Of course, this is in circumstances where I'm not using magic to sneak attack him.) I recall his sorry figure in the first few days, but now I want to smile. Ao De can now understand why I was returning home everyday with my strength exhausted.

"Boss, I can't endure any longer. Let me come out." If he tried to come out without my permission, then of course I teleport in front of him and push him back in.

"Fine then. In a few days is the graduation exam, you should preserve some strength."

Panting, Ao De flashed in front of me then sat his butt on the floor.  
"Boss, my progress is quite fast right."

"It's still fairly average. After All, what you're using isn't teleportation. Being able to reach this level is still pretty good. In two more days we have exams. What kind of academy do you think you'll be accepted into?"  
In Senke city there are 13 intermediate magic academies. There are 2 A

class, 4 B class and the rest are C and D class academies. The best academies are A class. Every year very few people pass the exam for the Royal Magic Academy. (The country's highest magic educational institution.)

"I think I might be able to manage to pass a B class exam. What about you Boss?"

"I don't know either. Every year the exam is different so who know what this year's exam will be on? If the subjects are fleeing and defence, then for sure I can enter an A class academy. If the subject is attack magic, then I'll be pitiful and surely enter a D class academy." Actually, I'm not that interested in what academy I get accepted into. However, mother said that if I get accepted into an A class academy, then she will give me 5 silver coins of allowance every month. 5 silver coins as far as I am concerned, is a huge amount of wealth. Because of my most beloved money, I'll try my hardest.

"Boss, didn't your teacher say he will return before the exam? The day after tomorrow is the exam, how come he isn't back yet?"

"I don't know either. It'd be best if he didn't come back, otherwise he'd give me training for the exam!"

"You're thinking about training for the exam? In that case I'll help you succeed." Suddenly, there was a familiar voice.

"Ah! Teacher Xiu, you're back. Exam training isn't necessary, I was just joking around just now."

"Boss, I'll be leaving first then." Seeing Teacher Xiu's strict appearance, Ao De, this fellow ignored his loyalties and escaped.

"Ao De, you despicable fellow, don't let me see you again."

"Zhang Gong!"

"Teacher, I....." I don't know why I feel uneasy when I look the old demon from head to toe. Unconsciously, my two legs began shaking all over.

“Zhang Gong, you’ll be graduating soon. Are you confident?”

“I can’t really say, I’ll just have to take the exam and see how I do.”

“Foolish boy, you’re learning light magic. You’re the only one learning light magic in the past few decades. The academy won’t test you on attack magic to be fair.” The serious Teacher Xiu unexpectedly revealed kindness.

“Ah! This is great. Then I’m certain to pass an A class academy’s exam.” I happily jumped up. Of course it is because of the future allowance that I’m so happy.

“You’re rather ambitious huh. However, this time I don’t want you to participate in the academy’s graduation exams.

“What??” Puzzled, I asked.

“This time I went the capital for your sake. So I could enroll you in the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. I wish for you to immediately participate in the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy’s entrance exam. Teacher has great expectation of you, so you must put in great effort.” The Royal Intermediate Magic Academy is the Royal Magic Academy’s subordinate academy. The academy has a concentration of youths gifted in magic. Every year only  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the students pass the Royal Magic Academy’s exam. It’s the best intermediate magic academy in the kingdom, deserving to be classified as a S class academy.

“Ah! What??” I don’t want this! The Royal Intermediate Magic Academy is so famous, they’ll for sure be especially strict. It’s very difficult to escape from the old demon, he’s both a tiger’s den and a wolf’s lair.

“Teacher Xiu, how could my level be compared the kingdom’s most talented people with such weak magic?” I immediately tried to shirk this.

“Who said your magic is weak; you’re the most remarkable student I’ve ever taught. How would you know if you have never tested yourself.” This is the first time I heard Teacher Xiu praise me, but I didn’t feel even the slightest bit of happiness.

“Then I’ll go home and discuss with my mother and father and give you

a reply tomorrow.”

“No need. I’ll go with you today to visit your family. Then I can discuss with them and they will surely agree.”

No way. The always calm Teacher Xiu is so impatient today. Well, there’s nothing I can do about it then. Once mother and father find out then I’m going to the capital for certain.

True to my expectations, once Teacher Xiu talked with mother and father, they were really excited for me. After all, when your own child has prospectives of entering the kingdom’s best academy, then how could you not be happy.”

“But Teacher Xiu, to enter the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy, a lord’s recommendation is required. We’re commoners, would they even let him take the test?” Father asked about a crucial issue.

“You don’t have to worry about this issue. I have already resolved it since I have a good friend who is a viscount. I asked him to recommend Zhang Gong.

Mother suddenly gave father a push and quietly whispered to father: “The Royal Intermediate Magic Academy’s tuition fee is really high though. We.....”

“I’m willing to sacrifice everything I have and throw caution to the wind in order to let my son go. How could we bury our son’s talents!” Hearing my father’s inspirational words, I felt that mother and father’s expectations of me are unexpectedly high.

“Father, mother, be at ease, I will surely pass the entrance exam.” I emotionally said. Shortly after saying this, I regretted it.

“Zhang Gong truly is well-behaved.” Father patted my head.

“Mr. Wei, actually you two don’t have to worry about these issues. Zhang Gong’s tuition is already covered.” Seeing the three suspicious mouths of the family, Teacher Xiu said: “I extremely adore magic, but my magic aptitude is too meager. After investing 10 times the efforts of others, I am only a Great Mage. Even if I put in great effort, I would only

be able to reach Magic Scholar in my lifetime. But Zhang Gong is different. I discovered that he has an unusual gift for light magic, so I hope my student can surpass me and reach the rank of Magister, and even more so to reach the realm of Grand Mage. Zhang Gong, you must not disappoint teacher."

Hearing Teacher Xiu's words, of course mother and father thanked him ten thousand times for his thousand kindnesses. Since all the issues have been settled, what else did I have to say. I could only prepare to set off.

# Volume 2

## Chapter 1: Arriving in the Capital

“Zhang Gong, you need to listen to Teacher Xiu, carefully take the test and strive to pass the exam to win honor for our family. If you truly are unable to pass the exam, then come home immediately. Don’t let mother and father feel anxious. Teacher Xiu, please take care of Zhang Gong.” Mother hugged me and cried for nearly half the day.

“Well then, don’t cry anymore mother of the child. It’s not like Zhang Gong isn’t coming back. Let’s stop delaying them and let them be on their way.”

After saying goodbye to mother, father, the academy’s teachers, and classmates(Of course that fellow Ao De told me to learn magic well then come back and cover him. ), me and Teacher Xiu set foot on the road towards the captial

“Teacher Xiu, how far are we from the capital?”

“We’re still very far. We need to pass through a province on a road roughly 1 000 kilometers long. (TL: Original text said 2000 里 which is 500 meters or a chinese mile. I chose to use 500 meters x 2000)

“That’s so far, ah.”

.....

During the journey we typically travelled 45 kilometers in 8 hours, taking us over 20 days of endless trekking to finally reach the capital. Me and Teacher Xiu couldn’t use magic to fly, since only advanced wind mages are able to use wind soaring technique, Flight. The flight distance is naturally based on magic power. Originally I wanted to use teleportation, because one teleportation can move 500 meters after all. But Teacher Xiu wouldn’t let me use it. During the whole journey he taught me a lot of exam tricks as well as some magic applications.

Because of mother, father and Teacher Xiu’s hopes, and of course for

filling up my wallet in the future, I put in unusually great effort throughout the journey. This astonished Teacher Xiu greatly, to the point where he believed I had a change of character.

With these 20 some days of great effort in addition to the two months of meditation while Teacher Xiu was gone, right now my whole body is brimming with magic power. Teacher Xiu said that my magic power right now is at the very brink of a advanced mage's.

Since my attack magic is awfully weak, Teacher Xiu taught me two more light spells during the journey. One of them is the Radiant Bind spell. This spell is mainly used for trapping the main enemy. It's classified as an intermediate class magic. (Intermediate class light spells only have one attack spell.) There's also the advanced class spell, Light Severing Sword. With my current magic power, I can only use this spell once. Teacher Xiu forbid me from using it before reaching 10 000 magic power, after all I can still just run away. (TL:It didn't mention 10 00 of what in the raw, I just assumed it's 10 000 magic power.)

The capital truly is a great city, ah. The city wall's are so tall and thick. Then there's the city gate; it's really wide with an endless stream of pedestrians entering and exiting. A merchant's wagon speedily passed by. The sound of wheels never stops. There's also a luxurious carriage with delicate engravings on it. (There should be a noble sitting within the carriage.) The carriage driver crossed between us. This truly deserves to be called the capital of my homeland, Aixia City.

Me and Teacher Xiu wandered within the city. Compared to Senke City, Aixia City is much bigger. On the side of the road there are many stores of various sorts and varieties. I really want to go looking for what kinds of new toys there are, but Teacher Xiu wouldn't permit it. While pulling me like a lightweight carriage on a familiar road, we arrived at the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy which is located on the East side of the city.

"Zhang Gong, look at that grand build over there. That's the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. In 3 days it will begin it's entrance exams. For now, let's look for a place to rest."

We found an inexpensive inn to stay at. Originally Teacher Xiu wanted to bring me to a better inn but the high class inns in the vicinity were all taken by the nobility who came from various regions of the country. So there was no alternative but to stay here. (Of course the nobility wishes for their children to be able to pass the entrance exam and enter the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy.)

"If it weren't for us arriving early, I fear we wouldn't have been able to stay here either."

"That's right. Nevertheless, teacher is wise. I only now comprehend why Teacher Xiu didn't let me delay during our journey by wandering aimlessly.

"Zhang Gong, we're going out. I'll bring you out for a stroll."

"Okay!"

Me and Teacher Xiu arrived at the main street. Because it's the magic kingdom's capital, magic products are being sold everywhere. We entered a magic goods store. Wow. Inside there are all kinds of magic products. There's magic gowns, some low level magic crystals, magic staffs and there's also some magical beast eggs. Every mage has a magical beast but one's own magical beast needs to be incubated by themselves. All the magical beast eggs here have a seal on them. Blood is required to act as a medium to incubate them. When a magical beast hatches, it will attach the most importance to the first person it sees. In this kind of ordinary store, there are only a few lower level magical beast eggs since high level magical beast eggs are very expensive. High level magical beast eggs are too expensive for even the wealthy; in order to get a high level egg, luck is required.

"Zhang Gong, see if there's any that you like. Teacher will buy it for you as a present."

"Okay! Thank you teacher." With no trace of politeness I jumped up. Finally, I picked a pearl white magical beast egg and a magic staff embed with a white crystal.

"Your son really really knows how to choose. Of the magic staffs we

have here, that one is the best. The magical beast egg is a first rank magical beast, I'll give it as a present to you. The magic staff is 50 gold coins." (That pearl white magical beast egg is of the light element. Of course nobody wants it.)

"That expensive?" Teacher Xiu scowled, however he promised me. To be a worthy teacher, he naturally bought it reluctantly.

Back at the inn, Teacher Xiu helped me appraise the magic staff. The magic staff is able to increase magic attack power. Indeed, it's a pretty good staff. The pearl white magical beast egg is very ordinary, merely a rank 1 magical beast.

"You've accepted the gift. Three days from now you must put in great effort during the exam! Don't disappoint teacher."

This staff continuously accompanied me for a very long period of time. Until I received....

Also, the magical beast incubated from the egg became my most important partner.

Perhaps it was destined. The magical beast the Child of Light obtained had a very important effect on the events leading to his rise to the rank of Grand Mage.

(The Child of Light will soon begin his intermediate magic academy life. How is his magical beast?)

## Chapter 2: Entrance Examination

First thing in the morning, Teacher Xiu woke me up with lessons. He made me repeat some details regarding the exam. Then he brought me to the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy.

“Teacher Xiu, why are we here so early. There’s still a long time before the exam.” I said as I yawned. In these last two days I’ve nearly been bothered to death. Everyday Teacher Xiu would explain all of the exam’s rules, exam details and so on. Just from all his talk my head has grown bigger. Originally I wanted to hatch my magical beast egg and take a look at what it is. However, Teacher Xiu wouldn’t permit it, saying that before the exam I need to have ample amounts of vigor and physical strength. He’s even more nervous about the exam than me.

“First, look at the situation. Zhang Gong ah. As long as you act in accordance to teacher’s method, then the exam should be finished without any problems.”

“Yes, I know.”

1 hour of waiting is like 1 year as far as I am concerned. (Due to Teacher Xiu’s endless nagging.)

“Okay, you can go in now. Zhang Gong, do your best!” Teacher Xiu gave me a thumbs up.

“OK.” I gave him a thumbs up too.

Entered the academy. Wow. It’s worthy of being counted as the number one academy. It’s very unique. There’s a big practice ground that has an area of 15 000 square meters. Ah, there’s also a lot of people. Teacher Xiu told me that this year there is roughly 10 000 students taking the exam. In the end, only 200 students will be qualified. Ah, only 1 in 50 will be admitted. At this time there was a magic broadcast (Through a magic crystal, sound can be amplified and spread): “All the students who came to take the test, according to your registration number line up from east to west. For every 600 numbers, make one line. Follow these instructions in an orderly manner. Go line up in according to your registration number

and prepare for the first exam.

My registration is 1503, so I'm in the third line. I went to the third line and lined up accordingly. Looking around, I see that all the examinees are wearing gorgeous magic robes. In comparison my plain clothes aren't flashy at all, so all the surrounding examinees look at me with a gaze of superiority. Some even spit in disdain and say 'even a commoner dares to take the exam'.

Hmph! What's wrong with commoners? Are commoners not people? So what if your family has a bit of power.

"Examinees, quiet down. The first exam will now begin. All the examinees from each line, according to your registration number, go up to your line's proctor one at a time to begin the exam." There was another broadcast.

Altogether there are 20 lines and for each line there are 2 proctors. One is responsible for directing the student on the exam, the other is responsible for recording the grades. The first exam is actually very simple. The teacher just needs to use a magic crystal to measure one's magic power and see if it meets the requirements. (TL: Originally said to measure one's achievements in the raw, I changed it to magic power.) The whole entrance exam has 4 parts. 200 students will be admitted according to their overall score.

As I waited, I was very bored. Ah, why's it so slow?

1 hour later.

"Number 1503, come up." At last, it's my turn.

I arrived in front of the teacher. "Hello teacher. I am examinee 1503." Teacher Xiu taught me that I must be courteous in order to leave a good impression on the teacher. Maybe it'll score me a few bonus points.

"You can start the test now!" The proctor nodded at my smile.

I began condensing magic power and placed my right hand on top of the magic crystal. From my forehead, light essence rapidly gathered then flowed through my right hand and into the magic crystal. The magic

crystal began emitting a faint white light. As I released more and more magic power, the white light also grows more and more dazzling.

“That’s good enough student.”

“Thank you teacher.” I stopped releasing magic power.

“Your magic power is strong. You’re learning light magic? Learn well. Once you reach the rank of advanced mage, light magic is very powerful. Go recover in the rest area while you wait for the next exam.”

“Yes.”

I feel pretty good about this exam; there shouldn’t be any problems with it. I look at the examinees in front of me. Not a single one of them could release as much magic power as me. Hehe. I proudly smiled.

The next exam tests magic perception. The testing method is also very simple, one just needs to fire off their most powerful spell within a magic barrier. Exam in the afternoon. We’re not permitted to leave during midday, but the academy supplies lunch for us. After eating, I slip away to go to take a stroll and wander around the academy grounds. This place sure is big! Apart from the main field, there are also many smaller practice grounds. The academy also has many buildings. The campus grounds are very elegant. Everywhere there is green grass like a cushion, inviting you to sleep on. Furthermore, there are many groves, rock gardens, fountains and so on. Indeed, it’s pretty good. I see that coming here to study wouldn’t necessarily be a bad thing.

The afternoon exam began. The examinees are split into 10 different practice grounds. Every practice ground has 5 proctors. Each proctor will give a score. Add all of their scores together and that’s the score for this exam.

Wow. An intermediate magic academy’s entrance exam is really abnormal. Most of the examinees magics are of the intermediate class. Some are even casting advanced class spells. The competition is very fierce. What are the proctors whispering into each others ears? From the smiles on their faces I can see that they’re very pleased with this examinees results.

It's my turn on the field now.

"Number 1503, use your best magic."

"Yes teacher." I straightened my body then raised my left hand.

"My name is Zhang Gong Wei, great light essences, assemble in front of me and block and reflect all evil!"

A never before heard incantation! Despite all of the proctors suspicions, a light prism shield appeared on my left arm.

"This is..... Light Shield?? No way. Light shield is an omni-directional defensive magic." After discussing among themselves, the proctor in the middle said: "Examinee, please explain the properties of this magic."

"Yes. This magic of mine was created with Light Shield and Light Prism(TL:Mirror) as a base. As a result of combining the two, the new spell has both defensive and reflective properties. Those two were originally elementary class defense spells but now after merging them, the new spell can stop 6th rank attack spells.

All of the proctors looked at each other in astonishment. Finally, they reached a conclusion, a genius. (Fusing magics is very difficult, especially fusing two of the same element. I fused two elementary spells to create an intermediate spell, so how could they not be amazing?)

Haha. Another obstacle passed.

While harboring excitement in my mind, I walked away from the academy. (Due to there being many people left over, the last two exams will be conducted tomorrow.) How can it be this simple? Haha. Recalling the astonished faces of those proctors makes me want to laugh.

As soon as I exit the academy's gates, I see Teacher Xiu. Seeing his anxious expression, for the first time I felt that originally Teacher Xiu is very adorable.

# Chapter 3: My Good Luck

“How was it Zhang Gong?”

I gave Teacher Xiu and ‘OK’ gesture.

“There should be no problems with today’s two exams. You can be at ease Teacher Xiu”

“Don’t be arrogant. Continue to put in great effort tomorrow. It ultimately all depends on your overall score.

A quiet night.

The next day we arrived at the academy at the same time as yesterday. The third exam is on magic control. Depending on the examinee’s major magic element, there’s a specific way to test this. For example, the test for the fire element is very simple; only need to control the basic fireball magic through a specified route without it exploding along the way, afterwards the time taken to finish is recorded. The tests for the other elements are about the same.

Then what is the test for light element? Teacher Xiu told me he doesn’t know due to there being no one in the capital whose major is light magic.

Since I’m the the only one who majored in light magic, I immediately went to the exam room. I arrived at the academy’s right wing and the 5th exam room. Wow. I’m the only one taking the exam but there are 5 proctors. Isn’t this a bit too excessive.

“Hello proctors.”

“Hello student number 1503. Due to the recent years continuously not having any light magic majors, there is only you. Therefore the academy’s proctors discussed this and established a new method to test you.” Said the teacher in the middle.

Ah! No way. Unexpectedly they’re giving me special consideration.”

“Then what do I need to do Teacher?”

The proctors looked at each other then the middle one mysteriously

smiled and said: "It's actually very simple. I heard that during yesterday's magic perception exam you used a spell you created yourself. Today we want to test it out. You only need to withstand 30 minutes of our elementary attack spells then you'll pass. Your grade will be based off of how well you ward off our attacks."

It can't possibly be this easy. I'm indeed fairly strong but I'm still a bit cautious. I try to ask: "Is it only elementary attack magic? Can I use my minor element's magic?"

"Be at ease, it's only elementary magic. But I must warn you to take note that our elementary magic isn't that weak. You can also use your minor magic . Well then, we'll be starting now."

I immediately gathered the essence and created a light prism shield then I casted a divine guard on myself. Furthermore, I prepare to teleport at any time. (Elementary class magic doesn't have any area spells. As far as I am concerned, area spells are very effective.)

The 5 proctors began attacking.

The exam concluded. Of course the outcome is that not a single one of my hairs was damaged. Furthermore the light prism shield was barely used. It was simply to effortless. Much easier in comparison to the sack array. Even if the elementary magic attacks of the proctors was like the howling wind and torrential rain, there would still be many gaps. Haha. Too easy.

"Teachers, did I pass?"

The five teachers looked at each other in dismay. Helplessly they declared that I passed.

"This student, why do I feel like your major is spatial magic!"

I scratched my head and meekly said: "This is embarrassing. Teachers, when I was still in elementary magic academy, my teacher assessed me as top quality fleeing ability, second-rate defense, third rate recovery magic and bottom-tier attack magic. So....."

"Student 1503, no need to feel embarrassed. When you actually meet an

enemy, being able to flee from their attacks is very important. When a mage and a warrior does battle, it's even more important. Generally warriors won't give a mage the chance to recite their incantations, so if you can maintain a safe distance to cast your magic, then your chances of success will be quite large. So by all means you must not regard it as shameful, but instead continue to put forth great effort."

Wow. I didn't expect fleeing has this many advantages. From now on these words are my motto. Haha.

"Thank you teachers." I felt extremely heartfelt towards these teachers and bowed.

Exiting the exam room, I can't help but ponder my good luck. In any case, it's not important. I wandered all over. Teacher Xiu had told me that after passing the third exam, according to each exam's grades, 500 people will be selected to advance to the 4th exam. In other words, tomorrow they will announce the grades and the day after the final exam will begin. Right now I feel anxious about going back. Once I get back Teacher Xiu will probably nag me incessantly.

I arrived outside the fire element exam room. I inadvertently looked at the corner and saw a red-haired examinee that's about the same age as me. (Male) He looks to be really depressed. Ah! I walked over.

"Hey! What happened? Did you not do well on the exam?"

"It's even worse than not doing well on the exam! I did too well on the exam." A beautiful child's voice resounded.

"Why?"

"My teacher said to not do too well, just well enough to pass is fine. If not then once I begin learning there will be a lot of people coming to challenge me. Then there won't be any time to practice magic."

"Waa. Your teacher is even more abnormal than mine. At best, my teacher is a bit abnormal during practice. Your teacher won't let you do you best during exams. Fuuuu."

"Don't talk about my teacher like that. He told me for my sake. He also

consider other people's needs!"

"Don't talk about this anymore. How well did you do on the exam?"

"Originally I wanted to test into the upper-middle ranks. But I saw a few students doing very well, so I momentarily displayed my ability. The result is that I was even faster than the fastest by 10 seconds."

"Then how long did it take you?"

"6 seconds" Wow. This guy is like me. He's also a genius.

"I didn't expect that you were so talented! Hello, let me introduce myself properly, my name is Zhang Gong Wei. My major is light magic and my minor is spatial magic." I extended my hand towards him.

He immediately stood up and shook my hand. "Hello. My name is Ma Ke Sai. My major is fire magic and my minor is wind magic."

"You want to be friends from now on?"

"Sure. Then we're friends from now on."

Two childish voices determined their lifelong friendship.

## Chapter 4: A Genius's Fate

After saying goodbye to Ma Ke, I returned to the inn with Teacher Xiu. I suddenly thought of a question, so I went to look at my grades. I'm certainly ranked 1st, then wouldn't I have many challengers in the future? Oh no, I didn't expect this. This time I'm in trouble! It seems that Ma Ke's teacher is truly wise.

"Teacher Xiu, if my exam grades are particularly good, then after I begin attending the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy, many people will come to challenge me?"

"Of course!"

"Ah? Then why didn't you tell me to exercise a bit of restraint?"

"Zhang Gong, that's because you will only improve from actual combat. If you don't want to be knocked down by others, then you must put in great effort. Teacher did this for your sake."

This is for my sake too. It seems that the days from now on will be no good. With a heavy mind, it was very difficult for me to enter the mediation state.

"It's time to wake up Zhang Gong. We're going to go see the notice of successful examinees."

Hearing that we're going to look at the notice, I immediately get up from bed. I want to immediately go take a look; I hope that my position isn't too high up.

Arriving at the Royal Magic Academy's gate, I saw four big yellow sheets of paper posted on the walls. The first three list the top 500 examinees in each exam, while the last one lists the top 500 overall who would enter the last exam.

From the back, I immediately ran over to take a look. I must be in the 400's and by all means, I must not be in the top 100. Right now, I didn't have any of the pride from when I had just finished the exams.

No way. I felt dizzy.

My grades are: magic power: 9th place, magic perception: 1st place, magic control: 2nd place. (Unexpectedly 1st place is that fellow Ma Ke.) Overall grades: 2nd place. (The 1st place is someone called Hai Long Yang. All of his grades are in the top 5.)

I'm done for. From now on I'll out of luck. Well, it's not too bad. At least I'm not first place.

Just at that moment, a teacher came out from the academy. He walked to the overall grades notice and covered up number 10 and 11, then wrote Hai Long Yang over it.

"Everybody, due to Hai Long Yang using some dishonest methods during the tests, the academy has decided to drop Hai Long Yang's ranking of first, down 10 places to eleventh. Therefore the top ten students will all go up one rank." Hearing the teacher's words, the examinees in the surroundings all exploded like a pot. One after another, they began to comment and discuss this event.

"Wow. I wonder what kind of method this Hai Long Yang used? He truly has bad luck. He was originally first."

"Since Hai Long Yang's ranking dropped, then the top rank is this Zhang Gong person."

The remaining comments I didn't hear at all because I was already stupefied. Indeed, what good luck. No way, a genius can't be this way!!!!"

Suddenly I became aware of someone behind me patting me, thus giving me a fright. I turned my head around and see that it actually turns out to be Ma Ke.

"What's wrong Zhang Gong? What's with the sullen face? Did you not get in? Let me go take a look at the notice."

My ranking is over here. My magic power: 18th place, magic perception: 16th place, magic control: unexpectedly it's 1st place. I'm done for! But it's not too bad, my overall rank isn't that high at 12th place. It's still good. I'll go take a look at yours."

After looking at the notice Ma Ke had a blank look, afterwards he

suddenly grabbed my pair of shoulders and cried out in fear: “Wow! Zhang Gong, you’re so awesome! Your overall rank is first place!”

Yelling like this, Ma Ke attracted nearly 4000 people’s gazes towards us in all directions.

I immediately reflected on my choices, while blaming Ma Ke, I promptly used short range teleportation and fled 500 meters from the encirclement. Afterwards I consecutively used several teleportations to directly return to the inn. Furthermore at the same time I was teleporting, I yelled out: “Ma Ke, you’re awful!”

Now I can only hope no one saw my appearances clearly.

Teacher Xiu also returned with an odd smile.

“Zhang Gong, you truly deserve to be called my good student. You unexpectedly got first place. Not bad, not bad. However, before the test tomorrow, it would be best if you didn’t go out. At the very least there will be 1000 people outside waiting to challenge you. Hehe.”

“Teacher Xiu, can we go back to Senke city? I....”

Hearing that I wanted to go back to Senke city, Teacher Xiu immediately became angry. “What? Go back? Fine. You don’t need me to go back, maybe your parents will forgive you too. When you were setting out, your parents had such high hopes in you. Ah. You can go back and tell them you placed first in the exam but you were afraid of other student’s challenges so you returned. Will they be able to forgive you? How will you continue learning magic from then on?”

Recalling what mother and father told me before leaving, I have nothing to say anymore. (Even though I’m really lazy, I still have one strong point, which is obedience to my parents. If there wasn’t mother and father, then there wouldn’t be me!)

“Teacher, don’t be angry, I was just kidding. I’m going to put in great effort!”

Seeing that I have dispelled any thoughts of going back, Teacher Xiu immediately continued smiling from ear to ear. When all’s said and done,

my first place rank in the first round of exams has lit up his face.

"I already told you the rules for tomorrow's exam. It's like this, the top 500 people draw lots to determine who they will fight with. The winner gets 50 points, the loser gets 30 points. The results of the first round of exams will be added to the second round's. The score will be calculated in accordance to the one's ranking. The top ranker is you so in the second round there are 50 bonus points for you. In other words, even if you lose in tomorrow's exam, you'll have 80 points which will guarantee that you'll be one of the 200 to advance. The first round's second place will have 49.9 bonus points in the second round, and so on. The 500th place will have no bonus points, so the preliminary round's results give you a great advantage. The exam will not allow use of magical beasts or martial skills. (Magic Academy.)

It seems that it's already impossible to escape the clutches of the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. It turns out that being a genius is to still be born under an ill star. (Bullshit Genius) Tomorrow I must lose. I secretly made up my mind.

# Chapter 5: Meeting a Formidable Opponent

At last, the final “decisive battle”. I don’t know who the final opponent is, but the best who be someone in the middle ranks. This way I can lose and appear weak.

All of the examinees have already drawn lots. Following is the announcement for the battles. The first exam is 1st rank Zhang Gong against 12th rank Ma Ke Wei. The second exam is 2nd rank Li Zha Lun against 79th rank Lei Sai Heng Lan.

What an unexpected coincidence. To my surprise it’s this fellow Ma Ke. I’m also throwing caution to the wind, otherwise I’ll be ranked 1st. I would preferably achieve first today and have revenge for yesterday’s grievances. I secretly made up my mind, I’ll get revenge for informing the nobles. Hehe. Just you wait Ma Ke, see how I’ll mess with you....”

The order of matches is according to the rankings, from the bottom to the top. People near the bottom will fight spar. Therefore I am the one to spar.

Where did that loathsome fellow Ma Ke run off to? I searched within the crowd of people. Unbelievable, I can’t find him. He couldn’t possibly be afraid of me correcting him today that he ran off could he? Surely not. Otherwise his teacher wouldn’t spare him. Hmph! I’m not looking for him anymore. I’ll see him when it’s time for the match.

The matches are held on 10 different stages.

Actually, Ma Ke was in a small nook. When he heard his partner for the match is me, he nearly fainted. After saying those words yesterday, he immediately regretted it. — I’m done for! Tomorrow elder brother Zhang Gong certainly won’t forgive me. How could I be so foolish. It’s all my fault. God. please bless and protect me and permit me to have an intact corpse tomorrow.

Wow! In order to enter the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy, all the examinees are fighting like their life depends on it up on the stage. Right now I don’t know which match number is happening at the moment. The

current match has one water mage and one wind mage. The both of them don't use defensive magic at all, instead they exhaust all of their magic power with the most powerful attack spells they have. Up on the stage it's practically like they're calling the wind and summoning the rain. You use a hail spell then I use a tornado spell. Truly too frightening. I can't help but think of what methods will I need to use in order to win the match? After thinking for half a day I came up with one method, that is to use defensive and fleeing magic to exhaust the opponent's magic power then to defeat him. Fortunately my magic power should be higher than theirs. At last the match finished due to the water mage being careless, thus being defeated by the wind mage's wind blade.

Because of these matches, the academy dispatched 10 great water mages, and 2 water magisters in case of any accidents. As a result of their presence, even though the matches are very intense, there haven't been any accidents.

3 hours later it's finally my turn. I stretched my muscles a bit then slowly walked onto the stage.

"This is the first round's top ranker, Zhang Gong Wei!"

"His appearance seems to be nothing extraordinary. Unexpectedly, someone who learns light magic and doesn't know any attack spells at all, is able to be the top ranker. He definitely bribed a proctor."

"How come his opponent still hasn't come up?"

I arrived on the stage then looked all around. Ma Ke's figure still isn't here. It couldn't be that he actually ran away just before the battle? I already made plans earlier which required beating Ma Ke into a spectacle too horrible to endure. Thus giving the examinees in the audience a warning that it's not good to provoke me. In the future, the troublesome things will lesson.

"The first round's twelfth ranker, Ma Ke, hasn't come yet? If in 30 seconds this Ma Ke still hasn't arrived then we'll consider it him forfeiting."

"I'm here, I'm here." Helplessly, Ma Ke finally appeared. With a storm

spell, he flew onto the stage. First he paid respects to the proctors then facing he quietly said: "I didn't do it on purpose yesterday. Don't be angry. Please do not be too harsh on me."

It turns out that he also knew I wouldn't forgive him. He's quite self-aware.

"Hmph! You already did enough. Could it be that you're telling me that the rice you've already eaten can still be spit out. Let me beat up you up one time then I'll forgive you."

"Don't! Boss, I'm really scared of pain. Please spare me!"

"You. Spare no effort and let me see your strength. Don't even hope that I'll show mercy."

"Fine. Boss, you be careful then." After saying this, he cast a fire shield on himself.

I also immediately cast a light prism shield. I don't dare to be careless. This fellow's strength is actually quite strong. It wouldn't have been hard for him to have ranked first.

"Come Boss." Ma Ke also knew that it's impossible for me to be lenient on him. Without any better option, he's forced to use his full strength. Neither of us knew the other's strength, but from the rankings, we both knew the other is a formidable opponent. Not using our full strength will lead to only one result, being beaten up by the other.

The elementary spell, fireball, came flying towards me. I lifted my left hand and used the light prism shield to face the fireball. In a moment, the fireball arrived then suddenly moved, thus going around my light prism shield to my back. Truly worthy of being top ranker in magic control. As expected, he's difficult to deal with. I immediately used teleportation to dodge to the side while shooting a light arrow at him. The light arrow hit his fire shield, with absolutely no effect on it. At this moment, his fireball is once again chasing me.

"Your fireball won't explode???"

"Hehe. Boss, this isn't an ordinary fireball. It's concentrated fire

essence, so I can simultaneously control up to 4 fireballs. Can you avoid them all?" While saying this, he casted 3 more fireballs. Four fireballs came at me from different directions. With this, I can also handle it. I fled.

The audience began booing. "Unexpectedly the top ranker is running away from several fireballs that are chasing him. How could this be!"

I think to myself, not being afraid of the fireballs is easier said than done, but I have the ability so I have to try.

I used teleportation to run away for a while then I suddenly realized this won't do. Our magic power doesn't have much of a difference and right now my magic power consumption is even greater than his. I can't dodge anymore, otherwise I will lose. Looks like I have no other choice but to use a few dirty tricks.

Thinking this, I immediately used teleportation to move to Ma Ke's side. Then I used my left hand's light prism shield to hit his body. Ma Ke's fire shield is this strong, almost as strong as my light shield. Furthermore, Ma Ke was proud of himself as he watched me be chased round and round by the fireballs but didn't think I would suddenly appear at his side. Due to being hit by my light prism shield, he fell down. As a result of losing his concentration, he released the fireballs causing them to explode in the corner.

"Wow. Boss is even capable of this."

I don't reply, but instead move to his side and give him a left hook. Ma Ke dodged to his left, while using sending the intermediate class magic, Cruel Flame, towards me. I move backwards out of the way.

"Boss, this is what you forced me to do. Oh, fire spirit, heed my summons, form boundless meteors and annihilate my enemy!"

Crap! This fellow is still really fierce. Advanced area fire magic, Flaming Meteor. I can't help but recognize that his strength is powerful. The stage is too small after all. If he used this in open space, it would be able to cover 200 square meters, so it definitely wouldn't be able to hit me. However this stage is only 15 by 15 meters.

I know that the light spirit shield definitely will be unable to resist it. So while risking my life: "O great light essences, my friends, I earnestly request you all to assemble into countless numbers of sharp blades and annihilate everything!"

Light Severing Sword VS. Flaming Meteor. The outcome, I'll tell tomorrow.

## Chapter 6: Still Number One

Sitting in the middle seat of the proctors, a white robed mage looking to be in his 80s sighed and said: "The world is truly different now. Nowadays children who haven't even entered intermediate magic academy are able to use advanced magic. To think that in those days I was the same age as them."

On the seat beside him, an old red robed mage said: "Yes. These two children are both quite good. They have good development prospects. You see, that one called Zhang Gong, he's so young yet he created a defensive spell. And that Ma Ke is also pretty good. His magic control is not only quite good to be able to properly control the fireballs path, but he's also to control energy to within a hair's width of his limit. Not bad. It seems that he majors in fire magic. I'll investigate his nature and see whether or not I can pass on my legacy to him."

"Ma Ke is not bad. That Zhang Gong seems to major in light magic. There's no one besides Zhang Gong in this time period to learn my light magic. No matter what, I must make him my apprentice."

Wow. These two old mage's magic crest, (On the left side of a mage's robe, on the chest is the proof of a mage's rank, the magic crest) surprisingly are both made from purple magic crystals. That is to say they are two of the Tianwu continent's remaining 10 Grand Mages.

On the stage, me and Ma Ke were fighting desperately, unaware of the schemes of two the Grand Mages. At the moment, both of us are supporting our spells as if our life depends on it.

This is the first time I have used Light Severing Sword, so I didn't know how effective it would be. I sensed my magic power being depleted. The first wave of light swords already met the flaming meteor. Ah. It seems my Light Severing Sword's power is a bit bigger. Some of the smaller flaming meteors burst open, while the larger flaming meteors were able to counteract the light severing swords. I see that my magic is winning, so I release even more magic power.

My absolute magic power is a little bit higher than Ma Ke's. His greatest mistake was to use advanced magic to compete with me. If he used small spells with his magic controlling skill to compete, then the outcome would be truly hard to say. However, his Flaming Meteor wastes too much magic power. Right now he can only barely manage cast this spell, thus he's unable to concentrate and use his spirit to control it that well.

The stage becomes scarred by our two spells. The Flaming Meteor scorched it black, while the Light Severing Swords cut the stage, thus leaving it riddled with scars. Ma Ke's mage robe has been cut in several places, while my clothes have been burnt black in many areas. (I don't have any money to buy a mage robe. Those are really expensive.) Both of our magic powers have already been overused, now we're only relying on willpower.

"Boss, I'm on the point of death. Please spare me." Ma Ke weakly said. Right after he said so, his all of his flaming meteors disappeared. Instead, he uses the fire shield to protect himself as he has no more magic power to sustain it. As a result of even his spiritual power being overused, he lost consciousness. I immediately ceased releasing magic power. I didn't want to accidentally wound him. If he was able to persist a bit more, I would also be on the point of death. Indeed, this fellow is very strong.

My magic power is also nearly depleted. I slowly stood up and walked to his side. "Hey, hey. You loathsome fellow, this still isn't enough!"

Seeing that I could still stand, the proctor on the stage promptly declared: "Ma Ke has exhausted his magic power. Zhang Gong Wei is victorious." Hearing that I won, I felt a burst of joy. Right now I already don't have any strength to think about the future."

After declaring the result, the first-aid teachers immediately came to the stage and used recovery magic to treat us. I also follow Ma Ke's footsteps and lost consciousness.

.....

When I woke up I was already back at the inn. Teacher Xiu was sitting

by my side guarding me.

“You’re awake. Not bad. You’re still number one. Now that you’re awake, teacher is relieved. You go rest some more.”

I don’t know what to say, in any case, it’s this way. I closed my eyes and began meditating.

.....

The next day when I woke up the sun was already setting. Teacher Xiu wasn’t present. I got up and stretched. Good. I went downstairs and the boss just happened to be there.

“Uncle, is there anything to eat? I’m really hungry!”

“There is. I’ll get you some.” Maybe the boss also knew that I got first place on the exam so he treated me especially nice today. A moment later a piping hot pot of beef potato stew is given to me. It’s really fragrant! My drool is leaking out. “Thank you uncle. I’ll be eating now then.”

“Don’t eat so quickly! You’ll choke.” Seeing me already wolfing down my food, the boss pats me head.

As a result of my great effort in this struggle, the beef I acquired was annihilated by my light plus the six bowls of rice due to my great grades. After this meal, I could go 2 days without eating.

“Teacher Xiu, you’re back.” Just as I finished eating, I saw that Teacher Xiu is already back.

“Yes. I already went to get your admission notice. Let’s return to the room now.”

Back at the room, Teacher Xiu gave me the acceptance notice with gold engravings.

“Zhang Gong ah. Tomorrow you can go register. In 1 week you will officially start attending class, but for now you can go get familiar with the school environment. Teacher will be leaving tomorrow. I have already paid your tuition fee for this semester. You must study properly. When teacher has time I will come back to visit you. For now I will go back to

Senke city and tell your parents the inform your parents of your great results. Afterwards I might roam around, maybe I'll even visit the Xiuda kingdom.

"Teacher, you're leaving tomorrow? I would hate to part with you." These words, at the very least, are half true. In this long period of time we have been together, Teacher Xiu has truly treated me very well.

"As long as you properly study, that will be enough to repay teacher." Teacher Xiu revealed a benevolent smile while stroking my head. From within his clothes he took out a small pouch and gave it to me. It sunk into my hand. "The academy is a closed environment, basically impossible to spend any money. Hold onto these 50 gold coins and only use them in an emergency. When the semester is over teacher will come and pick you up."

Wow. This is the most money I have ever held since my birth. "Thank you."

"Oh, that's right. Last time we bought that magical beast egg. Take it out. Teacher will watch you hatch it today."

"Okay." I've been anticipating my magical beast for a long time. I immediately took out the white magical beast egg.

## Chapter 7: Magical Beast's Birth

I held the magical beast egg in my hands and began gathering magic power. (After 1 days rest, my magic power has already recovered to by seven tenths.) Light essence flowed from my hand into the magical beast egg, causing it to float in the air. I used my left hand to draw a magic hexagram. With the magical beast egg in the center, I began reciting an incantation.

"All living creatures on this world, bear witness, I, Zhang Gong Wei, will share my energy with this creature before me, contract!" I bit my middle finger (it really hurts) and let a single drop of blood fall on top of the magical beast egg. Instantly, the magical beast egg began emitting a dazzling golden light.

"Ah! A growing type magical beast." Teacher Xiu said in astonishment.

The magical beast egg began to crack open. From within a small white triangular head peeked out. It turned left and right, looking at it's surroundings. He flung his head back and when he saw me, he gave a joyous cry. Whoosh He scuttled over onto my body and licked my face with his small tongue. It turns out it is actually a small white snake. (Oi. It isn't Bai Su Zhen)(TL: From "Legend of the White Snake") It sure is cute. On top of its triangular head there are 2 eyes that sparkle like black gemstones. A layer of unusually exquisite scale covers him. On his head there is a gold stripe that runs all the way to his tail. Indeed, he's really adorable.

"Teacher Xiu, what magical beast is this?"

"Ah!" Teacher Xiu woke up from his astonishment and came over. "Zhang Gong ah. You obtained a treasure. This is a growth type magical beast that is only met once every hundred years! Although he is merely a 1st rank magical beast, as your strength increases, his strength will increase in correspondence. However, before he has grown powerful, you must not by all means let other people see him. Because no rank of magical beast will permit growth type magical beasts to mature."

“O!” I didn’t really pay attention to Teacher Xiu’s words to the extent that afterwards....

“I’ll give you a name that’s good. What should it be? Xiao Bai? No, that’s not good. It’s like a small dog’s name. You have a gold stripe from head to tail, so you’ll be called Xiao Jin. All right?” I questioningly looked at Xiao Jin and asked. He seems to be very happy, scuttling back and forth.

“Well then, Zhang Gong, carry him on your body. Wait until his rank increases a bit then you can make a contract with him as your fate beast. A fate beast is able to have a spiritual connection with their master. Furthermore, they can be summoned with the the simplest summoning incantation. For now let him cling to your body and absorb your energy.”

I let Xiao Jin coil around my stomach as well as assemble some light essence to the place he is coiled around. Xiao Jin greedily absorbed my energy. He absorbed half of my energy before he stopped. It seems he fell asleep on my body.

“Teacher Xiu, how can he absorb half of my body’s energy? Don’t normal magical beasts only require a bit of their masters energy to survive? If he absorbs this much, he’ll absorb it until I die!”

“This is the first time he’s absorbing your energy, of course he needs to absorb a bit more. In the future he shouldn’t absorb that much. You must properly practice magic. Only if you grow stronger, then will your magical beast grow stronger.”

At last I have a magical beast. Haha. It’s a growth type too! Too wonderful!

For the first time, I unexpectedly aroused a studious mentality due to wanting to grow my magical beast.

The next day early in the morning, Teacher Xiu brought me to the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. He lectured me and lectured me again. Finally, with red eyes he left. Strangely, the me who always rejected him unexpectedly doesn’t feel even a bit happy.

I took a deep breath. Forget about it. Don't think about it. Teacher Xiu will still come back and visit me. I need to go report now.

I arrived at the first story of the school building located in the center of the academy to report. I knocked on the door.

"Please come in." A deep voice resounded.

"Hello teacher. I'm here to check in."

"O. Come. You're this exam's top ranker, Zhang Gong right? In the future make sure to put in great effort and win honor for the academy."

Entering the registration department, I clearly saw that he's actually a wind element great mage. (From the emblem on the mage robes I identified him.) Approximately 50 years old.

"As a result of your outstanding results during the match, the academy arranged for you to start in the second grade. The second grade? I haven't even started school and they let me skip a year???"

"Teacher, may I ask how many grades there are in the academy?"

"There are 5 grades. In the 5th grade there are graduation exams. Advanced magic academy acceptance is in accordance with the graduation exam results. (Royal Intermediate Magic Academy graduates are all able to enter an advanced magic academy.) Since the establishment of the academy, the most outstanding student was able to achieve the rank of Great Mage before graduating. You must work hard. I heard from other teachers that you're already on the threshold of an advanced mage. Work hard and break the record."

Crap! Advancing a rank is so easy! If I graduate from intermediate magic academy as a magister, won't I be a monster?

"Teacher, is it possible for me to start in the first grade?"

"I am unable to do this. This was arranged by the academy."

There's nothing to be done. I received a textbook and the dormitory key from the teacher. I departed from the registration department and went towards my dormitory.

The academy's dormitories have 4 people per room. I arrived at the second year dormitory. My dorm room is number 208. I used the key to open the door. It seems like there's no one here yet. I suppose they're in class. There's only 1 empty bed left. After putting in order my luggage, I lied down on my bed and began meditating. (Sleeping)

Who's hitting me? Bewildered, I opened my eyes. It's green hair. Just at the time, he hit my head. "Get up, get up. How did you get in? Who let you sleep here?" So rude and unreasonable. He seems to be a noble's son.

"Ah! Hello, I'm a new student."

"Newly arrived? You couldn't be this year's exam's Zhang Gong Wei?"

"Yes, that's me. You know me?"

"I heard you're really pushy. Unexpectedly you're directly entering the second grade. Lets go have a contest for a bit."

"I don't want to. Actually, I'm just really lucky. That's all. In the future I'll recognize you as the boss. How about that? There's no way I can defeat you. As soon as I saw you I could tell you have reached the rank of Great Mage, how could I, an elementary mage, compete with you?" Because I didn't want to compete with him, I began flattering him.

"En. That's good. From now on you're my younger brother, so you must be obedient!" It really is a thousand wearing ten thousand wearing a horse's skin."

(TL: translated literally cause I have no idea what it means.)

It seems from now on I'll depend on him to pass my days.

## Chapter 8: First Class

“Students, starting from today, our class will have two new students. This is this year’s entrance exam’s top ranker, Zhang Gong Wei and this is Ma Ke Sai. Let us welcome their arrival.” The classroom resounded with applause.

Today at dawn, the education department’s teacher assigned me to this second grade’s A class. I didn’t expect that Ma Ke was also assigned to the second grade, as well as the same class as me. From yesterday, I recognize Boss’s green hair. He’s also in this class. In the future, it seems that I will experience hardships.

As I was continually contemplating, I basically didn’t hear anything of what the teacher said and soon class was over. After finishing class, the teacher told me and Ma Ke about the academy’s educational system. In the afternoon is self-practice. Both the students and teachers are surprisingly flexible. The students can follow their own preferences in how they practice. If they don’t understand something, then they can ask the teachers or go to the library and consult some books. This is completely different from my expectations of strict, cut-throat students and teachers.

“Boss, where is your dorm room? I’m in room 209.” As soon as we exited through the door, Ma Ke began chatting with me.

“I’m in room 208, so we’re neighbors. Do the students in your room bully you?”

“No way. They’re all busy with magic practice and meditation. They don’t even notice me. Boss, are you still mad about last time?”

“How could I be so petty? I already punished you during the exam. Even if it’s in the past now, in the future, be careful when you speak!”

“Okay, okay.”

Right at that moment, an uninvited guest came. “Little brother, come over here and help me with my daily duties.” It’s the green-haired Boss!

“Who are you to dare speak to my boss that way!?” Unexpectedly, Ma Ke is quite fierce.

“Then who are you? Are you already done with life? He is my newly accepted little brother from yesterday. I let him help me with a small matter, so what?” Green-hair spit to the side as he said this.

“What, you dare to treat my boss like your little brother!? Then wouldn’t I be the little brother’s little brother? Unacceptable, I challenge you to a duel.”

“Who’s afraid of who? If you have the ability, then come. Don’t tell me you’re just a simple freshman with nothing extraordinary about him.” During their dialog, I had a feeling that Green Hair is quite strict. He probably wouldnt....

“Fire essences, listen to my command, condense into a fireball and annihilate my enemies!” Because they didn’t know each other’s strength, Ma Ke first casted a small magic to test the opponent’s strength.

“Don’t! It’s my fault. Please forgive me. My father is the prime minister. Read about my father in the newspapers (300 words have been omitted here)” No way. Me and Ma Ke glanced at each other. It turns out that he really is an oaf. Recalling how this oaf deceived me yesterday, I need to release some stress. Immediately, I signalled Ma Ke with a glance then we yelled: “Flatten him!” We don’t need magic (In fear of beating him to death). At once, we began conducted a beating education for Green Hair.

“Green haired bedbug, how come it’s you again? You are truly the greatest loss of face for this academy. Why are you two lowering yourselves to this bedbug’s level?” This last sentence was directed at us. The former is a second grade student (On the school uniform there is a mark to differentiate between grades) with thick black hair. Although he is only around 10 years old, his face has a steadfast expression. It seems like I’ve seen him before today. I think he is a student in our class.

“Hello, it’s like this....” After hearing my description of the events, the black haired youngster can’t help but laugh heartily.

“So you two are those two new students. The green haired bedbug is one

of the highlights of our academy. He is trash that doesn't know anything at all. He was only able get accepted into the academy by using his father's reputation granted by His Majesty."

"Hello, My name is Zhang Gong Wei. His father is the prime minister, yet you all seem to bully him? You're not afraid of being him retaliating?" I questioningly asked.

"Hello, my name is Wo Ke Nuo Shi, the second grade representative. I major in wind magic. Those who are able to enter the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy are all outstanding talents. Here, only strength speaks. Groan Trash like him... Furthermore, just our vice-principal, in all of the eastern continent, is the 10th ranked mage and the 2nd ranked magister. Within the kingdom, he has an exceedingly high status. In the academy's affairs, only those with exceedingly high statuses have a say." Wo Ke proudly explained.

There are still this many reasons. Ah. "May I ask, what is the grade representative?" Still puzzled, Ma Ke asked.

"You don't even know this? It's the grade's most powerful" The green haired bedbug hurriedly answered.

"Oh. Then Boss, can it be said that you are the representative of the new students?" Ma Ke said to me.

In Wo Ke's eyes were a violent radiance. I thought it that if eyes could kill, I would surely kill Ma Ke 100 times over. Seeing me staring at him unwaveringly, Ma Ke knew that he once again said something wrong.

"You two are actually so strong. Then in our spare time we can spar for a bit." As expected, a troublesome matter has come. This Ma Ke, in order to ensure my safety, I definitely can't be with him in the future.

"We're newly arrived students, how could we be on the same level as senior? Wait for us to study for two more years then we can spar." Once again, I promptly used the miracle of flattery. Simultaneously, I suggest to Wo Ke that since we are new students, he would be the big taking advantage of the small.

"That's fine. You two must work hard! Don't lose face for our A class. Well then, I'll be going now. Green Hair, you still haven't gone to do your daily duty." It turns out he was here to find Green Hair to do the daily duty.

Me and Ma Ke walked around the academy. Everywhere we went, we saw many students. In addition to the newly admitted students, all of the higher grade students rarely make a sound. All of them are quietly practicing magic. This place's learning atmosphere is truly strong.

"Boss, it looks like we must work hard. Look at these students, they're all practicing diligently. I reckon those people dressed extravagantly are nobility, yet they are unexpectedly incessantly practicing magic. Indeed worthy of being the Royal Magic Academy."

I also sighed somewhat. "Yes. Let's go take a look at the library and look for whatever magic books we require. Then we can properly practice." The previously always lazy me, felt that I had no choice but to study. Witnessing this ambiance which is so wonderful.

# Chapter 9: Magical Beast's Magic

Me and Ma Ke arrived at the library. It truly is huge. It has a total of 6 floors, with each floor having an area of 3000 square meters. The library is divided into three sections, floors 1 and 2 is some basic magic theory and elementary spells(rank 1-3 magic), floors 3, 4 and 5 are intermediate spells (rank 4 and 5 magic), floor 6 is advanced spells. With our level, we can enter the second sector. (The sectors have restricted access, only those at the required level can enter.) The number of people on floors 3, 4 and 5 are the greatest.

Me and Ma Ke entered the 4th floor and went to look for our respective interests in magic. There are very few light magic books; I only found one comprehensive intermediate light magic book and two intermediate spatial magic books. Ma Ke found quite a few books regarding fire magic and wind magic. We went to the reading area and began reading with keen interest.

There was nothing special in the intermediate light magic book, leaving me awfully disappointed. I opened up a magic book called “Spatial Combat Magic: 100 Examples”. This book really caught my interest. Inside is a spatial mage’s combat experiences. Unknowingly, the time passed by quickly.

“Zhang Gong, it’s dark out now. We should go back now! We still need to attend class tomorrow.”

“Okay.” Oh, that’s right. In the evening, I need to look for a place without anyone to examine my magical beast, Xiao Jin.

After eating dinner in the dining hall, we returned to our respective dorm rooms. Green Hair doesn’t dare to say anything when he sees me. The other two roommates are both meditating. I’m still not familiar with them and don’t know their names.

I secretly snuck out to the academy’s rear courtyard. “Hear my name, my magical beast Xiao Jin, obey my command and come forth.” A mass of light essence flashed and Xiao Jin’s adorable figure appeared before me. I

hold in my hands, carefully inspecting him. It seems like he has grown a bit bigger than when he was hatched. His growth is quite fast. In just 1 day he has grown this much.

“Xiao Jin, do you know any magic!?” With anticipation I asked.

Xiao Jin doesn’t seem to really understand anything I said, simply using his head to rub against me. “Xiao Jin, light arrow.” He shook his head. Nothing happened. No way, he’s a growth type magical beast. He should be able to do anything I can. How can this be?

“Foolish child, in order to communicate with your magical beast, you must use your mind. If you speak to it, it won’t understand you at all.” A benevolent voice came over.

“Who?” I immediately turned my head. Wearing an ordinary white mage robe (an unranked mage robe), an old fellow appeared behind me.

“Who are you? Are you a student’s teacher?”

“That’s right. You and I major in the same element. I’m also a light mage!” The old fellow came up to me and patted my head.

“Try communicating with your magical beast using your mind. See if it works.”

“Okay!” In any case, there’s nothing else I could do. For the time being, I’ll try it out. I focused my mind and through my spiritual connection with Xiao Jin, I told him to release a light arrow. I also told him how to cast light arrow, as well as its effects. Xiao Jin looked at me for a bit, then his body began giving off a layer of white light. A light arrow came out of his mouth then hit the nearby tree stump.

“And it succeeded!” As I found out how to make Xiao Jin cast spells, I was exceedingly happy. After Xiao Jin cast the spell, his whole body became soft. It seems he has exhausted his strength. I immediately summoned him back into my body.

“Thank you old grandpa.”

“You’re really talented in magic, so quickly mastering the

communication method between you and your magical beast. Not bad. Do you want to study light magic under me!?” In the middle of his laughter, the old fellow faced me and asked.

Ah! I don’t want to. I don’t want someone looking after me.

“No need, no need. I prefer studying by myself. Old grandpa, goodbye. I need to go back and sleep. I still have to attend class tomorrow.” I immediately turn around and escape. I don’t want to meet another demon teacher.

As the white bearded old fellow watched my figure gradually get farther and farther, he said to himself: “What personality! Other people beg me to accept them yet I still don’t accept them as my student. Unexpectedly when I want to accept someone as my disciple, he doesn’t want to study under me. Hehe” He can’t help but shake his head.

Returning to the dorm room, I find that green hair is already fast asleep, playing chess with the “God of Dreams”. The other two are still meditating. I lie down on the bed and begin communicating with my uncle and aunty light essences. Light essence entered between my eyebrows. I amass a portion of the light essences in my body and the gather the other portion to Xiao Jin’s location. With a satisfied appearance, Xiao Jin emitted a happy sound, expressing his pleased mood.

Recently whenever I meditate, my strength doesn’t seem to increase at all. If my body is a bottle, then right now it seems to be filled up. How come it’s unable to increase? If it’s like this, then I rather give even more light essence to Xiao Jin. I slowly began to will more light essence to gather at Xiao Jin’s location. I felt Xiao Jin’s pure light essence energy affecting his body. It seems like his body is gradually growing. It’s a good sense of accomplishment. Oh. It’s like feeding a child, yes that’s right. (You’re still a child yourself) Maintaining this state, I entered the land of dreams.

.....

First thing in the morning, Ma Ke came over to invite me to eat breakfast together. Today for breakfast there’s steamed buns, eggs,

congee, cow's milk and what not. I think I ate 2 steamed buns, 3 eggs, 1 bowl of congee and 1 cup of milk. The students beside me all looked at me foolishly. Even the dining hall teachers are considering whether or not to raise my food fees a bit. Who cares what they think, I eat my fill first then say: "I'm full. Let's go to class Ma Ke."

We arrived to the classroom bouncing. Wow. Apart from us two, everyone else is already here, including the green haired bed bug. Could it be that I remembered the class start time wrong? Now way. It's 8:30.

"Zhang Gong, Ma Ke, quickly go take you seats. In the future, arrive to class half an hour earlier. We're the A class, we're different from the other classes." The teacher said with a very proper appearance. Yesterday she introduced herself as Xiu Lan Li, the second..

"Yes Teacher Xiu Lan." I rushed Ma Ke's tongue to spit, then quickly went to our respective seats.

"Well then, we'll be beginning class. Today our main topic is long range delivery magic." Teacher Xiu Lan began an unceasing torrent of explanations regarding the magic's origin and its applications. I have already been taught by these kinds of demon teachers. I want to sleep. I finally heard what seemed to be that position is very important in long range delivery magic and so on. The following sentence woke me up when I heard it. Class ended.

## Chapter 10: Academy Life

[TL: I've changed essence to elements as that was just a arbitrary choice I made in the beginning and element should be more accurate. Also for idioms, you guys may have noticed but I don't really put those in there. That's cause I use MDBG for a lot of the phrases I don't recognize. Since it gives the meaning of idioms, I just directly use those instead of trying to decipher what the original idiom was. Basically this saves a lot time translating but comes at the cost of all those ancient Chinese idioms that most people don't understand.]

\*

"Zhang Gong, what teacher talked about today was very interesting. Why were you sleeping the whole time?" Ma Ke asked me after class.

"I have already learned these topics before. I also know long range teleportation. It's just that I have never used it before. With this being the case, what else am I to do but sleep? Don't forget, my minor is spatial magic." I lazily said.

"Oh! It's like this. What a pity that I didn't learn spatial magic. Then, can you teach me?"

"Well then, lets go. I want to go eat. We'll go practice magic in the afternoon."

.....

"Zhang Gong, I'm not going to sit with you anymore if you continue eating like this." Watching me wolf down my food 5th bowl of rice, Ma Ke complained a bit.

"Hey, I'm still growing. If I don't eat, then how will I grow? Who's going to prevent you from eating?" I indistinctly said.

Finally finishing my 6th bowl of rice, Ma Ke began dragging me out of the dining hall. From this time on, I had a new nickname: Light Element Rice Bucket.

"Wow! Zhang Gong, quickly come watch. That water mage is really

pretty.” Abruptly, Ma Ke said in awe.

“Really?” I turned my head. Wow! My blood went straight to my forehead. She truly is very pretty. Covering her body is an azure magic robe, dark blue hair, white skin and two big sparkling eyes. Even though she’s still a child, she will definitely quickly grow up to become a beautiful woman. Indeed, pretty good. Although good is good, I still don’t feel an instant attraction to her. Maybe it’s because I’m too young.

“She’s very pretty, but she’s not my type. I’m going to go back to the dorm room and sleep.” I say so in a big show for Ma Ke.

“Boss, if you don’t want her, then I’m going to go chase her!”

“You go chase her then. I’m going now.” I’ll watch how this youngster dies. Such a pretty girl surely has more than a few people chasing after her. Hey, I’m not going to join on the fun.

After returning to the dorm room, I once again began meditating for the sake of Xiao Jin (I give everything that I receive from meditating to Xiao Jin, so of course I’m meditating for his sake).

In the afternoon, I awaken from my meditation. In any case, it doesn’t matter. I need to find a place without people to practice magic. I don’t want to get punched in the face in the future due to a misfired spell.

Today I’ll practice this then, the intermediate class light spell, the Primary Spirit Recovery spell. I recited the incantation in the book and began gathering magic power. (Of course I improved the incantation a bit). “Great light elements, your friend requests you to save the creature before me!” Following my incantation, a layer of white light appeared around me. Little by little, the light gathered on my hands. Wa, I forgot something. Who am I supplying this to? I fell. I sure am crazy.

However the Gods truly take good care of me. Right at that time, a man beaten to look like he had a pig’s head quickly ran towards me. He loudly shouted: “Save me Zhang Gong! I’m about to die!” Who is this person and how does he know my name? I help but be somewhat baffled. Well, whatever. He’s just in time for me to test out how powerful my magic is.

I use the white light within my hands to cover up the pig head before me. “This spell still consumes a lot of magic power, consuming nearly one third of my magic power before I could treat this pig head’s injury. Wa, no way! To my surprise it’s actually Ma Ke!

“Ma Ke, how did you end up like this?”

“Don’t bring it up. Boss, what spell is that? It’s really powerful! It only took a moment to cure me.”

“Hehe, this is the intermediate light recovery spell, Primary Spirit Recovery.

“Ah, this is an intermediate spell. I thought it was an advanced class spell. The power of this spell is about the same as advanced water treatment magic.”

It turns out that my recovery magic is this effective. Pretty good. I don’t need to fear being injured in the future.

“Ma Ke, you still didn’t say how you became like this?”

“Boss Zhang Gong, you must act in my place. Ah, the opponent is very fierce.” After saying this, Ma Ke began telling me the whole story.

So it was actually like this, Ma Ke went to chase that girl and approached her to strike up a conversation by asking: “I’ll treat you to some popsicles all right little sister?”, “What’s your name?”, “What grade are you in?” and so on. She basically took no notice of him and bluntly said: “So annoying. This housefly should quickly get lost, or else I’ll give you an ugly death.” Ma Ke obviously couldn’t accept this, as he continued bragging about him skipping a grade and how he grew to be so handsome. Finally, she urgently called a fourth grade student to beat him into this state.

After listening to his story, I couldn’t help but rejoice in his misfortune. Serves his right. I’ve already predicted this would happen. Haha!

“You’re an idiot. Don’t you know how to hit back? Aren’t you able to use advanced magic?

"Fight back? You don't know how powerful that guy is. He can use 6th rank magic as he pleases. I'm lucky he started off leniently with me, only using magic to bind me."

"Then how did you get that appearance?"

"Although he didn't use magic to beat me, he can still use his fists. I was bound and couldn't fight back, so of course I ended up like that." Ma Ke had the appearance of someone remembering a painful past.

"Who let you hit on people as you please. Serves you right. In the future, don't provoke other people."

"No, I still must go. You don't understand. Her angry appearance is really cute. She truly is very pretty!" Ma Ke's eyes have already become heart shaped.

"No way you understand these things at such a young age. You're still only 11 years old. Even if it's puppy love, it's still too early. Aren't you afraid of being beaten?"

"Boss, the power of love is great. With the backing of your powerful recovery magic, what would I be afraid of? If worst comes to worst, you can use one of those recovery spells on me then I'll be fine." Ma Ke said with a virtuous face.

It's the Primary Spirit Recovery spell you idiot. Hnnng. If you continue to be troublesome, I'll stop caring about you. You can do as you see fit."

"No, please! Boss...." Ma Ke truly is a housefly, unceasingly bombarding me with his saliva.

I really can't stand him. To get it over with, I promised him I'll help him in the future as he's doing his best. However, I also warn him that he's not allowed to tell anyone that I'm healing him.

Is that girl really that attractive? To the point that he's willing to sacrifice his life? It's really hard to imagine. (The me who didn't understand the male-female relationships couldn't help but laugh at Ma Ke through my nose.)

## Chapter 11: Xiao Jin's Growth

"Boss, boss." Just as I finished preparations to go to class, Ma Ke came to find me.

"What is it?"

"Boss, I found out who beat up yesterday." Ma Ke told me while he gasped for breath.

"Who is it?" Ma Ke's words caught my interest.

"Boss, it seems there is still hope. That man is the elder brother of the girl I'm chasing! Haha. It seems like I still have hope." Ma Ke excitedly explained.

"Oh! Really? That's not bad then. You don't need to take revenge then."

"Of course I'm not taking revenge anymore. How could I possibly beat up my future wife's older brother!?"

"What! Your relationship hasn't even begun yet! What grade are they in?"

Hearing me ask this, Ma Ke seems to become a bit discouraged.

"That girl is pretty good, she's in the third grade, so she's older than us by two years. She also majors in water element magic. Her older brother is an influential figure, he's the chief for the fourth grade. He majors in fire magic. I heard he's one of the academy's top ten!"

"Wow! Yet you still dare to tease his younger sister. I genuinely admire your courage." I said as I rejoiced in his misfortune.

"The power of love is great. I must persevere. To persevere is to gain victory."

Ma Ke's face was brimming with enthusiasm. I smiled and said: "Go do your best then. Just don't get beaten to death by other people."

"So annoying, you're actually discouraging me. Lets quickly go to class."

While listening to the teacher's lecture, I was paying attention to Ma Ke. It looks like he's planning something. In one moment he'll frown and

in another he'll giggle. It's kind of funny. I threw a paper ball at him. He quivered then pouted at me. Just as I was distracted, I heard the teacher say: "Zhang Gong, answer this question."

"Ah! Oh. Yes."

"What is long range teleportation magic?" The teacher saw that i wasn't properly paying attention to the lecture so she deliberately picked me.

Haha. Unexpectedly she ask me this one. I calmed my mind.

"Long range teleportation magic uses spatial magic as a basis to instantly move long distances. It's like opening an imaginary passage in space to travel through. With advanced spatial magic, other people can be teleported too, but the success rate is very low. Unless the mage has extremely high control of magic, they generally won't use it." I orderly answered the question and proudly gave Ma Ke a glance.

"Correct. You can sit down now. Zhang Gong, your answer was very good, but in the future you need to pay attention to the lecture."

Somewhat embarrassed, I said: "Yes teacher."

Having been warned by the teacher, I didn't dare to let my mind wander again. I concentrated my attention and listened to the whole morning class. The tired me wanted to immediately go sleep.

With great difficulty, I endured until noon. After me and Ma Ke finished eating lunch, this fellow went to go conduct a large scale project of picking up girls. This fellow really is an early bloomer. I just want to go back and take an afternoon nap. Otherwise I'll have dark circles under my eyes which would damage my image of being a great hero.

After some beauty sleep, I felt that my whole body was brimming with light element. Although it can't grow anymore, the power all over my body is still pretty good. I opened the window curtains to see what's outside. Wow! It's already night. I slept for quite a long time. That's no good, I need to quickly go and eat dinner. Otherwise there won't be any dinner left.

With lightning speed, I ran to the dining hall. Still not bad. Although

dinner is about to end, they're still selling food. I quickly took enough food for three people like I was a gale sweeping up dead leaves.

"Wow! That's the Light Rice Bucket! You see, he can eat so much."

"Yea, he's like a pig."

From behind me came the sounds of laughter and whispering. They still care about how much other people eat! Truly annoying. I'll just ignore them. I have a good temperament. I accelerate my eating speed. After I finished eating, I ran back to the place where I encountered the white robed old man and summoned Xiao Jin.

In comparison to me, this fellow eats very little. I eat rice while he eats my painstakingly assembled light element! (Is it really exhausting? Isn't it assembled by sleeping!?)

Wow! He grows very quickly. He's not eating all that for nothing. "You're a small rice bucket. You can eat so much too!" Xiao Jin just kept rubbing himself against my hands. He already grown to three times his original size when he was just born. He's two feet long now and as wide as a cup of water.

"Let me see the progress that you've made recently."

After saying this, I began giving Xiao Jin commands in my mind. Really not too bad. He didn't eat all that light element for nothing. Right now Xiao Jin can already use all of the elementary light magic that I can use. But it seems that he still can't absorb light element directly from the air.

(Authors note: Growth type magical beast grow very quickly in the beginning and can learn all of their master's magics. Ranked magical beast can only learn magic according to the rank. As magical beasts grow in rank, their physical attacks also increase of course.)

I cheerfully returned Xiao Jin to my body. "Xiao Jin, we're going to go back and continue sleeping. You just need to continue growing properly."

My silhouette gradually faded. From a tall tree appeared that time's old mage.

“This youngster’s magical beast doesn’t seem to be an ordinary growth type magical beast. It’s growing too quickly. I don’t know what kind of special features it may have. This child will surely develop in a unique way in the future. I must make him my disciple. Hehe.” It truly isn’t respecting the old.

Without knowing that someone is scheming for me, I returned to the dormitory. Green hair is also here.

“Zhang Gong, last time was my fault. Please don’t be mad!” Testing the waters, Green hair said this to me.

“No problem. Just don’t make trouble for me in the future and that will do. I want to go sleep now.”

“Zhang Gong, I heard that your friend Ma Ke was beaten again today. It seems pretty miserable for him!”

“Ah! Really? Thank you Green hair, I’ll go see him.” Throwing off my sleepiness, I immediately arrived next door.

Wa. No way! He’s even more wretched than yesterday.

“Ma Ke, how come you didn’t find the a teacher to help treat you?”

“Boss, you came. I didn’t dare because I’m afraid of being expelled. In the academy, personal fights will cause you to be expelled. (But public competitions are allowed)”

“What good will telling me do?

Great light elements, your friend requests you to save the creature before me.” Even though I laugh at Ma Ke’s persistence on pursuing the girl, he still is my younger brother after all. How could I possibly not care about him!

This time this fellow will grow to have a long memory. Ma Ke said something and immediately disrupted my train of thought.

“Boss, thank you! Today she told me her name.”

I wildly fell. I looked at him with an expression as if I were looking at a freak.

“Boss, why are you looking at me like that?”

“If she told you her name, then how come you still got beaten?”

“Hehe. I found out when her brother called out her name. Her brother said that if I still keep looking for her, he'll break my leg. It seems that I'll have to wait. Not having a leg is not so good. Boss, do you know any methods to treat a broken leg???”

Ma Ke exposed his idiocy to me. Fortunately his roommates haven't returned yet. Otherwise, with such an embarrassing younger brother, I wouldn't have the face to meet people.

From within Ma Ke's dorm room a miserable shriek could be heard.

“Boss, don't hit me anymore. It was my bad. Please spare me.....”

## Chapter 12: Meeting Hai Yue Xing

Time passed by quickly and in the blink of an eye, three months had already gone by. I have also gradually adjusted to life at the academy. Compared to the time I studied under the Old Demon, this place is a lot more carefree. Everyday there's not much to do aside from attending classes in the morning. The rest of the day is basically free time for me. It's really is not bad.

During these three months my magic as a whole did not improve, especially in regards to my mana. However my spiritual strength has increased as well as my magic control. I really don't know how to further increase my mana. Ah, forget it. It doesn't matter. I'll think about it later. At light magic class, I've learned just one light spell, Tribute of Light. (An intermediate light auxiliary spell, mainly used for large-scale dispelling of Invasive Toxic Gas, a low level dark spell, and is also used in a few unusual situations). I have also improved my Light Prism Shield (my current Light Prism Shield can cover my entire body and has become an omnidirectional reflective defence spell. Haha.)

In regards to spatial magic, I have already reached the peak of short range teleportation. Obviously, it isn't possible to improve any further. I still don't dare to attempt long distance teleportation. The only improvement has been to Small Dimensional Decapitator. Right now I can finally control the spell. I tested it with MaKe, one of my Small Dimensional Decapitator can engulf one of his intermediate level spells. This is truly not too bad.

In this period of time the greatest growth will have to be credited to Xiao Jin. Right now, this little guy has grown to be quite impressive. He has grown to be 5 feet long. The gold stripe on the body has become much tougher than before, and most surprisingly of all is that he has grown a small golden horn on the top of his head. However, he is still very attached to me. Whenever I call him out to play, he only travels at most five meters away from me. He has also made further improvements with his ability. The current Xiao Jin already isn't inferior to 4th ranked magical beasts. He can use most of my intermediate level magic spells,

but unfortunately I don't know why he can't use spatial magic. As I watch him continue to grow, I've become really proud of him. I feel like he has already become part of my life. I would feel empty on days that I don't call him out to see it. A long period of peaceful time past by and I gradually forgot about the Old Devil's warnings. Until now I also did not want to come across any ranked magical beasts that meant harm to Xiao Jin.

What really makes me depressed is that the white robed magic teacher is always appearing in my life. Every time I bring Xiao Jin out to play at night, I almost always encounter him. This teacher bothers me and I can't hide from him no matter how hard I try. For this reason, I have tried moving to many different places. But this old man is like a shadow, I can't hide from him after all this time. In any case, I definitely do not recognize him as my teacher. See if he can make me, hehe. I don't want to live a restricted life!

This fellow, Ma Ke, is simply too willful. Everyday he always goes to bother what's her name (until now I still do not know what that girl's name is, and I haven't even met her. I don't want to be thought of as some kind of red haired rice cake (Note: Red haired rice cake is nickname students gave to Ma Ke. Who made it so that he stuck onto people in such a way. Haha.) Although he frequently wore a beaten nose and a clearly swollen face, he still never tires of it. It really suits him. According to what he says, he's making a lot of progress. Although all the girls don't bother to take notice of him, now he generally doesn't get beaten up anymore because that girl's older brother is the fourth grade's chief and may have been touched by Ma Ke's actions. He gave Ma Ke a mission, that is as long as Ma Ke's magic level exceeds his own, he will let Ma Ke chase after his little sister. Since then, Ma Ke desperately practiced everyday as if he were mad. Right now when compared to me, nothing is lacking. He is growing quite rapidly.

"Ma Ke, lets go eat." Class had just ended.

"Oh!" I recently discovered that he practices himself silly. As if apart from practicing, there is nothing else worth caring about.

“That pretty girl has come looking for you.”

“Where, where?!” Ma Ke’s eyes immediately lit up.

“Boss, You don’t have any other brothers, and yet you deceive me!” complained Ma Ke when he didn’t see the girl.

“Brat, You’ve been bewitched. Is she really that attractive?”

“You wouldn’t know. When I saw her, I was already content.” Ma Ke’s eyes revealed hearts ♥. He is truly insufferable.

“Right, what’s her name? Even now I still don’t know it.”

“What will you do with it ???” Ma Ke looked at me with an alert expression.

I kicked him with my leg. “Bah! When have you become so infatuated that I can’t ever know the name of this pretty girl.”

“Oh, Her name is Hai Yue Xing. Her older brother’s name is Hai Ri Xing.”

“Her name isn’t bad. Have you made any progress recently?”

“I’m still looking for an opportunity. She still doesn’t pay attention to me. Compared to her, her brother is more friendly. Oh right. Boss, this brother asked me several times who treats my wounds!”

“Did you tell him?” I asked nervously.

“I didn’t. I could never betray you. Truly.” Ma Ke said with a smile.

“You also suffer so much, letting them practice Kung Fu on you all day long.”

“I still have you to take care of me. For my life’s happiness, I must practice magic diligently.” It seems having a goal isn’t bad. I also have a goal. It is to be free! Hehe.

“Hurry, if we’re late there won’t be food.” Having Ma Ke remind me immediately brought forth my vigor and I ran. Eating food is a very important part of my life! I ate, I ate, I ate and ate and ate.

After we finished eating, Ma Ke went to the dormitory to meditate, and I

also thought of going back and taking a nap so I went with him. While walking, Ma Ke suddenly stopped.

“What are you doing?” I nudged him.

“Boss, look, it’s her.”

I looked where Ma Ke’s finger pointed to, and sure enough it was Hai Yue Xing. By her side were 3,4 academy students. This was the second time that I have seen her.

“Boss, lets go over and say hello.”

“If you want to go, go by yourself. I don’t want people to think I’m like you, the academy’s famous Red Haired Rice Cake.”

“Fine, boss. You want to see who’s more famous? I can’t possibly be worse than you, the White Rice Bucket.”

“You’re looking to get a beating, brat!” Am I really that famous? How did I not notice?

“Come on boss, I’d feel a lot braver if you went along!” Really, there is nothing that can be done. Ma Ke pulled me across.

“Wa, today not only do we meet with Red Haired Rice Cake, even the White Rice Bucket came to pursue you too!” A girl at Hai Yue’s side said with a smile.

And yet I didn’t notice them. I only saw the 15 year old student wearing a fire magic robe. Wa! He’s really strong! With such a ferocious aura, he gave me the impression that he wasn’t any weaker than the Old Devil. He also noticed me and our gazes met. The interior of his eyes burst with a shining brilliance.

# Chapter 13: Competition Without a Choice

“You’re that second year student known as the White Rice Bucket?” The student wearing the fire magic robe was not like the others, who had their attention focused on Hai Yue and Ma Ke. Rather, he was unblinkingly looked at me. He must be Hai Yue’s older brother Hai Ri Xing.

“Hello, my name is Zhang Gong Wei, a second grader majoring in light magic. You are?” I replied.

“I am Hai Ri Xing. You’re good friends with this piece of sticky rice cake?” Hai Ri pointed at Ma Ke.

I hesitated and said, “Yes, we are very good friends.”

“With that said, are you the one that treated his injuries from before?” Hai Ri menacingly questioned.

“Wa! kind of..”

“It’s either yes or no, What is it!?”

“Yes, I used light recovery magic to treat him.”

“Then today I will get to see how well you can treat your own injuries.” said Hai Ri from the bottom of his lungs with a formidable vigor.  
“Let us exchange pointers.”

Just when Hai Ri advanced toward me uninterrupted, Ma Ke did not fare much better than me. Everybody by Hai Yue simply didn’t pay attention to him as he desperately tried to make them laugh.

A third year girl by Hai Yue’s side scolded him: “You Red Haired Rice Cake, always coming to stick to us and asking how we’re doing. You alone are like a toad that trying to eat swan meat!”

Ma Ke helplessly answered: “I can’t do anything about that. Who made me fall in love with her at first sight!?” This kid’s skin isn’t of ordinary thickness. As expected.

Hai Yue finally said, “ You are very bothersome, can you not annoy me?

You're so young and rotten; you'll grow up to be a playboy."

Hearing Hai Yue's words, Ma Ke was immediately enchanted by her voice, like that of a black-naped oriole. As for the words they contained, well...

Looking at Ma Ke's eyes change into hearts ♥ and not replying, Hai Yue impatiently said: "Hey, did you hear me!?"

"Ah! What? What did you just say?"

"I said you were very bothersome...." Hai Yue furiously repeated.

Ma Ke chuckled, "I promise you that if I annoy you to death, that you alone will be the only girl I will have ever liked. Is this fine?"

" You, you, you!" Hai Yue had already become speechless from anger. At this time, Ma Ke discovered that the atmosphere at our side was amiss.

"Who is your boss? Answer quickly. Do you agree to exchange pointers?" The first sentence was addressed to Ma Ke. The sentence after is aimed at the poor and pitiful me.

"Elder Brother, can we not fight? I pay my respects to Elder Brother as your younger brother. You wouldn't bully your younger brother right?"

Everyone forms a circle around us, "This guy truly is a good for nothing. He doesn't have a backbone."

"Come here! Backbone? I'll show you how much backbone I have. Do you still value your pitiful life!?" I secretly wanted to say.

Even Mark could not lift his head, "Wa, I don't have such a boss, so shameful."

I step forward to grab Me Ke, "Brat, you still have the cheek to say something like that? Were it not for you, I wouldn't be forced by everyone to exchange pointers."

At this time, Hai Ri's words completely shattered my dreams of escaping: "Don't want to exchange pointers, huh? Then you'll let me beat you like a sandbag, right? I don't care about my reputation. Who said I wouldn't bully my juniors? I see those I dislike and beat them." He said as

he extended his huge fists as if comparing them to my life.

Finished, I'm finished. It seems I can't run away. Are we still exchanging pointers? If we exchange pointers then at least I won't be killed. I helplessly said: "Fine, I accept the exchange of pointers."

A group of people came to the training site and set up a defensive boundary. I came to the center of field with Hai Ri. I knew that it was too late to hide, so I will fight instead!

"Come out." I waved my hand in the air. Immediately a small crack appeared in the air. I reached into it and pulled out the magic staff that I've never used before. (Spatial Storage Bag, an intermediate spatial spell that I had just recently learned for convenience. I had put my magic staff inside it but I did not expect to use it today.) Hai Ri asked surprisingly: "You also use spatial magic?"

"My minor is spatial magic." I unenthusiastically replied. In any case, I can't avoid this and it's useless to act like a coward. I may as well be hard and unreasonable. Who's afraid of who?

I didn't dare to hesitate so I immediately cast a Light Prism Shield on my whole body. With the increase in power due to my staff, I became surrounded by a thick layer of light element. I have already finished my adequate battle preparations.

"Fine then, let me take a look at your strength which allows you to interfere with other people's business." Hai Ri had an imposing manner like the overreaching peak of a mountain. With a dark face, he recited an incantation and used his hands to brandish the intermediate fire spell, Chained Fire Ball, to send it flying towards me. I know that this attack is only probing me. In a calm and unhurried manner, I promptly teleported behind Hai Ri and sent a Light Arrow at him. Perhaps it's because he didn't prepare for it and he was excessively confident in himself, but he didn't dodge and unexpectedly was hit head-on by my magic. However, this is only an elementary class spell, it's unable to harm him at all. It was immediately dissolved by his fire shield but still gave him a fright.

"It seems I have underestimated you." Hai Ri said this then began

casting a Gale spell upon himself. Like a shadow, he roamed around the grounds, furthermore, as he began reciting the Gale spell's incantation, his speed was unexpectedly not much slower than my teleportation. I'm only able to catch a glimpse of his shadow. Hai Ri's true power is actually so strong, an elementary class spell cast by him is actually as powerful as an intermediate class spell. It's truly unthinkable. I reckon that if we competed purely with speed, neither of us would be able to land a hit. But seeing him chant this way, I reckon that his spell won't be a minor. I can only calmly teleport.

A fierce battle has begun. What will be the outcome? Will Zhang Gong be able to endure Hai Ri's assault? Please find out in the next chapter. The next chapter will be extremely marvelous.

## Chapter 14: Xiao Jin's Battle

I brought together all my magic power and began chanting my strongest spell- Light Severing Sword. I intended to deal with Hai Ri in one all-out strike.

I sensed that all of the nearby fire element went berserk. With Hai Ri rocking back and forth the entire arena became scorching hot. A layer of thick fire element gathered onto his body and hid him from plain sight. Currently, Hai Ri was in a huge fireball at the center of the arena, swaying back and forth. My vision became blurred, and I immediately closed my eyes and used my body to sense Hai Ri's location. I know that he is currently gathering fire element and when he stops, he will dispatch his ultimate strike. There is no skill involved in this exchange of pointers and Hai Ri's absolute power is certain to be stronger than mine.

"Boss, be careful. This is the advanced fire spell, Raging Inferno. I did not expect it to be used this way. I originally didn't learn this spell because of it's slow chant and long casting time." Ma Ke had yelled from the outside.

"Big brother, how are you going to use such a large spell? What's to be done if an accident occurs?" It seems that this young girl was still kindhearted. My heart was secretly touched.

"Little sister, be at ease. I have control." Said Hai Ri from within the fireball.

It turns out that he has control, haha. Thats a relief. Lets see if I can endure his long charged attack.

I have already secretly requested light element to gather to the point that I can use Light Severing Sword (however I had to get the light element's approval in order to gather magic power at a greater speed.) Now, I'm waiting on Hai Ri.

All of the traces of fire returned from the sky and converged in front of me. Hai Ri thickly surrounded with fire elements coldly said, "Let us settle this match in one move."

“Raging Inferno!” Following Hai Ri’s voice, a huge wall of fire rushed towards me. How fierce!

“Light Severing Sword!” An innumerable amount of light element began to form a sword resembling a ray of light and faced the wall of fire head on.

Light Severing Sword’s might is not inferior to that of Raging Inferno, but my magic power was inferior compared to Hai Ri’s . Therefore, my Light Severing Sword naturally was suppressed by Raging Inferno. However, Raging Inferno’s advance had also been suppressed. The only thing I could do was slowly advance.

When I came into contact with the spell, I became aware of the unexpectedly large gap in power between me and Hai Ri. It took all my might to gather enough light element to barely withstand it. I silently prayed to my heart, “Light element uncle and auntie, can you help me? I can’t endure much longer.”

My forehead is already soaked with sweat. Hai Ri’s wall of fire is only five meters away from me. Looking at Hai Ri’s appearance, it seems like he still has a lot of power left over.

The light element had understood my prayers. They gathered together at a slightly increased speed. The magic power’s gathering speed gradually gave me an advantage. Although the light element’s output is greater, the period of time that I had to endure greatly extended.

Right now, Hai Ri was surprised. He had not assumed that my magic was so strong. Being able to withstand this attack this long is already pretty good. Right now he felt that maintaining Raging Inferno’s attack has begun to cost a great deal of power. That’s why my magic power could still unexpectedly endure.

“Fine! It seems that you can still endure. Then I’ll let you see my true strength! Fire element! Ignite! Let your endless, raging flames burn!” This is a fire amplification spell! Even though I don’t know it’s name, I know it’s definitely nothing good.

Actually Hai Ri was forced to use it, because he felt that he could not

maintain Raging Inferno much longer. Had he not increased his power, I could have turned it around.

Raging Inferno combined with the auxiliary spell, and I immediately felt twice the pressure. The wall of fire rapidly advanced and was right at my side. I'm feel like I'm on the brink of death! I can't hold on much longer.

My body's light prism shield slowed down the firewall's advance. Even so, it still pressed forward centimeter by centimeter. Blood slowly dripped off of the corner of my mouth. I'm already on the brink of collapsing. This damned Hai Ri. You said you had control yet you chose not to hold back.

Hai Ri saw me continue to endure and pressed what meager magic power I had left against the Raging Inferno. I was sent flying, knocking heavily against the defensive boundary. The Raging Inferno had also scattered apart.

"How's that, Brat? Are you not satisfied? Haha!" Said Hai Ri while proudly panting with a smile.

"Humph! Are you any better than me? What so great about you?" A part of me was not convinced. Seeing Hai Ri proud appearance made my heart feel... However Hai Ri is truly stronger than me. Were it not for me being able to gather magic power faster, I would have definitely lost earlier.

"Well what? You aren't convinced? Don't try to make excuses. If you lose, you lose."

How infuriating! Ah right, I still have Xiao Jin. Doesn't he still have power? Hehe. However, I did not think this through and made the first mistake of my life. It was a deadly error and had nearly doomed Xiao Jin.

"Hear my name, come forth and appear, Xiao Jin." Along with my summon a white light flashed and Xiao Jin appeared in front of me. It was swaying back and forth as if it didn't know what was going on. It seems that just a moment ago it had been deeply sleeping. (Young magical beasts generally sleep in their master's body. Without a master's summon, it wouldn't wake up.)

"Xiao Jin, hurry, attack that guy." I used my mind to give Xiao Jin an

attack command.

Xiao Jin first looked at Hai Ri, then immediately shot a light arrow at him.

Hai Ri was hit head on. Right now, he also doesn't have any magic power. He painfully said, "You brat, you still have a magic beast! I also have one." Hai Ri reluctantly used a wind spell on himself to dodge and summoned his magical beast.

Ah! It's a Red Fire Tiger. How powerful! It looks like it should be about a 6th rank magical beast. Not good. As it turns out, he has a magical beast too (almost everyone has one, idiot!)! I must summon Xiao Jin back at once.

Just as I thought of returning Xiao Jin, something strange had occurred.

## Chapter 15: Xiao Jin's Death

Hai Ri's red tiger looked to the sky and roared. Like a red arrow, it charged at Xiao Jin. Xiao Jin was slightly scared and casted Light Shield on himself. After that, he continuously casted Light Arrows in an attempt to stop the red tiger's advance.

Not good. I immediately felt that Xiao Jin was in danger and I had also felt his fear.

"Xiao Jin, return." I had wanted to recall Xiao Jin, but it was already too late.

Xiao Jin's light arrows were like a mere itch to the red tiger. The red tiger simply didn't pay any attention to them. At this moment, Xiao Jin heard my command to retreat back into my body. However, the red tiger denied him the opportunity. When he tried to come back, the red tiger had already cast a ring of fire around Xiao Jin, preventing his escape.

The red tiger ruthlessly pounced towards Xiao Jin and casted three intermediate fire spells in succession. Seeing Xiao Jin in danger made me realize for the first time how important Xiao Jin was to me. Even though the period of time we spent together were only a few months, he already felt like family to me.

"No!" I wildly roared.

I gathered my remaining magic power and cast a Light Prism Shield on Xiao Jin. But with such little magic power, would it be of any effect?

Right at that moment, Hai Ri also noticed his red tiger's anomaly. "Hong, return. It's over." He promptly tried to call back the red tiger. The red tiger became sluggish for a moment, but continued charging Xiao Jin without the slightest hesitation.

The red tiger's fire magic ruthlessly charged towards my Xiao Jin. Xiao Jin issued out a tender lament before being engulfed by the flame.

"Xiao Jin!" I cried out with a broken heart. But what was the use?

All of the people watching in the surroundings were shocked, they

didn't expect that this exchange of pointers would result in a slaughter.

"Boss." Because he was no longer stunned and seeing my danger, Ma Ke immediately threw himself upon the red tiger. But when all was said and done, he was already too late. Xiao Jin had already been swallowed by the blaze.

"Hai Ri, you're too cruel! Although I chased after your younger sister, you didn't need to go to this extent!" Ma Ke furiously said to Hai Ri.

"No, it's not me! Hong Hong, wouldn't listen to me! Hong Hong, quickly return." Maybe the red tiger felt that Xiao Jin already died, so he obediently returned to Hai Ri's body.

Everyone became dumbstruck because they all knew what a magical beast meant to its master. The death of a magical beast has an incomparable impact on its master.

I threw up another mouthful of blood. My sight became dark, then I fell unconscious.

.....

"Xiao Jin, Xiao Jin, don't die!" I was awakened by a nightmare. There were many people at my side. My expression had already become lifeless.

"Xiao Jin. Where is Xiao Jin? Quickly return my Xiao Jin." I faced the surrounding people and helplessly said.

"Boss, don't feel sad. Xiao Jin, he already...." Ma Ke lowered his head as he said this.

"No! Xiao Jin wouldn't die! He can't!"

"Your magical beast is a growth type. It's my fault for dispatching Hong. A ranked type magical beast would immediately attack any growth type magical beast it meets." Right now, Hai Ri wasn't arrogant at all. He lowered his arrogant head.

I turned my head to look at Hai Ri. "You! It's you! You return my Xiao Jin!"

"I'm sorry, I didn't want it to be like this. Take care of yourself properly.

If you need anything in the future, don't hesitate to tell me." Hai Ri turned his head and said to Hai Yue: "Little sister, lets go."

Hai Yue also walked over: "This is all our fault, we shouldn't have forced you to exchange pointers. We will try to compensate you to our greatest extent. My condolences for your loss."

Even Hai Yue's tender voice couldn't touch my sorrowful heart. I emotionally roared at her: "Compensate? How could you possibly compensate? Are you saying you can make my Xiao Jin come back to life? That is a life! That's an adorable and small life." Uncontrollably, tears fell from my eyes.

"Boss, don't be like this." Ma Ke didn't know fear, he still defended Hai Yu from my sorrowful self.

"You! You only know how to chase after girls! Isn't it your fault that my Xiao Jin died! Xiao Jin. What about Xiao Jin! Where's Xiao Jin?" The current me was already beginning to lose control of myself.

Ma Ke didn't dare to say anything. He held up a big sack and gave it to me.

I untied the sack. The originally snow white Xiao Jin now has eighty percent of his body scorched black. Only his body's gold stripe is faintly discernible.

"Xiao Jin. sob sob" Bitterly, I began crying.

"Boss, don't be like this."

"Get lost! Get lost all of you! I don't want to see anyone!"

After seeing me go out of control, everyone somberly lowered their heads and left the room one by one. Green Hair and the two roommates I'm not familiar with had also left.

The only one left was me. I began to gather magic power with all my might and cast a spiritual restoration spell on Xiao Jin. Bathed in light elements, Xiao Jin's body eventually returned to a snow white color. However, I knew this wouldn't bring him back to life.

“What you are doing won’t work.. It’s useless.” My ear heard a strange yet familiar voice.

“Didn’t I tell you all to get lost! Why haven’t you left yet? I don’t need you all to look after me!” I emotionally clamored.

“Even if I can save your magical beast? You still don’t need me here?”

“What?” My whole body began shaking. I quickly shook my head. So it’s him!

## Chapter 16: Sharing Life

The white robed old mage walked in front of me and stroked my head.

“Foolish child, don’t feel too sad. Let me take a look at your magic beast. Perhaps I can still save him.”

“Really? Here.” I am hopeful. You finally came to my side. I immediately handed Xiao Jin over.

“No matter what, you must bring him back to life. All I want is for Xiao Jin to come back to life, I don’t want anything else. Please, I beg you.” I grabbed the old mage’s hand, pleading helplessly.

The old mage didn’t reply. He put his hand on Xiao Jin’s body and slowly emitted a white radiance. It wasn’t blinding but very gentle. A moment later, the white radiance enveloped Xiao Jin’s body. It looked like my spiritual recovery spell, but there seemed to be something different.

After a meal’s worth of effort, I anxiously waited. The old mage took his hand off Xiao Jin’s body and sighed.

I immediately felt my hopes drop into the abyss, “Is it not possible? Is there no hope to bring him back to life?” I impatiently asked.

“Child. Don’t worry. Listen to me. Your magical beast is the best growth type magical beast that I’ve ever seen. If you didn’t think he could not defend himself, would you have sent him out? Could it be that your previous teacher did not tell you?”

I shamefully lowered my head, “He told me. I... I was too excited at the time and I had forgotten.”

“Don’t blame yourself. Instead, you should take responsibility for the misfortunes you have brought upon yourself.”

“Then can we still save Xiao Jin?”

“Maybe, maybe not. It will depend on you.” The old mage meaningfully looked at me.

“Me!? Then quickly tell me what I need to do.”

“Currently, the circumstances are as such. Just a moment ago, I examined your magic beast, his injuries have already been healed by your spirit recovery spell. However, he exhausted his life energy upon receiving Hai Ri’s magical beast’s final attack. The main problem is how to provide enough life energy to sustain him and wake his consciousness.”

As soon as I saw the old mage stopped speaking, I quickly interrupted, “Then what must I do?”

“Before I tell you, I must first ask you a question.”

“Ask.”

“Do you love your magical beast?”

“Of course I love him. He’s like family to me.” When I said it, my eyes were red.

“Good. Then are you willing to give him everything, even your own life?”

Without the slightest hesitation, I said, “I am willing. So long as he can live, I am willing to do anything.”

Looking at my unwavering expression, the old mage revealed a hint of an approving smile. “Good. Very good. In order to resurrect him, you must give him life energy. That is why you must be willing to divide your own and share it with him. Putting it in a different way, he will become a part of your body. Then by using your life energy, you will wake his consciousness. This is something only you can do.”

“Divide my life energy and share it with him? How do I do that? Will there be any consequences in the future?”

“If you succeed, there are several things that I can determine. First, in the future it will not be possible for you to have any other magical beasts. Second, his life will be linked to yours. If you die, he will certainly die as well. And third.” The old mage paused for a moment. “Your life energy will be halved.”

“Halved? I understand the first two. But what do mean by halved? Is there really such a cost?”

“In other words, if your lifespan was originally a hundred and twenty years (the average human lifespan) and you were to give him your life energy, your lifespan will reduce to sixty years. Are you willing to use sixty years of your life in order to resurrect him?”

I took a quick look at Xiao Jin. His body was still so very white, but his golden stripe had already begun to lose its former luster. I stroked his head.

With an resolute determination, I answered, “I am willing.” From this moment on, the Child of Light and his lifelong companion and comrade-in-arms entered an eternal, everlasting contract.

“Good child, you don’t disappoint!” The old mage exclaimed. “Be at ease. In the future, I will do my utmost to find a way to restore your life energy. But for now, let us begin.”

I nodded.

We went to a small, uninhabited room in the academy. Then the old mage created a strong, solid barrier outside.

“We are starting.” I nodded towards him.

I carried Xiao Jin to the hexagram in the middle of the room. Carefully, I placed Xiao Jin at the center of the hexagram and gave him an affectionate glance. Then I raised my arms to either side of my body to the height of my head and began to chant a spell that I would only cast once in my life, Sharing Life.

The old mage said this was an ancient spell he found in a ruin, carved upon a stone tablet. He never used it before and didn’t know what would occur as a result. However, he did not know that this spell’s use would someday become the greatest contribution to me when I became a Grand Mage in the future. This is because the use of this spell allowed me to comprehend the true nature of light element. That is: Love and Self Sacrifice.

“Oh, Great God of creation! I humbly request your aid. Use your endless strength to open my life’s origin. I desire to take part in an eternal,

everlasting contract with the creature before you. A contract to share my life!"

Following the completion of my chant, my body began to emit a white radiance. It began gently and gradually grew brighter, until finally the white light had enveloped my body. The white radiance with gradual intensity changed to gold. Currently, I looked like a small star. At the golden radiance's strongest moment, between my eyebrows emitted a golden light towards Xiao Jin. Below the golden light, Xiao Jin's body gradually faded. Afterwards, the golden light fused into a ball and slowly floated off the ground. After a sudden woosh, it went from between my eyebrows and into my body.

The light that surrounded my body gradually faded away. I felt abnormally weak but at the same time I felt Xiao Jin's existence. I softly called out to him in my thoughts, "Xiao Jin, you came back." The ball of golden light that entered my body trembled for a moment. Then from the center of the golden light arrived a burst of warm thoughts. I know for certain, I succeeded. My Xiao Jin – He came back. With peace of heart, I closed my eyes and lost consciousness.

# Chapter 17: Becoming a Disciple

When I awakened once again, I found myself within a very simple and unadorned bedroom. Where am I? Xiao Jin, how is Xiao Jin? Immediately, I looked within myself. Fortunately, although Xiao Jin seems to be fast asleep, I can still sense his lively life energy. My Xiao Jin, at last, you are alive again. Unconsciously, my tears began to flow.

Right now I felt my heart at ease. In regards to losing half of my life energy, I didn't care at all.

From the door came a sound. The old mage walked in.

“You’re awake?”

“Yes! Where is this place?”

“This is my bedroom. You can feel at ease here and cultivate. You must be hungry right now, I’ll go and get you something to eat.

“Thank you.” From my heart, I truly felt grateful to this old mage. Without him, Xiao Jin wouldn’t have been able to return to my side.

After a while, the old mage brought a lot of food in. I wolfed down my food until I was full. My mood was great, so naturally my appetite is also great. The food was very appetizing. Hehe.

“Eat slower, otherwise you’ll choke.”

“How long have I been asleep?”

“Seven days.”

“Ah! That long!?” I said in astonishment.

“This is still very fast. Your magic studies is very strong, according to my estimations you should have needed 10 days to wake up.”

“So that’s why I’m so hungry! It turns out I slept so long. Oh right, I still don’t know your name!”

“My name is Lao Lun Di.”

“My name is Zhang Gong Wei.”

"I want to ask you something again. Would you like to take me as your master and inherit my light magic as my legacy?" The old mage raised an old topic.

I thought about it for a bit. "I am willing."

"I didn't help you save your magical beast to blackmail you. You must think about this clearly. I hope you will do this voluntarily."

"Teacher Di, I am doing this voluntarily. I feel that you are very powerful. I wish to study under you. I have understood from this time's lesson that my strength is truly weak. I desire to become strong."

"Then why do you want to become strong?" Teacher Di asked me with great interest.

"I want to rely on my own strength to protect my family and my friends." I resolutely replied.

"Very good. I will accept you as my disciple. You are my sole disciple as well as my last."

"What kind of strength do you possess to not have a disciple?" Baffled, I asked.

Teacher Di sighed. "Currently, there are very few people who wish to learn light magic. And those that wish to and have the talent are even rarer. This is the reason that I wish to receive you as a disciple."

"Then don't you need to test me? I heard from my previous teacher that all of the powerful mages require their disciples to pass many tests before they would be accepted."

"Foolish child, the previous event with your magical beast is already the best ordeal to test you with."

"Thank you. Teacher, I will definitely earnestly study magic under you in the future. In the past I was very lazy, but this time's bloody lesson has awakened me. It is only with strength that one can protect others as well as themselves."

"Your way of thinking is very good. Almost like a small adult." Teacher

Di couldn't help but laugh.

"Teacher, when will we begin studying?"

"Look at you being so anxious, it seems you really want to immediately begin improving yourself. Actually, I want to start even more than you, but I have one request. That is for you to become a legendary Grand Magister." Teacher Di seriously said.

"You can be at ease, I will definitely become a Grand Magister." I issued out an oath.

"Oh that's right! Teacher, I haven't attended class in so many days, what am I going to do?"

"You can rest assured, I have given you a leave of absence. You can be at ease and rest here."

"The academy is actually so kind?" I can't help but have some doubts.

"I forgot to tell you, I am the headmaster of the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. Hehe." Teacher Di revealed a devious smile.

"What?" I was obviously stupefied by this information. "Then what mage rank are you?"

"Magister. I'm also the honorary vice-president of the Magic Union. How about that, am I capable of being your teacher?"

"Wow! You're so powerful! You're one of the top ten magisters in the continent!"

"That's right. Within the top ten mages, I am ranked number 4." Evidently, Teacher Di said this with some regret.

"You don't need to be disappointed. You're already so strong. What's more, although you're only ranked fourth, in the future you will have the number one student in the continent. You'll have so much honor and glory. Hehe."

"The number one student in the whole continent? Who is that?" Obviously he still hasn't reacted properly.

I pointed at my own nose, “It’s me!”

Teacher Di suddenly hit me, exposing a chestnut sized bruise. “You brat, you’re really thick skinned! You must put forth great effort for me. My education is very strict, you better not let me lose face, or else, hehe.....”

Although I haven’t begun studying magic under him, I could already sense that Teacher Di is a very benevolent and humorous senior. He wouldn’t teach me like the Old Devil.

I earnestly stood up. “You can be reassured that I absolutely won’t let you lose face!”

“You don’t need to attend class at the academy anymore, I have already told your teachers. From now on you will live here. I will teach you magic by myself. For this time’s affair, you must not blame Hai Ri. He also couldn’t control the situation. Moreover, I hope you won’t tell others about resurrecting your magical beast, but instead it would be better to let them believe that Xiao Jin is dead. Wait until he can defend himself before you reveal him.”

“Yes.” Xiao Jin didn’t die, so I don’t blame Hai Ri anymore. If I really wanted to blame someone, then I ought to blame myself. It was me who summoned Xiao Jin after all!

“You rest here properly then. Currently your body is still extremely weak. After all, you have already spent half of your life energy. I have already used advanced light magic to treat you, but it doesn’t seem to have much effect. Perhaps I am treating the wrong illness. Even I don’t know what residual effects will be left by the spell you used this time.” Teacher Di said somewhat sadly.

“Teacher, it doesn’t matter. This is what I did voluntarily. I will assume responsibility for any matters in the future.” I said to console him.

“Zhang Gong, you truly are a good child. How come light element constantly assembles towards when you’re sleeping? The speed is also very astonishing.”

After hearing teacher ask this, I felt somewhat embarrassed. I explained

to him from start to finish about my lying down meditation.

"Foolish child, I don't know whether to call you a genius or to call you a lazy slob. I didn't expect you accidentally obtained the light element's approval. I only obtained this when I was 60 years old!"

I could only giggle in return.

# Chapter 18: Magic Power Compression

After about a month of rest, my body finally recovered to its original state.

“Zhang Gong, You’ve just about fully recovered. Today we’re going to start class.”

“Alright. Teacher Di, what do you want to teach me?”

“First, I want to see what level of magic you are currently at. I want to teach in alignment with your level.”

“I don’t know what level I am anymore.”

“What level can your magic power reach when you meditate?”

“I haven’t made any progress with my magic power for a long time. Right now, I feel like my magic power has already reached a bottleneck. No matter what I’ve tried, I can’t break through this bottleneck.”

“Then your magic power should be at the level of an intermediate mage. Not bad. Do you know why your magic power is incapable of progressing?” Teacher Di asked with a smile.

I scratched my head puzzlingly. “I don’t know.”

“I’ll give you an analogy. How much water and air can one bottle hold?”

“Depends on how big the bottle is.” Teacher Di had asked what seemed to be an idiotic question.

“Then can a similar bottle hold the same amount of air and water?”

“Of course. It has the same amount of space. It just holds different things.” Even this genius couldn’t grasp such a simple riddle.

Teacher Di nodded with approval, “You are correct. Similar bottles can hold the same amount of air and water. But if you take the water and turn it into steam, can the bottle still hold the same amount?”

Right then I had seemed to understand, but Teacher Di’s words were still a bit vague.

Teacher Di saw me fall into a state of contemplation so he didn't disturb me.

"Good. This is the subject of today's class and tonight's homework assignment. Think about it thoroughly. The question I just asked is related to your bottleneck. Magic knowledge is mainly something that should be comprehended by one's self. That is why a master's closed door cultivation is an individual effort. How much you can learn will depend on yourself. I will leave first. This semester still has two months left. You will be train here with me for a month. After that, you will return and attend class with everyone else. The main purpose of the training that I've given you is to allow you to participate in the magic academy's end of semester tournament."

"Ah! Participate in the tournament? Teacher Di, am I capable enough?" After having experienced Hai Ri's magic, I had lost confidence in myself.

"How are you not? You are my disciple after all. You mustn't let me lose face. Be sure to practice diligently." Teacher Di turned around wanting to leave.

"Is it possible to not participate in this tournament, teacher?"

"That is of course out of the question. This competition is the end of semester final exam that every student must take. If your grades are too low, then you might have to repeat the year." Humph! This brat wants to be lazy. Don't bother asking. As if I would change school rules for you.

Seeing Teacher Di's slightly sinister smile, I became aware that it looked like I was scheming. In any case, I also wanted to start diligently practice magic. When the moment comes, I will ask him again.

Teacher Di left after I had started to think about what he assigned me for homework.

Water... Steam... Air... Bottle... What do they have to do with each other?

Steam can turn into water. A bottle can only hold so much water (I pretended a bottle was in my hand). Similarly, a bottle can only hold so

much steam. If the steam becomes water....

Ah! I understand now, so it is like that. Then I shall explain. Let's say I was a bottle and steam was my current magic power. My magic power is already incapable of growing inside the bottle. But if magic power is like steam, then I can condense it into water and hold more magic power. Yea!!!! I'm far too smart.

After I understood, I felt as if I could break through. Good, I'll try it now.

I began to meditate. No, I didn't sleep this time. I retained awareness of the magic power within me. I suddenly began to think about that one question. How do I compress my magic power? No matter, it will come to me.

I used my spiritual power to grasp the magical power within my body and separated about a fifth of it. The rest of the magic power scattered throughout my body. This one fifth of magic power gathered to my upper dantian(also between the eyebrows) . I began to use my spiritual power in an attempt to compress it.

How difficult. It's almost as if it doesn't want to compress, opposing me with all it's might. Why does it not reduce in size? What sort of problem is this? I said to the light element within me, "Elders, uncles and aunties, you are so far away from each other. Everyone is so lively together. Quick, won't you help me? Is it alright if you come closer to each other?

The light element inside my body seemed to have understood my words. They began to gradually compress, slowly taking the shape of a small sphere of light. It was about one fifth of its original size. Success! I succeeded. After the successful compression, the light element made me unusually excited. Then I immediately entered the land of dreams. ( The compression of magic elements consumes an exceptional amount of spiritual energy. My spiritual energy had been stretched to its limit. I could not persevere and naturally fell asleep.)

The morning of the second day, I went to the same place, I felt that the light element within me was much richer than before. The high purity sphere of light that I compressed yesterday still resided in my upper

dantian and space that I manipulated already replenished by itself. (My sleep meditation skill has reached the point of perfection, hehe.) Yes, this kind of feeling isn't bad at all.

Teacher Di pushed the door and entered. He did not speak, he only stared at my face. His jaw gradually dropped. After a while, I met his blank stare.

"Teacher Di , What happened? Why have you been staring at me for so long?" I hesitantly asked.

"Zhang Gong, you truly don't disappoint! Out of all the people I've known, you were the quickest to comprehend the method of compressing magic power. Not only that but you are still so young. Your future potential is immeasurable. Hahahaha! I picked up such a genius, Oh Yes!!" Teacher Di had unexpected acted like a child, jumping in excitement.

"Huh? What? How did you know I understood the method to compress my magic power?" I asked bafflingly .

"Fool. Just look in a mirror and you'd already know why."

"Ah. Really? I'll take a look."

I walked in front of a mirror and I was slightly stunned at myself. This is me? Although my previous complexion was quite good, compared with now, it was entirely different. There a layer of gentle luster on top of my face. The skin below had a wandering brilliance, like that of polished jade. How awesome...

"Teacher Di, How did this happen!?"

## Chapter 19: The First Golden Sphere

"This is because you have grasped the method to compress magic. Light element has started to transform your body. In addition, your appearance will make this more and more obvious. According to the study of magic, those who study different elements would have different types of bodies. To demonstrate this, the color that one emits all differ. For example, a fire mage would be red. A water mage would be blue. An earth mage would be yellow. A wind mage would be cyan. And of course light mages such as us are white. When your whole body becomes surrounded with white light, you would have succeeded in compressing all of your magic power. Whenever such a person appears, the magic union pays close attention and in addition they would request such an individual to come in and test their rank. I believe that you are capable of being the youngest to be able to achieve this. You turn eleven years old this year?" Teacher Di gratifying said.

"Thats right. This year I turn eleven. How about Teacher Di?"

"Do you know what age this teacher completed the compression of his magic power? I was twenty six years old that year. At the time, I had shook the entire nation. Aside from the continent's rank one spatial magister, Di Nuo Lun, I had been the fastest. He took the title of fastest, as he completed his magic power compression at the age of 20. "

"Then why am I capable of completing it so fast?" Since it turned out to be so difficult.

"I don't really understand why either. It might be because you're already acknowledged by the light elements."

"How long does it take to completely compress light element magic power?"

"This can't be said precisely. Compression of magic power is generally very hard in the beginning. It is necessary for one to comprehend this on their own. Therefore I didn't teach you. After comprehending, the speed would be very quick. If you put in great effort, you ought to be able to

complete it in a month.”

“Teacher Di, then after I finish compressing won’t I be called a freak since light element gathers around me all day?” I don’t want to be considered a freak.

“Be at ease, that won’t happen. After completely compressing you magic power, its state will return to be like before you began compressing magic power. Which is what it appears like now.” Teacher Di said with a smile.

“Oh. That’s good then. Teacher Di, will I be taking the Mage Union’s exam?”

Teacher Di thought for a moment. “It would be best to not do it right now because your magic application skills are still very weak. Moreover, if you took the Mage Union’s exam you will become quite famous. That would be very tiring. I was hoping you would be able to steadily practice magic properly. You must understand, if you completely compress your magic power, your strength will approach that of a magic scholar’s. A child of about ten years of age reaching this level would cause a sensation throughout the kingdom.”

“That’s right. I don’t want to be famous.” Recalling the scene when I first achieved first place during the entrance exams still instills fear in me. (But how would I know that in the future I would become the most famous figure in the whole continent.)

“Your assignment for this month is to compress your magic power. When you return to class, you mustn’t let others know about this. After you finish compressing your magic power, I’ll begin teaching you some applications for magic. You should be able to use them throughout the competition.” Teacher Di paused for a moment before continuing.  
“Originally, I didn’t expect you to comprehend the method to compress magic power so quickly. I think I’ll start with teaching you how to write some magic applications. I didn’t expect to have to teach a genius. Even a student can be so talented.”

Wow! No way. To my surprise, he’s even more arrogant than me. He’s

worthy of being my master. One word: admiration.

"Master, that genius sure seems like it's me." I cautiously asked.

Unexpectedly, Teacher Di's expression was exceptionally intense. "What? You brat, if not for my pure and honest invitation and my careful guidance, would you be able to comprehend so quickly? You... You, you truly infuriate me." After hearing my words, he immediately blew at his mustache and stared at me.

[TL Note: Google old asian mustache.]

"Yes, it was thanks to your guidance, your good guidance." For the sake of my future life, I had no choice but to comfort this old man. If I don't, he would tell me a story like yesterday. What so good about them anyways? Humph

"This is good enough. You go and diligently meditate now. I'll be leaving first." As I watched Teacher Di's silhouette leaving with some anger left, I felt helpless. I'll stop caring about him and just go and meditate instead. Actually, generally speaking Teacher Di is really quite good. At the very least, he won't punish me. He would just make me think about it by myself.

I sat cross-legged on my bed and dismissed all of my distracting thoughts. I willed a portion of the gaseous light element within my body to split. And then within my upper dantian, I began to compress it into a solid sphere of light element. I slowly relaxed. Relying only on my spiritual consciousness, I drove the light elements to assemble together. The gaseous light elements and the already solid light elements fused. Not bad. The result is very good.

My spiritual force still hasn't been completely depleted. I'll do this for a bit more. Once again, I inputted a bit of gaseous light element and used the same method as before to gather them together. The sphere of light element is a bit bigger than yesterday's. Well then, it's time to sleep. I'm so tired that I feel like I'm dying.

So it's like this. Everyday besides eating and using the toilet, I would be condensing these light elements. When my spiritual strength was

depleted, I would go to sleep. (I would automatically meditate) After waking up, my gaseous light elements would definitely be replenished. Then I would continue condensing.

As the solid sphere of light element of light element grew larger and larger, my outer layer of white radiance also grew more and more intense. Everyday Teacher Di would examine me when he came by to deliver food, but he wouldn't disturb me at all. This kind of peaceful environment is definitely the best for meditation.

Thanks to me having received the acknowledgement of the light elements and me unwittingly comprehending the true meaning of light, my light element gathering speed was simply astonishing.

Finally, the most crucial moment had arrived. The light element within me has already completely compressed into a solid state successfully. Right now I felt like I am a part of the light element. My whole body is almost like it's composed of only light element. The light element within my body passed on the feeling of their joyful mood. I sense that they have begun to change.

Unexpectedly, the seemingly solid sphere of light element began to slowly squirm. Originally it felt very stiff, but now it's gradually softening. Furthermore, it began to circulate within my body and its color seemed to be getting brighter and brighter. No, this isn't right. The color is beginning to change. What was originally white light element had become golden. However, the volume of the sphere became smaller and smaller. Finally, it became like a golden brook circulating within my meridians seven times before turning into a small golden sphere within my upper dantian.

If there was anyone watching me right now, they would discover that my whole body's white radiance would be spilling out of my body.

I felt my whole body brimming with warm breath. I tried to absorb light element, but not matter what, I was unable to. Why can't I? Don't tell me... this is another bottleneck?

Not only did I feel that my body was not different, but I also felt that

within my body, Xiao Jin had also changed. It seems like he has also discovered the change of the light elements within my body. He woke up from a deep sleep and gave me some cheerful news, afterwards he began absorbing the light elements within my body. Following Xiao Jin's absorption, the golden sphere began to circulate within my body. I was able to gather light element once again. It actually turns out that the golden sphere is able to absorb energy!

What Xiao Jin absorbed is actually the golden sphere's energy. The golden sphere is circulating within my body in order to replenish my energy.

## Chapter 20: Another Evolution

I don't know how much time had passed but Xiao Jin seemed to already reached the limit of how much magic power he could absorb. The golden ball had also returned to its original state and no longer circulated in my upper dantian. I woke up from meditating.

Opening my eyes, I saw Teacher Di's concerned eyes.

"Teacher Di, It seems that I have succeeded."

"That's great! You already have completed the compression of all of your magic power. Looking solely at your magic power, you can already be considered a magic scholar." Teacher Di said gratifyingly.

"Really? Thats amazing." Having my magic power ascend so fast made me extremely excited.

"No matter, you still have to diligently practice. Also, Teacher wants to know how you're feeling right now."

First I took a look at myself, the white light surround my body had begun to disappear. My skin was unusually smooth, almost making me want to take bite.

"It seems that I have finished compressing my magic power into a small golden ball. Is this correct?"

"Not bad, not bad, just like that. That small, golden ball is the combined total of your current magical power. In the future, it will greatly aid your magical studies."

"Thats amazing. Teacher Di, How am I not a genius? Hehe." I asked proudly.

"You smelly brat, don't be proud so soon. You still have a long way to go. Although you have already compressed your magic power, it still isn't very stable. Making it stable is a long, demanding process. Don't believe that just this much could make you a magister. You still have much to learn." In order to make sure I would not grow too arrogant, Teacher Di poured a bucket of water over my head.

“Oh...” I said slightly dissatisfied.

“Do you know what is a mage’s highest state of magic power?” Teacher Di asked me a question that I’ve never thought about before. It immediately drew my interest.

“What is it?”

“It is when they have six spheres of magic power. Furthermore for us light mages, they must not only be gold but they must also become transparent. Understand?”

“A transparent gold? Teacher, what level can your current magic reach?”

Teacher Di scratched his head troubled and said with slight embarrassment, “Right now I have one transparent, golden magic sphere.”

“Ah! Your capacity as a magister can only produce one transparent, golden magic sphere?” I asked with awe.

“Yes! Not only me, but all magisters only have one of such spheres.” Saying this he could not help but sigh.

“Why is this?”

“To possess six transparent magic spheres is only something that the Grand Mages of legends have achieved. Up until now, us old men are still unable to find a means to raise the number of transparent magic spheres we possess. In the future, this is something that you must diligently strive for.” Teacher Di meaningfully answered.

“Teacher Di, rest assured. I will definitely achieve this.”

And just like that, the Child of Light had set foot on a lifelong journey to pursue the pinnacle of magic.

[TL Note: These monologues are getting more embarrassing to type out each time.]

“Very well. Lets not talk about this anymore. Later you will still want to carefully stabilize your magic spheres. You should know that practicing

magic is much like rowing a boat upstream. If you stop practicing, you will fall back. Therefore it is necessary to continuously practice. For today, you should rest well. Tomorrow, I will teach you a few magic applications. After that, you will be returning to your regular classes, preparing for the end of term competition.”

“Alright.”

In any case, I will complete this formidable training. But the thing I am currently thinking about the most is wanting to eat a whole lot. Teacher Di had sealed me away for a period of closed door training. That is why all I could tell him was how much I wanted to eat. After listening to my menu, Teacher Di could only think that I was a pig.

Hehe, I don’t want much. I only wanted to feast on a banquet’s worth of food, nothing more. What so surprising? Everyone’s at their growing age right now after all.

“Teacher Di, Do you know what my nickname at the academy is?”

“What is it?”

“The White Rice Bucket, hehe.” I said with a shady smile.

“You, You, You truly make us light mages lose face!” He immediately scowled at me, puffing his mustache.

Although Teacher Di didn’t let me eat as much as I had wanted, he still gave me enough food to satisfy my “small” desires.

Done eating, Done drinking. What else would you want to do? I don’t know about others, but for me, I obviously sleep. This is definitely the best way to digest food! (Don’t learn from me, children! My digestive capabilities are quite powerful, hehe. )

When I woke up, the sky was still dark. Apparently it’s still very early, my whole body felt very relaxed. What should I be concerned with right now? Xiao Jin seems to have evolved. Ever since last time.... I still haven’t seen him. I’ll let him come out and play.

I had learned from last time. I made sure the window curtains were

closed and the door was locked. Only after I checked the room for any vulnerabilities did I summon Xiao Jin, “Xiao Jin, here my name, come out in front of me.”

A golden light had flashed before my eyes and a strange thing had appeared before me. Not only that but it had threw itself at me, I was really scared.

“Wo. What this?” I teleported to the side.

This strange thing looked like it had been wronged. I felt a voice speak to me from within my mind. “It’s me, Master. It’s your Xiao Jin, ah.”

Ah! Xiao Jin can speak!?

I carefully examined the strange creature before me. It looks to be a large golden python, about 6 meters long. On top of his head were two small, adorable golden horns. Its body from head to toe had fine golden scales. Looking at those two small golden horns, it vaguely resembled Xiao Jin’s appearance.

“You’re Xiao Jin?” I hesitantly asked.

He seemed to understand what I said and nodded at me.

“Xiao Jin, you’ve changed so much. Weren’t you originally white?” I asked with doubt.

“Master, it’s because your magic had greatly improved. We are currently linked as one. With your progress, It’s only natural that I evolve. Master, could it be you don’t want me anymore?” I heard from the strange voice from within my mind.

[TL Note: If you wanted him to stay cute, you should’ve used an everstone...]

[TL : Everstones are an item in the Pokemon games that prevent evolution when held.]

It really is Xiao Jin. I threw myself at him and hugged his large head. “Xiao Jin, there’s nothing wrong with you. I missed you very much.”

Xiao Jin had a very emotional appearance and used his long and thick

body to coil around me. His smooth scales softly surrounded me. He then swallowed my body whole.

(Real translation: and his warm feelings spread throughout my body.)

## Chapter 21: Meeting Ma Ke Again

I lightly caressed Xiao Jin, huh? What's this? Unexpectedly, I felt what seemed to be a very large protrusion sticking out of his body. I asked Xiao Jin (using telepathy), What is this? Xiao Jin replied that he also didn't know. Furthermore, that was not the only one.

I immediately got away from Xiao Jin's embrace and carefully observed.

Sure enough, below his abdomen were five more small protrusions. It seemed as if there were bones sticking out. On top of his back, between his three golden stripes sprouted upward two sheets but they weren't very distinct. Ah, what's this? Don't tell me that Xiao Jin isn't a serpent? No, I should ask Teacher Di.

I continued to played around with Xiao Jin for a while. Seeing the sky quickly brighten, I had Xiao Jin withdraw.

Xiao Jin's progress is amazing. I could feel the strength of his magic power. Not only that, but Xiao Jin seems to still have outstanding changes that I still don't know about. Also, his abilities have improved accordingly and gained a few unique abilities. As for what they are, even Xiao Jin still doesn't know. In addition, compared to his previous self, he now provides me with cultivation and I also feel a stronger, more intimate bond with him.

With the sky bright, Teacher Di came.

"Did you rest well yesterday, Zhang Gong?" Teacher Di asked softly, putting down what was in his hand.

"Well enough." Delicious, so good, I continued eating. Not taking of notice of Teacher Di, I threw myself into the sea of food.

Striving to finish it, "Teacher Di, you've brought such delicious food, why aren't you saying anything?"

"Humph, you're the kind of brat that only after eating, will you be at your strongest." Teacher Di said with a discontent voice.

"Don't be like that. Am I not talented at learning magic?" I began to

employ the spoiled child strategy. (Since I'm still a kid.)

"Fine, blow your own trumpet. Whether or not you have talent will depend on today's performance. There isn't much time, only seven days. I hope you can learn useful magic in that time. You must take this seriously. "

[TL Note: Blowing your own trumpet means to boast praise about yourself.]

Seeing him speak in earnest, I dare not joke around, "Yes, Teacher."

"You haven't gone outside for quite a while. Lets go outside and have a walk on the grass."

"Yes."

How refreshing. It's been quite a while since I've had a breath of fresh air. I gave myself a large stretch and breathed deeply. Even if the sunshine outside was a bit dazzling, this feeling is truly comfortable. Teacher also hadn't disturbed me, letting me have some free time for the moment until I've calmed down.

"Very well, I am going to start teaching now. First I'm going to give you a lecture on advanced magic theory. Do you know what kind of magic I use at my level?"

"Do different levels have different methods of using magic? In order to use magic, all you have to do is recite a chant. Is there anything else to it?"

Teacher Di gave me a tilted glance, "Observe, this is true magic." He waved his hand outwards and white rays of light came out the palm of his hand. Like a sharp blade, they split open the huge rock in front of us. Its upper half slid to the ground.

"What? Is that really magic?! There was no chant. Just a wave of a hand could produce such a result. Teacher Di, how did you do that?"

"Hehe, This is the strength of a magister. With my understanding, ordinary spells can become like this. In order to understand magic

elements, you must be exceptionally thorough. Therefore, so long as you fully understand an element, it is possible. What I had just used is somewhat similar to a warrior's Dou Qi slash. In fact, magic and Dou Qi at later levels are to a certain extent quite similar. Later on, you must study well, practice well and strive to the master the method to directly use the elements before you graduate from the academy. But for today what we learn will not be this. This isn't something that can be easily learned. Only after tempering yourself for a long period of time can you accomplish this. Currently, you only know a few advanced light attack spells. In comparison, defense spells are more important. Wait until the tournament is over. Then we will practice the method to control the elements."

"Teacher Di, you're so powerful! So it turns out magic can be used in such a way." I looked at him with an expression of admiration.

"Naturally, I am a magister after all! Lets not talk about these useless things. First, lets start with learning this spell...."

.....

Seven days had quickly past. Under Teacher Di's instruction, I truly learned no small amount, especially in regard to my control over magic. With the support of my formidable amount magic power, I made ample progress toward my control of magic. The golden sphere within my body had also stabilized somewhat.

I had asked Teacher Di concerning Xiao Jin's change in body. After thinking about it for a long period of time, he then told me that he had never seen such a magic beast. It is possible that this transformation occurred because I had casted the spell "Sharing Life". Regardless, there is nothing that we can do about this.

With this, I had felt relieved. So long as Xiao Jin is alive and well, I don't care what form he takes.

Within these seven days, I've received a piece of good news. Teacher Di said that 20 days ago, Ma Ke had been made the direct disciple of the Vice Principal. This time we can both graduate class together at the same

time. You should also know that the Vice Principal is also a magister.

Tomorrow, I'll be returning to everyone's side. When Teacher Di departed today, he reminded me once again to not speak of Xiao Jin's survival or of me becoming his disciple. Teacher Di sure is an amusing old fellow. His educational method is unusually simple. He just gives you an explanation then lets you go think about it yourself. Or he'll just give you an incantation and let you go try out the spell yourself. He gives exceptional freedom. Not taking into account his age, he acts like my grandfather, but sometimes he also acts like a child and gets noisy like me. I discovered that I already like this amusing old fellow.

.....

After entering the classroom, everyone looked towards me with astonished gazes. I didn't say anything as I went to my seat.

"Boss!" My ear heard a familiar voice.

"Ma Ke." I turned around and replied to my good friend that I haven't seen in a long time.

We fixed our eyes on each other. Afterwards, we tightly embraced each other.

Ma Ke whispered into my ear: "Boss, I already know about your matter. Do your best during the competition!"

"Yes. You too."

The bell rung, signaling the start of class. Everyone returned to their seats. In today's class, the end of term competition rules will be announced.

Tomorrow, the preliminary matches will begin. Recalling the objective Teacher Di gave me, I received a headache.

## Chapter 22: Competition Rules

The teacher in charge walked over. She glanced at me and gave me a slight smile.

“Now then, quiet down students. Due to some special circumstances, Zhang Gong hasn’t been able to attend class. Let us first welcome back Zhang Gong on his safe return.”

The classroom rang with applause.

I stand up and bow towards everybody. “Thank you everyone.”

“Okay then. I hope Zhang Gong will be able to achieve good results in tomorrow’s competition.”

I also desire that. This is also the ordeal which I invested so much effort towards, while at the same time, it’s also the mission Teacher Di assigned me. I’m not sure if I’ll be able to complete the mission.

“Today, we’re not learning anything new. I’m only going to explain the rules and regulations of the competition. Everybody pay attention. This upcoming competition will be of greatly help to your end of term exams.”

Due to the fact that first graders don’t need to participate in the end of term competition, this is the first time the second graders will be participating.

The teacher began to explain the details of the rules and regulations.

Although it’s called a competition, in truth, we just draw lots. It is only a true competition after a genius begins.

The competition rules are as follows:

1: The competition is based on the principle of fairness, in order to reflect the student’s magic level. The use of magical beasts is forbidden during the competition. (This part really puts me in an advantageous position, since I don’t dare to use my magical beast.)

2: The competition will be conducted according to grade. Each grade’s competition will be conducted independently. The top 100 students will

be free to enjoy their winter vacation, while the students below the 100 will have to study at school until the start of the new term. (I think everyone will do their best now. Hehe.)

3: The matches will be decided by drawing lots. Besides the first time participants, the second graders, the other three grades all have seeded students that can directly enter the grade finals.

4: The competition implements a cycle of drawing lots. First, ten people are divided into a group. In other words, everybody needs to compete in nine matches. According to the number of wins, five people will be able to enter the finals. Then lots will be drawn again to determine knock-out matches, which will be conducted until there is a champion. (However, the preliminary contest is also extremely intense.)

5: Once the match has been stopped, deliberately injuring the opponent will result in disqualification. Being knocked out of the arena, hitting the barrier in the sky and admitting defeat will also be considered a loss. If the winner isn't determined within the set time frame, the refereeing teacher will determine the outcome.

6: Whoever is the champion or the runner up within a grade is able to challenge the champion or the runner up of a higher grade. If a challenger succeeds, they can directly skip a year. The champion and runner up of the fifth grade is exempt from entrance exams and can directly enter the Royal Advanced Magic Academy. The student who challenges the champion or runner up of the fifth grade and wins will also be able to enjoy these privileges.

7: The champion of the grade will receive an award of 100 diamond coins. A successful challenger will also receive double the award money.

After listening to the competition rules, I felt that it was awfully fair. The award money for the champions is truly quite a lot. The grade champion receives 100 diamond coins, that's equivalent to 10,000 gold coins. If I become the champion, I'll be able to return home with a nice surprise for mother and father.

The teacher talked about some more details of note regarding the

competition. She told us that we must strive to do our best during the competition and to fully display the fruits of our learning. We must win honor for class A. If we don't enter the top 100, winter vacation will definitely turn into the devil's training punishment and such.

After finishing class, while I was still enchanted with the prospects of enjoying all of that money, Ma Ke came over and nudged me.

"Boss, what are you thinking about? Everyone else has already left the classroom. Let's go."

I recovered due to this. "Oh. Lets go."

Right after exiting the classroom, I ran into Wo Ke.

"Zhang Gong, where have you been running off to lately? You haven't been attending class at all." Wo Ke asked with a smile as he patted me as if he were an old friend.

Was I really this familiar with you?? I thought to myself.

"Hey. Last time when I had a match with Hai Ri, my magical beast died. The academy put me on vacation to disperse my distress." I already knew that others would have many questions. I have long since come up with my replies. Hehe.

"Oh! Then you were grieving. It sure sure is a pity that your magical beast died. In the future, you should have another opportunity to find a new magical beast. The competition is tomorrow, so we need to do our best. If happen to encounter me, I won't start off leniently. I hope that I'll be able to face you and have a fair contest. Did you know? Last time during your battle with Hai Ri, you persevered for so long. You have already become the pride of the second grade." It turns out that he was afraid of me taking his position as the second grade representative. Fear truly is something to fight over. (Other people aren't fundamentally as bad as your think.)

"Thank you. I will do my best. If I face you, I also won't be lenient on you."

"Then we can do our best together. I'll be leaving first then."

“Boss, is this fellow attempting something?” Ma Ke said as he watched the figure of Wo Ke’s back.

“I can’t say exactly. His strength is very powerful!” However, compared to me there’s still quite a gap. After all, my magic power has already been condensed. Due to this fact, he’s already inferior to me.

“Hnggg. I’ll watch and report to you.” Ma Ke curled his lips.

“No, don’t. Battling him on stage will be fine. Let’s go and eat first then. Afterwards we can go back and have a nice rest. We’ll see if our luck is good or bad when we draw lots tomorrow.

After eating dinner, me and Ma Ke encountered a few students on the road to the dorms.

It truly is an encounter with enemies on a narrow road. It’s Hai Ri and his younger sister, Hai Yue. I still don’t recognize the others in the higher grades.

Hai Ri walked in front of me. He looked at me with his eyes that had a brilliant expression within them. Without yielding a step, I replied by glaring at him.

Just a moment ago while we were eating dinner, I heard Ma Ke say that since last time’s affair, Hai Ri has become very low-key. He very rarely shows his face around the academy. Hai Yue is also like this. Ma Ke hasn’t gone to bother Hai Yue at all. He truly is worthy of being acclaimed as my true friend.

“Zhang Gong, you have made so much progress. I can’t even see through you anymore. I have come to apologize to you. I’m truly sorry for what happened at that time. Letting your magical beast....”

I raised my hand, preventing him from continuing his speech. “We will meet on the field. This time I won’t lose to you.” After saying this, I pulled Ma Ke in the direction of the dorms.

Hai Ri’s voice resounded from behind me. “Good. I’ll be waiting for you.”

"Boss, you were so awesome just now! So stylish!"

"Go, hurry up and go to bed. I've just eaten so I'm feeling sleepy."

## Chapter 23: The Competition Begins

When I returned to the dormitory, only Green Hair was present, “Zhang Gong, where have you been recently?”

I gave him a cold glance and with a neutral tone said, “It’s a secret.”

“Come on, what have you been up to? They say that you and Hai Ri exchanged pointers and that he killed your magic beast.”

You truly don’t want to open the lid to that pot, Green Hair. “You want to be a bother? Irritate me and I won’t be so polite.”

Green Hair saw that I was getting angry and returned to his bed with his tail tucked between his legs, not daring to continue.

Just at that moment, my two other roommates had also returned. They were also in the same year but I did not know their names.

To be honest , even though I’ve attended this academy for a year, I could count the people whose name I knew on my finger tips. Everyone is so busy practicing that they rarely have the chance to speak to each other.

“You’re Zhang Gong? Have any plans for tomorrow’s competition?” Perhaps it’s because the competition is tomorrow that everyone is a little nervous, one of them had actually taken the initiative to greet me.

“Hello, I don’t really have a plan. I only have one goal, to be the second year champion.” When I finally said it, my voice became exceptionally resolute.

“Ah! The second year champion?” The two roommates looked at each other in shock. Green hair also came over.

“Zhang Gong, You aren’t mistaken, right? You would go so far as to want to become the year’s champion? For you to overcome the boss would be a joke.”

I got sick of looking at Green Hair, “What does this have to do with you? Go away.”

“Everyone has a goal. Even if you strive diligently, you might not be able

to reach it." I said dully.

"Zhang Gong's right. My name is Long De An and his name is Shui Yan Ming. Let's get along." The slightly taller roommate said admiringly.

"Right, let's get along then."

"Zhang Gong, come over here." I heard Teacher Di's voice ring in my mind. What he used was telepathy. Currently, I could barely use it.

"You guys should rest first. I'm going to go out for a bit." I informed my roommates. I went out of the dormitory and went straight to Teacher Di who was at the faculty's dormitory at the back of the school.

Teacher Di was already waiting for me outside on the grass.

"Teacher, What is so urgent that you must call me?" I asked panting.

"Tomorrow is the competition, are you confident?"

"Of course I am! My current magic power is very powerful!"

"Tomorrow you will start drawing lots. You can't always be wearing these clothes. Come with me."

Following Teacher Di, I entered his dormitory. He took out a magic robe from the wardrobe and gave it to me. "Try it on."

"You're giving this to me?" Looking at the gorgeous magic robe, I was pleasantly surprised.

"Yes, how could I let my student be so wretchedly unpresentable? From now on, this is yours." Teacher Di said with a smile.

"Thank You, Teacher Di." I promptly unfolded it, it was very beautiful. A pure white, unknown cloth which was embroidered with gold. The entire magic robe was very large (it actually looked like a cloak.). It was tied together at my upper abdomen. Each side had a pure, white magic stone emitting faint rays of light. There was also a large, golden magic hexagram on the back of the magic robe.

"It's very beautiful. However, isn't it a bit big?"

"Foolish child, try it on. Come over here, I'll help." Teacher Di walked

over and held the robe out according to my body and took the two white magic stones on my chest and tied them together. After clacking a bit, the two stones blended together and quickly turned golden.

How miraculous. "How did this happen?"

"Child, this magic robe was passed down to me by my master. Now, I'm passing it down to you. It uses unknown means. During winter it warms you. During summer it cools you. In addition, the magic stone at your upper abdomen speeds up the condensation of your magic power. It is not inferior to a purple magic stone. [TL Note: Remember volume one chapter one guys?] Furthermore, it can change its dimensions according to its user's size. You could consider it a treasure. I hope that you would wear it and strive for great success." Teacher Di looked deeply into my eyes.

".....I will." I answered with unwavering determination.

I lightly stroked the soft magic robe. This was the first time in my life I've ever received such fine clothes. They were stunning. In order to fulfill Teacher Di's great expectations and in order to not shame this wondrous gift, I must win, I must!

.....

"Good, below they are about to begin ceremony to draw lots, second year students are at the front courtyard. They will begin picking lots according to your year.

Drawing lots happened very fast. I drew 11-4, in other words I am group 11's 4th member. So the group competition is like this; number 1 competes with number 2, number 3 competes with number 4, and so on. That was the first round. The second round has numbers 1 and 6 competing, numbers 2 and 7 competing and numbers 3 and 8 competing and so on. This is how we advance in the competition. For the nine members, winning one time scores 3 points, losing gets zero. If victory is not certain when the allotted time ends, they each get one point.

Everyone had finished drawing their lots. In accordance to the proctoring teacher's instructions, everyone lined up according to the lots they drew. Ma Ke was in group 5. Wo Ke was in group 9. I was standing

at group 11 number 4's position. Standing in front of me was my first opponent in this competition. I haven't seen him before. It seems he attended a different class. (Each year had four different classes and every class had 50 students.) He turned around and gave me a greeting.

"You are my opponent tomorrow. My name is Tian Feng Yang, wind magic major, class B."

"Hello, my name is Zhang Gong Wei, light magic major." I replied with a smile.

He also clearly didn't know who I was. We politely exchanged a few words. I felt his magic power fluctuate quite strongly. It seems he can only practice that kind of magic, how unfortunate that he was matched against me.

"Boss, your clothes today are very beautiful. How come I've never seen you wear them before?" After we disbanded, Ma Ke ran over to see me.

I whispered into his ear that Teacher Di had given it to me. He immediately jumped, wanting his teacher to give him one as well. He left me behind and went off to find his own teacher. I shook my head.

Tomorrow will be the start of the competition. I took a look at the golden stone at my upper abdomen, it filled me with great confidence. I must become the second year champion. I must also challenge Hai Ri. Even though I bear no grudge, I wanted us to have a fair match.

# Chapter 24: Advancing Without a Hitch

The tournament started. Altogether there are 20 stages in the tournament. Every stage has two proctoring teachers in charge. One of them was responsible for setting up the defensive barrier (Each of the tournament stages had a magic setup array in the center. This teacher is only responsible for starting the match and maintaining the defensive boundary enchantment.), while the other teacher was responsible for determining the winner.

The magic competition went by very quickly. You only need ability to dominate, then the outcome of the battle can be determined very quickly.

Soon it was my turn. Tian Feng and I walked to the center of the stage and greeted each other.

“Come, let me witness your strength.” I said to him with a smile.

“Very well, I won’t hold back.” Tian Feng had cast a gliding wind enchantment on himself and began circling around me. He started with a lightning fast rush to my side and started to chant an attack spell.

I chuckled in my mind, he had no idea that I excelled at speed. I could easily catch up to him. I cast light prism shield covering me from all directions. I should pay attention to what attack spell he cast at me.

“Free winds, obey my call, transform into a violent tornado.” Huh, it turned out to be the intermediate wind attack spell “Wind Tornado”. It seems to be a probing attack.

Following spell cast of the small tornado, he went to the center of the stage and flew towards me.

I let out a faint laugh, “If intermediate attack spells are all you are capable of, you’ve already lost.”

I softly waved my magic staff, “Tear open the space before you, swallow everything foreign.” This is the spatial spell “Dimensional Decapitator”. Currently I can already skillfully control this spell.

A black crevice appeared between me and the Wind Tornado. After a

moment, the wind tornado was completely absorbed. This made even Tian Feng's breath sluggish, causing his speed to dramatically slow down.

A student in the audience called out in an amazed voice, "A spatial attack spell!"

I willed the Dimensional Decapitator to return, "Do you want to continue?"

Tian Feng helplessly stopped to glance at me, "Forget it, I admit defeat."

Dimensional Decapitator could indeed be compared with advanced attack spells, but it was quite difficult to control. Seeing me use Dimensional Decapitator with ease, he knew the strength between us differed greatly. Rather than being beaten, might as well take the initiative to admit defeat.

"You are very strong, though it is unfortunate for you to have come across me. Continue to do your best."

"In the future, I'll come back and challenge you again."

"I'll be ready any time." The current me was no longer afraid of the challenge of any person, because I was fully confident in my own strength.

Due to the rules of the preliminary competition, everyone must everyday compete in two matches. That's why when I went back to the dormitory, Ma Ke also returned a moment later.

"How are things going, Ma Ke?" Looking at his brand new magic robes, I asked with a smile.

"Is there any use in saying? A cast of Raging Flames of the Burning Heavens already settles it." Ma Ke was also talented in magic. With his teacher's knowledge and his own hard work, such a worthy opponent is rarely found amongst second years.

"Lets go, first we'll go eat, then we'll come back and rest. We still have a match in the afternoon."

Afternoon's match as far as I'm concerned should also be quite easy.

The year's overall strength is little different than Tian Feng's. After only a few blows, they concede.

At the preliminary contest's final match, I came across a fire mage of great strength.

"Are you from class A?" He seemed familiar.

"That's right. I know I might not be your opponent, but I would still like to spar with you a bit." He had yet to be defeated from his previous matches.

"Then lets do this."

Unlike Tian Feng, he hadn't dare to send any probing attacks. He first cast a defensive spell and immediately followed up with an advanced fire attack spell.

"Passionate flames, hear my call and take on a worldly form, become an endless, raging flame, burning everything before you."

This is Raging Flames of the Burning Heavens. It's always this old spell. How bothersome.

I held my hands high and raised my head, "Great light element, my friend, use your gentle light to purify everything before you." What I used was Purifying Light. This purifying light is not the same as before, it is something I created. Purifying Light was originally a divine protection spell, meant to use in a large area to remove different kinds of abnormalities. Yet the one I created not only produced this result but also forms a thick, protective barrier, becoming an advanced defense spell.

He used all his might to urge the burning flame to continuously charge into my Purifying Light. Within the defensive barrier, I leisurely looked at him. I had always thought that forcing a person off the stage was quite embarrassing for them. Still they had to know when to withdraw. I was waiting for his magic power to run out, so he would forfeit.

At this moment there was an unexpected change, the head of red hair stood upright and said, "Burn, my life's flame."

The proctors in the audience all stared blankly, "Why would this student burn his own life energy? This will reduce his lifespan. What a competitive child." Life's Flame is a fire mage's means of igniting their own life in order to release a greater level of magic. In other words, his Raging Flames of the Burning Heavens was originally a rank six spell, by igniting Life's Flame, it is possible to immediately escalate it to a rank seven spell.

The fire outside the barrier from its originally fiery red, gradually became darker. Then it changed into a somber, dark blue. The pressure against me immediately increased.

"How unexpected. You still had a skill like this. Look, this is my true strength, don't you concede now!" What I sensed from him wasn't inferior to that to Hai Ri's.

"Great light elements, please allow me to borrow your formidable strength, let the infinite light of the earth shine." Light attack spell, Brilliant Empire, a seventh rank light spell. This is currently the most powerful spell I could use.

Following my chant, I slowly floated above the ground, a blinding white light covered me from head to toe. My magic robe was fluttering behind me. The golden magic stone on my magic robe released a golden light. The white light that I released was projected, brightening the stage. I raised my head. Within my Upper Dantian, the gold dan released a third of my magic power to cover my body. The rays of light that earlier surrounded me shrank back for a second and then suddenly burst forth. The blue fire was rapidly engulfed by my white rays of light. The match's barrier after continuously enduring, started to show cracks.

[TL Note: Gold Dan refers to the golden sphere of compressed power residing in the upper dantian.]

"This student is so competitive. He's only in the second grade yet he can already use rank seven spells. These second year students have such powerful magic, they can already use rank seven spells. Have they already reached the level of a magic scholar?" The two proctors immediately

poured their energy into maintaining the barrier.

After the barrier stabilized, my opponent had already fallen to the ground and had not risen. All of the people present were temporarily blinded by the magnificent white light I had released.

In truth, I could only exhibit a third of this spell's strength. Thats because I am only able to use a third of my magic power, even so it is still a rank seven spell. However, he raised the rank of his spell with great difficulty, I could cast the spell without assistance, but the attack light spell was also at least as powerful as a normal rank seven spell. That being said, dark and spatial magic attack spells are slightly more powerful than the other elements but also require more strength to use. Not only did he exhausted his Life's Flame but it had also begun to dim.

"Great light elements, act for your friend, I humbly request you to save the being before me." I quickly cast a Spiritual Restoration spell on him. My Spiritual Restoration spell had the power of an absolute advanced class restoration spell.

As they regained their vision, it became clear to everyone present that I was ultimately the victor.

## Chapter 25: Advancing to the Semifinals

Under my strong recovery magic, he gradually regained consciousness, but he was still very weak. After all, he did draw from his life energy.

"Thank you, you are truly strong. I totally accept this loss." He helplessly said.

"Don't use magic like that anymore, drawing from life energy is very dangerous." Because I've also used life magic before, I know what the consequences are for using one's life energy.

"Thank you, I will keep this in mind."

The proctoring teacher walked on stage and gave me a nod of approval. He obviously approved of me giving aid to my opponent.

"I proclaim, Student Zhang Gong Wei wins first place in the 11th group, Student Cha Li Ao Te gets second place..." the teacher announced the results of the 11th group.

I didn't know his name until now. He has already been carried back to the dormitories by some of his friends. I have also made a solid step towards my goal.

I see that Teacher Di has arrived in the audience, he must have came because of the magic fluctuations that occurred. Seeing me, he waved. His voice then sounded in my head: "What happened? Zhang Gong, was it you who used that impressive spell?"

I'm currently not skilled in using telepathy so I don't dare use it lightly. I just answered very simply: "Wait until I find you and I'll tell you then."

"Alright, then I'll go now."

Coming out of the grounds, I immediately left using a couple of short-distance teleportation spells because I was scared of everyone asking me this and that. First I'll go find Teacher Di, he must still be waiting for me.

"Teacher Di, I've arrived."

"Come in."

I walked into Teacher Di's office and he signaled me to sit down.

"What happened?"

"It was like this...." I summarized what happened during the competition.

"Ah....." Teacher Di let out a long sigh, "You kids nowadays, how could you guys use life magic so lightly? You should know your body was given to you by your parents. Last time, you used it in order to save another life. However, this is just an ordinary competition. The desire to win was far too great." Teacher Di shook his head.

"Looks like I will need to add a counseling class to the academy."

"Don't be upset sir, it will be fine as long as you strengthen our education in that area." I comforted him.

"You brat, today you used such an impressive spell, who in the second year would still dare compete with you."

"Impossible, my Brilliant Empire is still very immature and I can't control it very well either. I can only use about one third of its power. Also, I didn't want to use it so early, but if I didn't, I wouldn't have been able to block that shot." I said, feeling hurt.

"Only you know that you can't use it's full power. How many people do we have using light magic? Everyone's evaluation of you must be very high. This time, you can be as lazy as you want without a problem."

.....

Just as Teacher Di had predicted, none of the other students wanted to compete with me after seeing my performance the other day. Since the semi-finals started, all my opponents would concede after just a couple of moves. The first thing anyone who got me as their opponent would say is: "Why am I so unlucky?!" With hardly any effort, I became one of the top four. I even outshined Wo Ke, who originally was the most popular contestant.

In comparison, Ma Ke had to work a lot harder. After getting into the

semi-finals, every match was won with great difficulty. Even with it being that hard, he still felt that he was lucky because he didn't get me, hehe.

In the top four, there were three from A class: me, Ma Ke and Wo Ke. Unexpectedly, the last spot in the top four went to a girl from D class who majored in water magic. I haven't seen any of her matches. I really didn't expect that D class had someone so strong.

The draw to decide our opponent has started, I went up first and drew an A lot. Ma Ke, this kid, was mumbling something the whole time. Looks like he really doesn't want to get me. However, life doesn't work that way and he also drew an A lot. Hehe, looks like there's going to be a good show this time.

Coming down from the stage, Ma Ke was like a frosted eggplant.

[TL Note: floppy, lifeless.]

"What's wrong, Ma Ke." I poked him.

"Boss, why am I so unlucky? I got you so early!"

"Why is this so bad? I might not necessarily win against you!" How come he has so little confidence in himself!

"How can that be??"

"You wouldn't know, but Teacher Long told me that you and I are not even on the same level. He said that I'm a lot weaker than you are and told me to keep on working hard." Turns out, that it was something his teacher said, hehe, or else why would this kid be so scared of drawing the same lot as me. His teacher is the vice-principal of the academy, Magister Xing De Long. Naturally his words would contain authority.

"Let's work hard tomorrow. I hope we can have a good match, just like on the examination day. How do you know you can't beat me without trying."

"Alright!"

It certainly is the top four competition, nearly all the second year students have come to watch, it's so lively. Ma Ke and I step onto the

stage, “Ma Ke, don’t humiliate yourself, there’s so many people watching!”

Ma Ke gave me a helpless smile and started his attacks.

Ma Ke’s biggest advantage is that his magic control is very strong. He’s not scared of my teleportation, so he started with a single, advanced attack spell.

“Oh great fire elements, gather at my side, become a dragon of fire and annihilate the enemy before you.” Damn! Yesterday this kid was still saying that he couldn’t win against me. Today he’s so fierce, a fire dragon as soon as we start. This fire spell’s attack is not any weaker than the strengthened Raging Flames of the Burning Heavens from the other day.

A huge fire dragon appeared from Ma Ke. It circled him once and then it pounced towards me.

Although I have already strengthened my Light Prism Shield, I still don’t dare collide head on with his fire dragon. What should I use? Purifying Light probably won’t block it either and Dimensional Slash can’t handle such a large attack.

“Oh great light elements, hear my prayers, become a divine halo and halt the enemy’s advance.” Advanced defensive light spell, Divine Halo, appeared on my body.

The white halo formed a solid barrier three feet in front of me and threw the fire dragon back. However the fire dragon hadn’t yet disappeared, it turned around and immediately pounced back. Ma Ke’s strength is really strong, I’ve never seen him use this spell in the preliminaries or the semi-finals.

I summoned my magic power and blocked his attack again and again. I can tell, it takes him a lot of effort to control the fire dragon. It looks like he won’t last much longer.

“Boss, I’m going to use my trump card!” What, this kid has a trump card...

Ma Ke took a fire red magic staff and starting chanting.

In the audience, Teacher Di immediately grabbed Teacher Long's mustache, "What?! Out of all the things you fished out of your trunk, you'd actually give that kid the Fire God's Fury?"

Teacher Long didn't take it lying down and also grabbed Teacher Di's mustache, "What about you? Didn't you also give him the Light God's Robe?"

[ED Note: Remember old asian mustaches?]

While the two old men in the audience were busy fighting, I entered my greatest challenge since the beginning of the competition. Following Ma Ke's chant, a small, red ball appeared from the top of his magic staff, about the size of a ping-pong ball. However, I know that it's nothing fun. That's a ball of pure energy, much much scarier than a mere fire dragon.

## Chapter 26: Knocking Out Wo Ke

It seems like his magic staff has very powerful amplification effects. I could tell since I knew that at his current level, he wouldn't be able to release such a pure energy ball. It would be strenuous even for me.

In the wake of the appearance of Ma Ke's magic ball, his fire dragon gradually became dull. It seems that to support it, a lot of effort is required of him. I took advantage of the decreased pressure and quickly began chanting an incantation. It seems like there's no other choice but to once again use Brilliant Empire, but I wasn't sure this would be able to stop it. Actually, I also wanted to use an energy ball, But I know that my magic control couldn't compare with Ma Ke's. I would surely be hit by him, but I wouldn't necessarily hit him. Only an area attacks could match it.

"Oh great light elements, please allow me to borrow your formidable strength, let the infinite light of the earth shine."

While covered in a dazzling white light from head to toe, I slowly began floating upwards from the ground. My magic robe fluttered behind me. The golden magic stone at my upper abdomen emitted a gold light, complementing my white light so that it is even more dazzling. As I raised my head, the gold dan within my upper dantian used one third of my magic power to cover up my whole body. However, the difference this time is that this time I used an additional one third of my magic power to control this magic since I knew that Ma Ke's energy ball wasn't inferior in any way to my Brilliant Empire. I exhausted my remaining magic power to make my Brilliant Empire gather in the middle and form a pillar with a diameter the size of the stage to hit Ma Ke.

"Ah Boss, you're so fierce. I'll stake it all to then." Ma Ke waved his hand, then the energy ball on top of the magic staff flew towards my pillar of light.

Contrary to expectations, because the Brilliant Empire is too dispersed, it doesn't stop the energy ball, but instead slows it down.

I advance bravely while using all of my body's remaining magic power to form a Light Prism Shield. The Fire Energy Ball reached me then it shatters my Light Prism Shield. This is the first time ever that my Light Prism Shield has been shattered.

I felt a burst of scorching heat throughout my whole body, I knew I was finished. I was hit by the energy ball. In this moment that was as if a thousand pounds was hanging by a thread, a change that I never would have expected occurred. My magic robe's central magic stone burst into a dazzling golden light. The gold light formed a transparent membrane that enveloped me and protected me from the energy ball.

I recalled from the bottom of my heart Teacher Di's words: "Quickly pour the remainder of your magic power into the magic stone at your upper abdomen."

I had unconsciously acted in accordance to his words.

The collision between the energy ball and my defense cover produced intense friction, causing waves and waves of formidable pressure to push me back. Step by step, I retreated. I had already reached the edge of the stage.

I can't retreat any further.

I can not lose. I must not lose. I held my magic staff horizontally across my chest and shouted: "AH!—"

At the same time as my out burst, a warm energy came from within my body and through my arm it entered my magic staff. My whole body felt light. At last, the energy ball had been depleted by the light.

I sat my butt on the ground, gasping for air in big breaths. From the corner of my mouth trickled a stream of blood. Just now, that portion of warm energy had slowly enveloped my body and restored my damaged meridians. Ah! That was Xiao Jin. It was him who helped me at the crucial moment.

What about Ma Ke? Where did Ma Ke go? Sluggishly, I began looking for his figure.

“Student Zhang Gong, if you can’t get up within five seconds, I must announce that you have been defeated.”

Ah! It seems that Ma Ke is also unwell. Haha. I stood up at once.

It turns out that while Ma Ke’s energy ball collided with me, Ma Ke was hit by my Brilliant Empire in half the time. He doesn’t have any energy left after enduring my compressed Brilliant Empire. Right now Teacher Di is giving him treatment. (The beating I gave him wasn’t light.)

I truly didn’t expect that victory would have been that difficult. At the final moment, Xiao Jin’s energy was used to ensure victory. (Hehe. I violated one of the rules, but surely no one knows since magical beasts generally can’t produce energy while within their master’s body. They must be summoned before they can do anything.)

Due to a powerless body, two of my roommates took my arms and assisted me in returning back to the dorm. Just as I was about to sleep, I heard Teacher Di’s voice.

“Young fellow, what’s the matter? Winning against that Ma Ke who was a whole level lower than you required so much effort. You truly are so stupid.”

Since I didn’t understand Teacher Di’s meaning, I didn’t have a reply. (Granted that, even if I understood, in my current state.....) Perhaps Teacher Di also knew I couldn’t answer, so he started madly bombarding me with lectures.

The general idea of what he said was that if I had taken the initiative to attack in the beginning, my victory wouldn’t have been so disastrous. He also said that I was careless and that magic still has many defects and so on.

I really couldn’t stand this, so I used the bit of magic power that I have recovered to seal my mind. Smoothly, I entered the realm of dreams.

Due to the excessive magic consumption, I didn’t go watch Wo Ke and the D class girl’s match the next day. Who cares about it, Wo Ke will definitely win. Although Wo Ke is also powerful, he probably won’t have

Ma Ke's energy ball. So I'll surely beat him tomorrow.

After eating lunch, I arrived at Ma Ke's dorm room to take a look at how he is. This fellow is also in very poor health. In comparison, I'm much better off, since getting off of bed for him takes much effort.

"Boss, you're really too ruthless. I've already been beaten to a crisp by you."

"You are still say I'm ruthless, yet you deny that you're ruthless. Fuck. I also received quite the beating from you. You have really made a lot of progress. Before the match, I didn't expect that your strength would have such a small gap between mine. It seems that I must strive hard, otherwise I'll be exceeded by you and then I'll have to call you Boss instead."

We looked at each other and simultaneously began laughing. Then we chatted for a bit before I returned to my dorm. I must seize the moment and properly condense magic power to prepare for tomorrow's match.

When I woke up, it was already evening. Green Hair and the other two roommates have already returned.

"Zhang Gong, you truly are my idol. My reverence of you is like the unending torrent of a river."

"Fuck, you see that I'm powerful so you want me to support you! Go away, don't bother me."

"Zhang Gong, I have some astonishing news. Do you want to hear it?"

"You! What kind of good news do you have?" I asked him with a doubtful expression.

"It is definitely useful for you. Did you know? Today Boss Wo Ke unexpectedly lost. Furthermore, he lost very quickly!" Green Hair mysteriously said.

"What! What did you say? Wo Ke unexpectedly lost?" Impossible. To my surprise, Wo Ke lost to a girl from class D. Although I haven't faced him, Wo Ke's strength is very clear since I knew that becoming the second

grade representative wasn't that easy.

"Are you lying to me? If you're lying to me, then you're dead." I began to condense magic power on my hands to frighten Green Hair.

"Boss Zhang Gong, please don't. What I said is the truth. If you don't believe it then ask them."

I turned my head and doubtfully looked at my other two roommates.

Long De An said: "Zhang Gong, Green Hair didn't lie. Wo Ke truly lost miserably today. I'm afraid that aside from him, no one else really understands how he lost."

# Chapter 27: Absolute Disruption

“Quick, tell me what happened.”

“It’s like this. Today, we all thought that Wo Ke would win. However, as soon as they got on stage, that girl from D class used a water spell we didn’t recognize, it seemed to be a sealing spell. Wo Ke caught by these blue circles, and he couldn’t get out no matter what he tried. Then that girl from D class used a water bullet and easily knocked him off the stage. According to my observations, those blue circles prevented Wo Ke from using his magic. It was an injustice for him to lose.”

“So unfair!” I’m not so sure that I can win anymore.

“Zhang Gong, you can’t lose tomorrow. Our A class can’t let D class become the champions.”

“You guys can rest assured. I will definitely win.”

Although I said that to them, I’m actually not too sure about my chances. No, I must quickly go ask Teacher Di.

I used the excuse of taking a stroll and went to Teacher Di’s dormitory. He was reading a magic book. Seeing that I came, he gave me a faint smile, “I just knew you would come find me as soon as you heard Wo Ke lost.”

“Then please hurry and tell me how Wo Ke lost. How can I avoid becoming trapped?”

Teacher Di sighed. “You should just concede tomorrow!” His words were like a bomb (had they existed), stunning me.

“Is that girl really that strong??”

“Not necessarily that, you can only say that her family is strong. I also only learned about this today, that girl is the younger sister of Hai Ri. She’s called Hai Shui Xing. You might not know but, Ri, Yue and Xing are the three most ancient families in our Aixia Kingdom. Each family has an inheritance spell, spells that are directly inherited from their ancestors. The spell Hai Shui used today is the most mysterious spell in the Xing

family, it's called Absolute Disruption. This sealing spell is very strange, each generation can only have one family member inherit it. No matter how strong your magic power is, the spell consumes one third of the user's magic power every time it's used. In other words, the spell can only be used three times each day, but that is more than enough for the competition."

So there was actually such a complicated story behind all this, "Don't tell me even you can't break this sealing spell."

"It not that I can't, but I will have to fiercely attack with rank 8 attack spells or ride it out with defensive spells. Can you use rank 8 attack spells? While her opponent is sealed, she can use attack spells and her opponent can only passively take the attacks. You can't win tomorrow unless you can last until she runs out of magic power. However that is literally impossible because the defensive spell consumption will be very fast under the effects of Absolute Disruption. Those that come in direct contact with Absolute Disruption can't use magic for a whole day. It is exactly because of this that I lowered my expectations for you. You think I don't want you to win. Not only you, there isn't a single student in this academy that can break her Absolute Disruption."

Coming out of Teacher Di's place, my head was filled with thoughts about Absolute Disruption. Who cares, I want to give it a try tomorrow even if I'm destined to lose. You never know, a miracle might happen.

Back in my dormitory, I spent half the night brainstorming and still could not find a way to deal with Absolute Disruption. In the end, I finally fell asleep in a daze.. When I woke up, the sun was already high in the sky, furthermore it was Green Hair who shook me awake.

"Zhang Gong. Get up quickly, it'll soon be time for the match."

I barely managed to open my eyes, "Ah! What are you doing! Let me sleep for a bit longer."

"You have a match soon. You'll be late if you sleep any longer." Green Hair yelled into my ear.

That scared me awake, "Ah! That's right. I still have a match today." I

flew out of bed, got dressed and sprinted out. As I was leaving, I said, “Thank you Green Hair. I’m going to go ahead of you.”

Green Hair obviously wasn’t paying attention. Look at my retreating back, he started mumbling to himself: “He actually said ‘Thank You’ to me. Living up till now, this is the first time someone said Thank You to me. Looks like helping people is very nice.” By the time he finished, he had a silly smile on his face. I didn’t know that one unintentional sentence from me changed the whole life of a person.

I ran at lightning speed to the center of the competition area. The first two people I saw were Long De An and Shui Yang Ming. Both of them seemed to have let out a sigh of relief when they saw me. They came over to greet me, “Zhang Gong, how come you only just got here.”

I sheepishly replied: “I overslept. Thankfully, Green Hair woke me up.”

“Okay. Let’s not talk about this. Get up onto the stage quickly, the match is about to begin.”

I looked up at the stage, the proctor and the other competitor were already at their stations. I used teleportation to arrive on the stage. I first gave my greetings to the proctor and then started to size up my opponent.

It was a really cute little girl. Looks like this is Hai Shui Xing, there are indeed some similarities between her and Hai Yue’s looks. However, she was tad bit cuter and a tad less calm. She also started observing me curiously when she noticed me looking at her.

Practically all the second grade students are here, even Teacher Di is in the central VIP section. He doesn’t hold any hope of me winning, but he still came.

“Alright, since both sides have arrived, I declare that the match begins now.” The proctor got off the stage as soon he finished speaking. Because they know that the finalists are strong, today’s defense barrier was jointly created by five proctors, just in case something happens.

First, Hai Shui and I bowed to the proctors and the audience, “You must be Hai Shui. Hello, my name is Zhang Gong.”

"Hello." She's still a little girl, she started blushing. From her magic fluctuations and the fact that I'm still quite a distance away, looks like I can only take the initiative and attack.

"I know that you have a very special spell. Let's have a good match today." Seeing her nod, I immediately began my magic attacks.

Because I know that her Absolute Disruption doesn't need much time to activate, I don't dare use advanced attack spells. I first teleported behind her and immediately shot a Light Arrow at her. (My Light Arrow is a strengthened form, its attack power is not any lower than an intermediate spell.)

She seemed to slightly panic, but her reaction was still really fast and used a water shield to block my attack. Now I can't give her an opportunity to retaliate or else I'm done for. I began a speed attack, only using the lowest levelled Light Arrow because it is the only spell that can beat Absolute Disruption's short casting time. I won't let her gather enough magic power to seal me.

The audience were just seeing me flying all over the place. Sometimes left, sometimes right, sometimes in front, sometimes behind her. As soon as I got to each position, I would immediately shoot a Light Arrow at Hai Shui. For the time being, I made Hai Shui struggle to manage the situation. In the audience, Teacher Di was looking at me with approving eyes. Regretfully, I wasn't able to see it.

## Chapter 28: Breaking the Magic Seal

Hai Shui let her guard down for a moment and gave me an opportunity to attack her. Although she used a defense spell, I feared she did not receive it well.

Perhaps it was because she felt pain from the blow, Hai Shui wrinkled her cute little nose and her eyes flashed with anger. While she was defending from the assault, her mouth was chanting something. She chanted extremely fast. It didn't seem to be an incantation and I also had no idea what it was. I continued on with my assault. Wait, something's wrong. Why do I feel like her speed is gradually increasing? Ah, no! It's me gradually slowing down. Why is this happening? I began to hear a buzzing sound and it gradually increased more intensely. Is this not Absolute Disruption? Teacher's description of Absolute Disruption doesn't match with this one.

It grew larger, like a sea wave pounding against my ear. My head becoming a bit dizzy. My spells and my movement slowed down.

On the viewing platform, Teacher Di said to himself "This isn't good." He said to Teacher Long next to him, "I didn't expect this young girl to be able to use one of the Xing clan's three great secrets, the Water Dragon's Chant, combined with Absolute Disruption. This time Zhang Gong will certainly lose."

"Right, This student is certainly powerful. Stronger than we were back then. Your disciple is done for, hehe." Because of Ma Ke's defeat at Zhang Gong's hand, Teacher Long took a bit of pleasure at his misfortune.

"You, you, you!" Teacher Di angrily puffed his mustache and glared at him.

At the middle of the stage, I already realized that my situation was not good and hurriedly cast divine protection on myself. It wasn't very effective but I felt a little bit better.

Hai Shui saw an opportunity arrive and raised her arms in the air, moving them in circles. A green ring of light surrounded me, I knew this

was her clan's skill-Absolute Disruption. Currently I haven't found a way out. I could only cast defensive spells on myself in hopes that Hai Shui would exhaust her magic power.

I'm finished. My great future prospects, ruined.

Big or small, I don't know how many spells were blocked by the white halo surrounding me. Currently, I was like a green sphere of light. In the middle of the sphere, I felt an indescribable amount of pressure fiercely charging at me from all directions. The golden sphere within my body rapidly worked. A layer of defense enchantments continuously resisted the invading seal.

Currently, I truly understand how formidable the seal is. My magic power rapidly diminished at a speed far surpassing what I imagined. What am I going to do? I thought of every action I could take, not one of them could solve this predicament.

At this time Hai Shui's face wore an adorable smile. She knows victory is close at hand. She didn't continue her magic assault because she was waiting for my magic power to exhaust. Her seal was going to win her the match anyway so why bother expend wasted effort. Therefore she just smiled looking at an enemy that was just about to be defeated, Me.

My defensive barrier continuously grew smaller. A burst of intense pressure pushed into the center, cramming me in. In the end, my defensive enchantments were broken through by the seal. A green ring of light bound me like a sticky rice dumpling(ZongZi - he's the rice, green light is the leaves ). It wasn't painful, only because the light consumed magic power and didn't think I had any left. The only difference is that I am unable to communicate with the magic elements. I then realized, I already been completely sealed. Looking at Hai Shui condensing a ball of water in her hand, I didn't feel like conceding. I'm about to lose.

Just when I was about to concede, Xiao Jin unexpectedly woke and stirred strongly within my body. What's the matter? I was baffled, because my magic power had already been sealed. Inside my body, Xiao Jin should also have been sealed. How can he be awake and stir so

restlessly?

Along with his restlessness, my head felt a sharp pain as if it were a pincushion. The pain grew stronger and stronger, like it wanted to tear my head apart. I couldn't stand it any longer. I put both hands on my head and let out a mind splitting scream from my lungs.

It was this scream that saved me. Looking at me suddenly change, Hai Shui was startled to the point where the water ball fell apart. (In order to use magic, you must have a highly concentrated mind.) She thought to herself, This can't be. The Absolute Disruption I cast on him doesn't have any attack properties, what could possibly have happened to him?

I felt pain as if I were dying. Just when I was on the verge of falling to the ground, I felt an explosion come from within my brain. I felt as if I no longer existed. Eyes, Ears, Nose, Tongue, Body, Thought. I felt my six senses simultaneously disappear.

The people present looked at each other in marvel. From my Upper Dantian, a brilliant spot appeared between my eyebrows. Afterwards it gradually spread as a circle of golden light, turning into a halo encompassing me. The golden halo binded the Absolute Disruption and melted it as fast as snow. This breathtaking appearance rendered all the people present stunned. Hai Shui's small mouth had become an O shape.

Teacher Di and Teacher Long glanced at each other, speaking in unison with different voices, "He broke the magic seal!!!"

Teacher Di said with extraordinary excitement, "How did he do it? How did he break the seal? This is a skill that only the dragon race possesses!"

Dragons 101: The dragon race is the most formidable species on the continent. Possessing a tyrannical body, they all have an exceptionally strong resistance towards magic. They also possess the strongest physical attacks on the continent (second is the Mist Behemoth). Higher ranked dragons can use magic and possess wisdom and intelligence surpassing that of humans. Dragons are a peace loving race and very few of them appear in the continent. There are only a few you could come across and you must be as strong as they are in order to be deemed worthy enough of

forming a pact of companionship with one. The number of existing dragons do not exceed three hundred. Dragons can exist for an extremely long period of time, they could live up to ten thousand years or higher. Contrasting this however, dragons find it extremely difficult to reproduce. Not only is the time required to hatch from an egg long, but the amount of eggs are also extremely sparse. The continent's dragons are also only known from legends. People who have truly seen dragons are very few. As a result, the dragon specific magic presently appearing on my body left the knowledgeable Teacher Di and Teacher Long exceptionally astonished.

As for the others, they were amazed that I was unexpectedly able to get rid of Hai Shui's sealing spell.

I don't know how the present circumstances came to be. I could only feel that my body was a space of nothingness, unable to perceive anything. I gradually regained my perception, one by one my six senses returned to my body. I used the magic staff to prop up my own body. I raised my head to look at Hai Shui, and saw that she still had not recovered from her astonishment. I tested what magic power I had left. I could only use a pitifully small amount, roughly enough for an elementary spell.

I cannot lose. For Teacher Di, I cannot lose. For Xiao Jin, I cannot lose. For Teacher Xiu, I cannot lose. For myself, I cannot lose.

With strong willpower, I gathered what little magic power I had left with difficulty. I then teleported behind Hai Shui and exhausted my body's strength, tackling into the defenseless Hai Shui.

The defenseless Hai Shui took my blow and dropped off the stage.

“Shameless scoundrel.”

“Truly undeserving of face. Using such a shameless trick.”

“To go as far as to tackle her.”

.....

Countless scolding voices reached my ear, I used my magic staff to

support my body. I said to the stupefied proctoring teacher, "Teacher, you still haven't announced the winner."

The proctor immediately responded, "Student Hai Shui has left the stage, Student Zhang Gong is victorious."

# Chapter 29: Five Clawed Golden Dragon

After finally winning, I sat down on the ground, exhausted.

My two roommates and Green Hair rushed onto the stage and hugged me excitedly, “Boss. You won. You won.”

I looked at them tiredly, “Stop shaking me. Go away. I want to sleep...” I fainted midway through my sentence. I’ve already overused my magic power, plus it was the first time I’ve used someone else’s power. My body couldn’t take it anymore and passed out in safe hands.

“Eh? Why am I in Teacher Di’s room?” Waking up, my body was sore all over with no strength remaining whatsoever. I tried to condense my magic power, but I’ve only recovered a tiny portion of it. The pitifully small golden ball inside me was slowly spinning, continuously recovering my power. Looks like I won’t be able to recover within a day or two.

I was alone in the room. The sun was out but I didn’t know exactly what time of the day it was.

The door opened with a creak and Teacher Di walked in, “You’re awake. How’s your body?

“It’s fine, just feeling a bit weak. Teacher Di, how come I’m here??”

“I wanted to ask you something when you woke up, so I brought you over here. At the end of the competition, how were you able to use Magic Seal Destruction?” Teacher Di urgently asked me.

“Ah! I don’t know either. What is Magic Seal Destruction?” I honestly don’t know. Right now, my memory of that day’s victory is very fuzzy. Even more so in terms of how I won.

“How could you not know? You clearly used it. How could you not know?” Teacher Di was anxiously walking in circles.

“Teacher, don’t worry. Just explain slowly. What exactly is going on?” What is there to be anxious about? Looking at Teacher Di’s condition, it seems that Magic Seal Destruction something is very important.

After listening to my words, Teacher Di also realized that being anxious

would not solve anything. After calming himself down, “It’s like this. That day, just as we thought you weren’t going to make it, when you were sealed by Absolute Disruption, a spell unique to the Dragon race, Magic Seal Destruction, appeared on your body. Its exact form is the same as that golden halo that appeared around you.”

“A golden halo? Let me think.” I tried really hard to recall what happened that day, “I think there was a golden halo, it seemed to have broken Hai Shui’s Absolute Disruption upon contact. However I don’t know what happened either. Is this very important?”

“Of course it’s very important. Very, very important. Have you realized, that golden halo you used is a spell unique to the Dragon race. Only the esteemed Dragon race can use it, there has never been a case where one of the human race used the dragon’s Magic Seal Destruction. Recall carefully, have you concluded any sort of contract with a dragon?”

“I didn’t. Other than Xiao Jin, I haven’t made a contract with anyone else. Ah, that’s right, Xiao Jin.” My eyes brighten, Xiao Jin’s unexpected stirring that day was what had made my head hurt. Afterwards, that golden halo appear. It must be related to Xiao Jin.

“What about Xiao Jin?” Teacher Di urgently asked.

I recounted the whole situation to him in detail.

Teacher Di muttered, “If you look at it like this, Xiao Jin is not a snake type magic beast, but a...”

Teacher Di and I glanced at each other and spoke at the same time. ....Dragon.” Xiao Jin is a dragon? Is it possible???

“Quick, summon Xiao Jin.” I also wanted to see if Xiao Jin actually is a dragon. Furthermore, it had been a long time since I’ve let him out, don’t know if there has been any changes.

After Teacher Di set a barrier around the room, I started to chant, “My friend Xiao Jin, appear before me.” Following my simple chant, a white light flashed and Xiao Jin appeared in front of me.

Xiao Jin had grown quite a bit compared to the last time I saw him,

however he had a lazy look. Through telepathy, I learned that he had used a large portion of his magic power during the competition and still hadn't recovered yet. His two horns seem to be growing towards the middle of his head and the golden stripes goes down his whole body, from head to tail. The fin shaped objects on his back have become sturdier and longer, they practically took up the whole upper half of the back of his body. The five protrusions on his underside have not only grown quite a bit, but at the very front they also seemed to each have a small round pad at the end.

"He's already this big?" Teacher Di had not seen Xiao Jin's grown up appearance yet.

"Yeah. He grew after we shared life energy, but he wasn't as big as he is now. Teacher Di, is he a dragon?"

"I can't really say, I've never seen a dragon before either. However, my memories tell me that dragons are supposed to have two claws. If those bumps on his underside are claws, then that's a bit too many. Wait, I'm going to look through my book. It's been many years since I have read it."

While talking, Teacher Di took an ancient book from his huge bookshelf. I moved closer to take a look, the title of the book is "The True Rulers of the Mainland – Dragons". Looks like it's a book specifically on dragons.

[Editor DD's Note: Way to go Sherlock.]

[Editor Ruze's Note: It's actually quite straightforward Watson.]

"Let's see, let's see." Teacher Di mutters as he flips through the book. He goes through the book extremely fast, practically only scanning each page before moving on. Suddenly, he stopped, looks at Xiao Jin and then looks back at the book. As if he was comparing something.

"Did you find it? Is Xiao Jin actually a dragon?" I stood on my tippy-toes to read the book in Teacher Di's hands.

"Zhang Gong. If the information on the book is correct, then you have really picked up a treasure."

“What does the book say?”

“You take a look, this article here.” Teacher Di handed the book over to me and just stared at Xiao Jin, as if he was admiring a long extinct treasure.

I took the book. On the book was this:

Title: Ruler of the Dragons – Five-Clawed Golden Dragon

Introduction: The Five-Clawed Golden Dragon is the ruler of the Dragon race, also known as the Dragon King. The Dragon King of each generation is the strongest of his kin and possess abnormally strong strength. The life span of a Five-Clawed Golden Dragon is approximately 20,000 years. Only when he turns 15,000 years or when he feels that his life span is ending will he mate with the most beautiful female dragon at the time. After a pregnancy period of over 1,000 years, the next generation would be born. When the new Five-Clawed Golden Dragon has grown and matured at 3,000 years old, he will become a true Dragon King, replacing his father in ruling the dragon race. At this point, the previous Dragon King’s body would have already gradually aged and would be enjoying his retirement in the Dragon race’s territory. Therefore, there is only one Five-Clawed Golden Dragon in every generation that is the true ruler. The Five-Clawed Golden Dragon not only possesses an abnormally strong physical strength, it is also an expert in the Dragon race’s language spells showing that it is extremely intelligent.

“Teacher Di, this can’t be true. Xiao Jin is a Five-Clawed Golden Dragon? If he is, he needs 3000 years to mature. By that time, I would have already turned to ash. He isn’t even a year old yet!” I asked the question lingering in my heart.

## Chapter 30: I Want to go Home

"Let me think." Teacher Di contemplated for a moment. "Xiao Jin is maturing at an unusually fast rate, much faster than the rate of growth mentioned in the book. In only a year, he almost grew out of his infant stage. The book stated that the minimum amount of time to mature past the infant stage is 600 years. But it hasn't even been a year since Xiao Jin was born and he has almost finished maturing past infant stage and will soon enter the growth stage. I suppose there is a relationship between Xiao Jin's rapid growth and sharing your life with him. Was it before the accident or after that he started growing so quickly?"

"Thats right! After the accident, Xiao Jin grew wildly, absorbing magic power much greater than before."

"Zhang Gong, you truly picked up a treasure. No matter what, you musn't let other people know that Xiao Jin is a dragon. Wait until after Xiao Jin entered the growth stage, then no longer have to worry. By that time, his wings and claws should have already sprouted out and he will be of great assistance to you."

"Yea, This is great. My magic beast is a dragon."

"Don't be happy so soon. First I'll give you this book. This book has been passed on from master to student throughout the generations. You must preserve it well. It will be useful to you in the future. On the last page of the book, a map and the means of travelling to the Dragon race's territory is written down. After you graduate from the advanced magic academy, you should go visit. In the case that the current Dragon King wishes to take back Xiao Jin you should return him. We truly don't know how Xiao Jin wandered out of their territory."

"Do I have to return him?" I don't want Xiao Jin to leave me, even if he weren't a dragon I'd still feel the same.

"You must. Zhang Gong do as you're told. You must know that for a mother and father to lose their children is painful to no end. You should think about Xiao Jin as well!"

That's right! If mother and father can't find me, they would definitely be very sad. After I graduate school and have the opportunity, I'll go pay a visit to Dragon's Valley. If worst comes to worst, I'll have to persuade them to let Xiao Jin accompany me.

Ah, I haven't seen mother and father for such a long time. When I finally have a vacation, I want to go home and see them. When they see how awesome my magic has become, they will definitely be happy.

"Teacher Di, when can I go home? I miss mother and father." I didn't have any ulterior motives, it was just that I suddenly recalled a longing for home!

"Homesick? Rest for two days, wait until your body has recovered and then go home. The day after tomorrow is an official school vacation." Teacher Di said brightly.

"Ah, that's right. Teacher Di, I don't want to challenge the upperclassmen anymore. I feel like I am still lacking. I want to diligently practice magic and become stronger before thinking about challenging them again."

"Your attitude is great. I feared that you would have become satisfied with your progress thus far. Without Xiao Jin, you wouldn't have been the champion. I also wish for you to diligently practice. Wait until you attend advanced magic academy, then you can graduate early. Why don't you rest? I still have many matters to attend to." Teacher Di kindly patted my head, then turned around and left.

I truly didn't expect that this competition would be so eventful. But it's not too bad, at the very least I found out what Xiao Jin was. Once I enter society, I'll definitely find the time to go and help Xiao Jin find his parents.

I looked at Xiao Jin warmly, stroking his large head. Xiao Jin seemed to feel something, lazily leaning toward me.

Teacher Di had already left and his barrier should have also expired. I immediately sent Xiao Jin back into my body.

Wanting to sleep, I laid down on the bed, however I couldn't sleep at all. Teacher Xiu should be coming to pick me up the day after tomorrow. With his high expectations of me, he will surely be extremely happy once he learns of my progress. I don't know about mother and father, but they definitely miss me. I really miss them too.

I watched the starry sky through my window with feelings of homesickness. Since I couldn't sleep, I began cultivating my magic power. Restoring as much of my magic power as possible is also very important. I began absorbing the condensed light elements. The light elements unceasingly rushed forth and compressed to become like the golden ball in shape before they were absorbed by the golden ball. It's much faster to restore my magic power using this method in comparison to slowly using my own golden ball. [TL note: Golden ball refers to his gold dan in his upper dantian.]

..... Two days later.

Early in the morning I went to go find Teacher Di. "Teacher Di, my magic power has been nearly fully recovered. Can I go home now?"

He lifted his head up from the book he was reading and gave me a slight smile. "Foolish child, why so urgent? Are you trying to avoid this old man by leaving early?"

"No way, no way. I would hate to part with you. You are the best teacher I have ever met." These were words that came from my heart. It was precisely because of Teacher Di's guidance that I was able to improve this quickly. In just one year, I was able to become the second grade's representative.

Teacher Di's smile became even wider once he saw my anxious expression. "I'm just teasing you. Quickly go. Once you've packed up your things, you can go home. Be careful on the road. Is there anyone picking you up?" He only asked me this because he knew my home was very far.

"There is. But I don't know if he has arrived yet. He's my previous teacher from the elementary magic academy."

"Oh! If I have the opportunity I would really like to meet him and ask

what methods he used to enable you to have such a strong foundation.” (This is however out of the question, because currently Teacher Di doesn’t want others to know I’m his student.)

“No need, no need.” I immediately rejected Teacher Di. If I let him use Teacher Xiu’s methods to deal with me, how could I possibly live out the rest of my days? “Your education methods are superior to all other teachers, so you don’t need to compare notes.” Without delay, I gave him a lofty hat to wear.

After hearing my words, Teacher Di was extremely cheerful. “Really? I didn’t teach you in vain then.” From his appearance, I could tell that he was pleased with himself. “Oh, that’s right. I’ve got something to give you since you’re leaving now.”

“You don’t need to give me anything. They magic robe you gave me last time is already good enough.” Although the magic robe’s effect on the sealing effects of Absolute Disturbance wasn’t great, it still had a powerful effect on common attack spells.

“I’m not giving you a gift this time, it’s something you earned.” Saying this, he pulled out a precious amethyst card from his chest.

“What is this?” I curiously asked.

“This is an amethyst card containing diamond coins. There are very few people on the continent who are able to possess such a card. It can’t be used by anyone but you since I have already inputted your data into it. It can’t be altered in the future. Within it is the 100 diamond coins you earned by becoming the champion. Enough for you to spend. In the future when you want to use it, you only need to take it out and that will be enough. Its biggest benefit is that it can only be used by you, so you absolutely must not lose it. You can summon the amethyst card with summoning magic, so should ordinarily be keeping it within your body.”

It’s so pretty. After receiving it, I’ve become quite wealthy. Furthermore, it’s not a small fortune either! This is great!

“Teacher Di, I’ll be leaving then. Take care of yourself. I’ll be back after my vacation is over.” After saying this, I turned around and began ran

towards the dormitory. I just need to pack up my stuff then I can go home! Yep, yep yep.

“Pay attention to safety on the road, don’t let your magic decline while you’re at home.” From behind me came Teacher Di’s repeated warnings.

# Chapter 31: I Have Killed

I jogged back to the dormitory. All of my roommates were out, I suppose all of them went home. I quickly packed my things as I also wanted to return home.

After I finished packing away my things, I went to a neighboring room. Ma Ke was still there and had almost fully recovered from his injuries.

Seeing me come in, Ma Ke rose from the bed, “Boss, you came back. How’s your recovery fairing?”

“Pretty good, How about you? I’m just about to head home.”

Ma Ke extended his arm toward me, “No problems, I’ve just about recovered. Don’t visit me again, I’m just about to leave!”

“Then let us say our end of term goodbyes. I want to quickly go home, I’ve become very homesick.”

“Wait for me a bit, I still have to pack a bit. Lets leave together.”

Ma Ke packed a few more things and a moment later we head out of the dormitories together.

“Ma Ke, Did Hai Ri come visit?” After all, I didn’t fulfill my promise with myself, to challenge him once more.

“He visited. He asked about the condition of your injury and said that you were truly ferocious. I reckon even he may not be able to win against you. There will be many chances in the future. There is nothing to really regret. You gave a great show with the match.”

“Hehe. I’ll wait until the next term. There should be many opportunities to challenge Hai Ri then.”

At the academy’s entrance, when we were about to go our separate ways, “Take care of yourself.” I patted his shoulder. Ma Ke’s eyes were red.

“Boss, the days we spent together were truly happy. Take care of yourself too. My home is at the capital. I’ll see you next term.”

“I’ll see you then.” I turned around and ran as fast as I could. I was afraid that I would be reluctant to leave.

Not far a distance away, I heard a person call to me, “Zhang Gong!”

I turned my head around for a look, and immediately felt very moved, “Teacher Xiu, you actually came. I thought you weren’t going to pick me up!”

Teacher Xiu was still the same as ever, but there was a trace of emotion on his serious face. “How could I not come? Come on, We’re heading home.”

Together, Teacher Xiu and I, set foot on the path home.”

“Teacher Xiu, Have you seen my mother and father lately?”

“Before I left, I paid a visit to your house. They are doing great, but they really miss you. How are you doing at the academy?”

“Very good. Did I not place first in the entrance exams? I am at the top of the second year students at the academy!”

“Is that right? You are first out of all the second years?”

“Thats right. I also made a very good friend. His name is Ma Ke.” I unleashed an unceasing torrent of words about my time at the academy. We talked happily on the road. Only, I concealed the fact that I used to spell “Sharing Life” in order to save Xiao Jin. I didn’t want Teacher Xiu to worry. I also didn’t want let my family to know either. Teacher Xiu knew I became Teacher Di’s disciple. With great admiration, he continuously congratulated my great luck. He also repeatedly warned that I must study magic diligently under Teacher Di’s tutelage. He also said that Teacher Di was indeed one of the continent’s greatest mages. I didn’t know how lucky I was.

We took a short rest. When no people were around, we used teleportation magic to travel onward. Quickly, we traveled about two-thirds of the way through. It was when we reached an unknown forest that a small problem arose.

About a dozen men scuttled from the middle of the woods, barring our way. They all looked rather burly.

Teacher Xiu glanced at me and whispered, “Zhang Gong, I’m going to go and see what’s the matter. Wait for me here. When I’m done talking, we’ll go.”

“Gentlemen, Is there a problem?”

The burly leader twitched his mouth, “There’s no problem, it’s just that we have a shortage of money when we want to play around with some pretty girls. Seeing you like this, you ought to be mages. I advise you don’t resist or else, hehe, us big brothers won’t play nice. Obediently come and hand over your coin.”

“Moneyless Gentlemen, here, I have ten gold coins. Why don’t you take this out to go drink and let us pass?”

The burly leader grew angry, “Do you think we’re beggars? You think this is enough to let you pass? This won’t do. Hand over everything!” The ten men seemed ready throw themselves at us.

“Alright, alright. Then wait for me, I’ll go get it.” Teacher Xiu quickly walked to my side and whispered, “Zhang Gong, These bandits’ magic fluctuations aren’t strong. Let teacher see the fruits of your efforts.”

“What? You want me to fight? Teacher Xiu, I can’t. Why don’t you?” This is the first time I’ve come across this kind of situation, I’m really scared .

“Out of the question. Magic when used in real combat allows it to improve. I’ll be at your side protecting you. Fight fearlessly.” Teacher Xiu stopped smiling and raised his face.

Truly deserving of being called the devil teacher, I knew I’d be unable to escape. I could only brace myself and walk over. “Gentlemen, Look at us, we also don’t have any money. Could you let us off?”

“Enough rubbish.” Saying that was like slapping him, inciting him to come over. From reflex, I could feel a teleportation arriving from five meters away. I immediately cast several defense spells on myself.

"Mage! This child is actually a mage. Everybody come together!" The group of ten large men charged toward us.

What do I do? I've never experienced real combat before, I felt panicked. Forget it all. I'll just fight! I'll give them a strong spell and it'll be over. I began using instantaneous teleports to change my position, and then I chanted my most powerful attack spell. "Oh great light element, please allow me to borrow your formidable strength, let the infinite light of the earth shine." With me at its center, Brilliant Empire let out a blinding, overpowering brilliance.

"Wa, using such a powerful spell." From a short distance away, Teacher Xiu immediately teleported out of harms way.

Because there wasn't a protective barrier, Brilliant Empire was able to fully display itself. Anything within a two hundred meter radius were entirely enveloped by the dazzling rays of light. The ten large men within my powerful spell had already turned to ash. I only saw when the spell had hit them, they were entirely engulfed by it. They turned into tiny specks of ashes; Afterwards, you wouldn't be able to completely find them.

I blankly withdrew my magic power. At this moment, Teacher Xiu had already returned. "Zhang Gong, your magic is formidable. What was that spell you had just used? It gave me a fright. Why would you use such a strong spell to handle such small vermin? Using your strengthened light arrows would have been enough."

"I was really scared. I couldn't help but use Brilliant Empire. That was the most powerful spell I could cast. Teacher Xiu, where did they go?" I was completely unaware that I had already killed them.

"They... They turned to ash. Did you think this was the academy? Those men were all only advanced mages."

"What? I killed them?" I suddenly wore a blank stare.

"Let it pass. In any case they were only villains." Teacher Xiu consoled me. I killed but it doesn't matter. First of all, they were only bandits. Secondly, I was still a child. Lastly, the most important point, was that I

was an outstanding student at the intermediate royal magic academy. I was a pillar of the nation. I definitely had some privileges. Furthermore, how could anyone else know that I've already killed people? Hehe.

## Chapter 32: Five Years of Learning

The remainder of the journey was very dull. Gradually, I have also gotten over my dismay about killing people. Although I don't wish to kill people, it was for my own safety and I can't just wait and let myself be killed either. I resolved to defend and flee as much as possible in the future. Teacher Di said that everybody, that is all organisms, have a right to live. No one has the right to deprive others of their life as they wish. As long as one's own life is secured, that's enough. So I chose the path escaping. It truly is Teacher Di's teachings that affected me throughout my life.

In the end, I arrived at home. As soon as I entered the village, a familiar feeling came from the pavements. I have returned to my hometown.

I took a deep breath of the fragrance of my hometown's soil. A warm and cozy happy feeling overcame my body. Teacher Xiu accompanied me all the way to the gate of my house. Once again, I saw the familiar fence surrounding a familiar house.

"Mom, Mom! I'm home!" I shouted loudly.

"Foolish child, they should both be at work." Teacher Xiu reminded me. Ah, that's right! Right now it's still morning and they should be at working in the morning. I used teleportation to enter the house. Nothing had changed at all. My room was unusually clean. It's definitely because mom cleaned it often. I invited Teacher Xiu into the house.

"At last, I'm back." I really want to see mom and dad right now. "Teacher Xiu, wait here for now. I'm going to go look for them." After saying this, I quickly ran towards the village committee that mom works at.

Just as I reached the village committee's gate, I saw a familiar figure. "MOM--!" I threw myself at her.

Mom still hadn't turned around, so I was able to throw myself at her. "Zhang Gong, you're back." Mom had me in her embrace. "Quickly let mother take a look at you." While holding my face, mom attentively

examined me. "My Zhang Gong, you've grown up to be so vigorous." Mom's tears were flowing down her face.

Finally, I have reunited with mom. I couldn't help but feel a surge of emotions as I threw myself into mom's embrace and began crying loudly. "Mom, I really missed you!"

While hugging me, mom said: "I also really missed you too Zhang Gong."

The villagers also came by and only after a long time did I separate from mom. After seeing mom again, my attachment to her had grown deeper. I firmly clutched onto mom's sleeves, unwilling to loosen my grip even a bit for fear of being separated from her again.

The village chief walked over. "The talented student has come back on vacation. How were your studies in the capital?"

"Uncle village chief. It was quite good. How is Ao De? Where did he go?"

"That youngster doesn't have future prospects like you but he's also on vacation. So he went out to play."

The villagers were extremely enthusiastic while ceaselessly asking me questions. Ordinarily I would really loathe these kinds of things, but today I wasn't fed up with it at all. Out of goodwill, the village chief let mom off so we could go home together.

After returning home, we found that dad was already home. It seems like someone notified home. He was currently chatting with Teacher Xiu. Another surge of affection came once I saw dad.

Mom and dad continuously questioned me on my academy life. I took out 80 diamond coins granted by the magic union and gave it to them. (I left 20 for myself. Hehe.) Mom and dad were extremely surprised, but they knew I acquired it with my own efforts so they were very happy. I think that with this money, they won't have to work so hard to let me attend the academy.

Mom and dad have aged a bit in comparison to before I left. I know that

this was all for me. Because of me they had to pay so much. I sincerely wish for them to not have to work so hard. With these feelings, I told them that my strength is already not inferior to that of a great mage's. So in the future, I won't need to rely on the for my tuition fee. I will be able to rely on my own efforts.

Just like this, I began my vacation. Apart from accompanying mom and dad, I spent my days playing with Ao De and other village children. However, the days passed by very quickly and the vacation ended. I had to return to the capital and continue my studies. Although I didn't want to leave everyone, but in order to let them live a better life as well as to increase my strength so I can protect them, I must continue improving myself.

Teacher Xiu didn't accompany me this time since I already knew the road. With tearful eyes, I waved goodbye to my family and set foot on the road back towards the academy.

My five years in the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy were the most crucial five years of my life. (It was originally supposed to be four years but Teacher Di wanted me to have a stronger foundation so I spent a second year in the second grade). During these five years I laid a deep foundation for my magic. Although there was still a small gap, in the fifth grade my magic level had nearly reached Teacher Di's. However, Teacher Di told me that I had become a well-known figure even among the magisters. My gold ball of magic power was already approaching the state of being completely transparent. Even more important were the many magic techniques I created which even amazed even Teacher Di. In the fifth grade, there wasn't anyone who could compete with me for the position of the grade representative. The gap between me and Ma Ke also gradually widened to the point that I am now the academy's top expert.

Something else worth mentioning was that Xiao Jin's growth rate was extraordinarily fast. He was already at the later stages of his growth period so he already had the basic form of a dragon. His body length exceeded 15 meters and his strength surpassed all the other magical beasts that Teacher Di knew of. Especially his physical attack power, it

was exceptionally strong and could easily break through intermediate class defence magic. If me and Xiao Jin fought, there was no certainty that I would be able to beat him. Maybe it's because we shared our lives, but any magic that I could use, Xiao Jin could also use. Any dragon magic that he could use, I could use too. This caused my strength to have a qualitative leap. Teacher Di said that if Xiao Jin and I worked together, we would be a match for a magister.

I'm already 16 years old. Every year I went home once, and when mom and dad saw how much I had grown, they were very happy. Using the money I won every year from the graduation competition, I let mom and dad live a more prosperous life.

.....

"Zhang Gong, you're going to be graduating soon. What plans do you have?" Teacher Di called me to his office today.

"sigh What kind of plans could I have? I'm planning on going to advanced magic academy." With my strength as a grade representative, I don't need to take the entrance exams and can be recommended directly into the Royal Advanced Magic Academy.

"No. I don't wish for you to do this." Teacher Di muttered to himself.

"What? What did you say? You won't let me attend the advanced magic academy?" I asked in surprise.

"Correct. Because if you follow the same path I did, do you know what would happen? Although you're very strong right now, you forever won't be able to surpass me." Teacher Di's profound words shocked me.

## Chapter 33: Not Returning To School

“Why?” I immediately asked because I knew that I was the youngest to become a magic scholar. Why was it that I could not surpass Teacher Di? I had deeply believed in the past that I held extraordinary talent, enough to certainly become a Legendary Grand Magister like that of yore. Teacher Di’s words had astonished me, enough to shatter my self confidence.

“Don’t worry. Listen to me explain,” Teacher Di paused for a moment, “You know how old I am this year?”

“About 80?”

“This year I’m 83. Do you know how old the vice principal is?”

“I don’t know. I’d think he’d be a bit younger than you!”

“This year he is 62. Before you came, he was the youngest to become a magic scholar. At the age of 20, he had already graduated from the Royal Advanced Magic Academy. At the age of 30 he had become a magister. Do you know why he hadn’t made an inch of progress with these remaining 30 years?”

I shook my head.

“Although they say there have been very few magisters, thousands of years ago, several hundred magisters existed. But there wasn’t even a single Grand Magister. After achieving the level of a magister, you will enter a bottleneck. You could only increase your magic skills and your magic foundation, incapable of increasing your magic power. At present, of the ten magisters on the continent there is no difference in the amount of magical power. We are only ranked by our fame and magic skill.”

“Is the bottleneck that difficult to break through? Then how do I have a chance?” I said a bit discouraged.

“Until now, there hadn’t been any great methods. Long ago, there had be many magisters experimenting but only three who bore fruit. One had given up. Another went insane. The last had injured his body with magic

power and died.”

“Ah, it’s that hard?” I thought about giving up. After all, I’ve already made it this far. I’ll definitely become a magister, not a bad choice at all.

“This is why I didn’t want you to walk along my beaten path and attend the Royal Advanced Magic Academy. I know that if you attempt to improve your own magic power there, your final conclusion would be to give up. These years that we spent learning magic together, I’ve grown to understand your temperament.”

I scratched my head with an embarrassed chuckle.

“I don’t think that you must become a Grand Magister at any cost, but I do want you to try a new, different method. At the very least there is hope you will become a Grand Magister without using dangerous means.”

“Yes, there is hope. There is a final, crucial reason why magisters are incapable of improving, that is because their bodies are incapable to bearing that magic power. Furthermore, it is also because we are unable to genuinely understand the magic elements. Right now, your greatest advantage is your ability to become one with the magic elements. This is also the reason you are capable of creating many new spells.”

“Then what must I do? I’ll listen to you.”

Rotating around such a large circle, at last the final conclusion is said.

“It is actually quite simple. You will still attend the Royal Advanced Magic Academy. Just that I wish for you to attend it at a later time. I want you to travel for a few years and learn from that experience, and afterwards, return and continue advancing your studies.

“Travel and learn from experience?” This simple? I thought it would be something hard. But it is actually just to travel and have fun. “Alright, I also wanted to try traveling.”

“Don’t think it’ll be too easy. I do want you to travel and learn from your experiences but also want you to complete a few assignments. On your own terms, through your experiences of travel, you must raise your magic power to that of a magister. This is a truly difficult process. Therefore,

you must not believe that you can just laze around while traveling. Secondly, you must temper your body [and get ripped] and strengthen your physical capabilities. To the point that you may even learn to use some simple Dou Qi.

I interrupted Teacher Di, “A warrior’s Dou Qi? It is possible to use both Dou Qi and magic at the same time?”

“In theory, it is possible. But if you learn both, the final result will be that you will master neither. I don’t want you to practice Dou Qi to the point of ferociousness, only to the point where you have a strengthened, healthy body to use. You will still primarily practice magic.”

“Oh, so it’s like that.”

“There are many advantages to learn from experience, for example to increase your battle experience, to increase your understanding of magic through real combat. This is very significant. However, to learn from experience is also very dangerous. I will try to keep you away from these dangers as much as possible. While you are traveling and learning, I will still teach, giving you difficult assignments, such as looking for divine artifacts of the legends, a weapon that had once been used by the God of Creation-Holy Sword.

[TL Note: This sword is defined as 剑 Jian, which is the double edged variant of Chinese swords.]

“Holy Sword? It truly exists?”

“Yes, in addition I also know its approximate location. As for whether or not you can obtain it will depend on your luck. It should prove to be of great assistance to you. Within the Holy Sword contains a remnant of the God of Creation’s holy power. This is crucial to whether or not you can become a Grand Magister. That is why you must spare no effort looking for it.

There is such a great thing? Not bad, I must diligently look for it. “Be at ease, I can do it.”

“Right now, it isn’t far away from your graduation. In these coming days

you must make a great effort with great diligence. Strive to improve a bit. This way you will be safer while traveling. After about a month, I can accompany you to your home and explain the situation to your parents. Afterwards, you can begin to travel and learn. My initial plan is to give you two years worth of time. After those two years, regardless of whether you completed your assignment, you must return.”

I nodded my head. It seems I won’t be able to have fun, this assignment is very important, I can’t fail to live up to Teacher Di’s expectations. I must try hard, I don’t want to become famous, but I wanted to become strong.

Leaving Teacher Di’s office, I immediately went back to the dormitory looking for Ma Ke. Currently he is my only close friend. (Because we had both chose to repeat a year. Apart from Green Hair, there was no one else that hadn’t advanced to Advanced Magic Academy. From the time I had placed first at the end of term competition, he suffered my influence. No longer was he annoying like before. As a result, he had become our friend. However, we didn’t stop calling him Green Hair. I should also mention that we had also befriended Hai Ri’s three siblings. Also, last year Hai Shui passed the entrance exam to the Royal Advanced Magic Academy.)

Currently, Ma Ke had almost reached the level of a Magic Scholar. The reason why I immediately went to go look for him was because I wanted him to travel with me and also learn from experience. With his assistance, achieving the goal ought to be much easier. He had already called me “Boss” for many years, there is no way that he’ll decline my request. I walked toward his dormitory, brimming with confidence.

# Volume 3

## Chapter 1: Brotherly Feelings

At the moment, Ma Ke was reading a book in his dorm. “Boss, why was Teacher Di looking for you?”

“He doesn’t want me to enter the Royal Advanced Magic Academy.”

At the time, Ma Ke and I were facing each other when I gave him the big surprise. “Boss, your magic is excellent , not attending would be a waste. Why would Teacher Di think this way?”

“You don’t need to worry. It’s like this.” I repeated the explanation Teacher Di told me in his office. “How about it? Come with me to and get some experience. Us two brothers, even if we don’t increase our magic power we will still increase our knowledge”

Ma Ke didn’t agree happily like I thought he would. After muttering to himself for a bit he spoke: “Boss, let me think on it a bit. I want to go home a discuss with my family first and I’ll tell you my decision tomorrow. Is that fine?”

I hit him with my fist. “You brat, this isn’t like you at all. I don’t remember you being so straightforward. Fine then. I won’t force you. We’ll talk again tomorrow.”

Ma Ke’s answer made me a bit angry, so without saying anything else, I went to practice magic by myself.

I’m already fully grown, from my appearance alone you would think that I’m an adult. However, my face still has a juvenile look I haven’t outgrown yet. The following is the personal data of me and Ma Ke: (The following data regarding the protagonist’s body is all according to what the author set for them at this age.)

\*

Name: Zhang Gong Wei

Height: 181cm

Weight: 70kg

Major Magic: Light element

Minor Magic: Spatial element

Magical Beast: Xiao Jin (Five Clawed Golden Dragon)

Overall Magic Strength: Magic Scholar (Hasn't been authenticated by the Mage Union)

Magic Control: S

(Grades are divided into S, A, B, C, D, E, F)

Magic Power: A

Magic Perception: SS

Magic Defense: A

Magic Attack: A

Speed: A (Unable to fly)

Physical Attacks: F

Physical Defense: F

Stamina: D

\*

Name: Ma Ke Sai

Height: 180cm

Weight: 74kg

Major Magic: Fire element

Minor Magic: Wind element

Magical Beast: Fire Lion (I don't know where this brat obtained a growth type Fire Lion. It has already reached the 8th rank.)

Overall Magic Strength: Magic Scholar (Hasn't been authenticated by the Mage Union)

Magic Control: S

Magic Power: B

Magic Perception: A

Magic Defense: A

Magic Attack: A

Speed: A (Able to fly)

Physical Attacks: F

Physical Defense: F

Stamina: E

\*

Due to the fact that Ma Ke and I are big eaters, our bodies grew very quickly. Especially our height which has already surpassed most adults. With our refined appearances, we have become very popular with the female students. However, I am not very interested in these kind of matters. In addition, I find girls very annoying so there hasn't been any real developments with anyone. On the other hand, Ma Ke was all over Hai Yue, and he hadn't bothered to acknowledge any other girls. Yet the funny thing was although me and Hai Yue have become friends, she still refuses to acknowledge Ma Ke. It seems he has been greatly influenced by his nickname, the Red Haired Rice Cake.

The next day, I could not wait much longer and I went to go find Ma Ke, but he found me first. Ma Ke was listless like a frosted eggplant. Seeing him like this, I immediately had an ominous premonition. As expected, Ma Ke rejected me without even facing me.

"Boss..... I'm sorry. I can't accompany you on your journey." Ma Ke said in a low voice.

I stood up straight away. "Why? Why can't you come? Don't tell me... You don't want to go adventuring with me? Aren't we good brothers?"

"Yes." Ma Ke resolutely replied. "Boss, I have a secret trouble that I can't tell you. I'm sorry. I really can't go with you."

"What kind of secret trouble can't you tell me? We can settle it together." I was unwilling to give up. After all, I don't want to separate with someone who's been my brother for so many years."

"I truly can't tell you. I can only tell you this, it's a problem with my family. My family won't let me go."

In all these years we have been at the academy together, not once have I been to Ma Ke's home. I only know that his family is very wealthy. After hearing this, I gradually calmed down. After all, I can't force others to do what they don't want to.

We faced each other in silence for a long time but I broke the silence. I

helplessly said, “Forget about it. Since your family refuses to let you go, then it’s fine. Study diligently when you go to the Royal Advanced Magic Academy. I’ll be back in two years anyways.” At that moment, I felt very helpless and lonely. It seems that I will have to face everything by myself in the future. This may have been fate’s plan. I must walk down my path by myself.

Ma Ke suddenly threw himself onto me and tightly hugged me. “Boss....” While he was breaking down in tears, I tolerantly held him by the shoulders as my own tears uncontrollably flowed too.

Our emotions gradually settled down and I gently separated from him. “Although we’ll be separated temporarily, we will still be brothers for life.”

“Of course. Brothers for life.” Pausing for a moment, Ma Ke continued: “Boss did you know I really want to go with you on the journey, but I have no control over my destiny. I must listen to my family and do as they arrange. Although I’m not the eldest son, I still have responsibilities and obligations to my family. We’re a really big clan so I must do my best for my clan.”

“Okay then. No need to say it again. I understand. You don’t need to explain to me since we’re brothers. Let all of our words be said.”

The sincere friendship between me and Ma Ke was practically permeating throughout the room. Neither of us wanted to speak.

I already wanted to go tell Teacher Di that I no longer wished to go on a journey. But then I thought of Teacher Di’s ash gray hair and his earnest expectations for me. I couldn’t. I can still see Ma Ke again, but what about Teacher Di? Does he still have the vitality to fulfill his dreams and cultivate another person who has the possibility of becoming a Grand Magister? (Note: After my third year, Teacher Xiu didn’t come visit me anymore. According to him, he wanted to go out and travel.)

During the final month, me and Ma Ke were practically inseparable. Both of us highly treasured these final period of time we had together. Everyday we would stay in the same dorm, practice magic and eat

together. But the day of departure finally came.

(TL Note: That bromance though.)

With my strength, I didn't even need to participate in the graduation exam and just smoothly attained my authentication as a Great Mage from the Mage's Union. (Teacher Di didn't want me to reveal my strength too early. A 16 year old Magic Scholar would shock the whole world. But like this, many people would still drop their jaws in shock.)

## Chapter 2: Departure from the Academy

I will have to leave the school that I lived in and learned in, my second home. I truly hate to part with this place. I looked fondly at every shrub and tree at the academy. Why did time pass by so fast, making me come and go in a flurry?

At my side, Teacher Di looked at my reluctance to leave, and with a soft sigh said, "If you must to leave, you have to leave. You can always return. When you come back, I am sure that you will bring much glory to this academy, and also to me. You are already a grown boy, don't act like a small child. Go."

We walked slowly toward the academy's gate. I turned my head around, looking at the large words engraved in solid granite, "Royal Intermediate Magic Academy". My eyes grew moist once more.

"Boss, Wait! I've come to send you off." Ma Ke ran over, panting. Originally I didn't tell him that I was leaving today because I didn't want to experience such a depressing occasion.

"Why didn't you tell me you were leaving? I'm your only brother!" Ma Ke's face wore an expression indistinguishable from laughing or crying. "This is for you. You must quickly return. I'll wait for you at the Advanced Magic Academy. We are still going study together." Ma Ke took out a dagger from his bosom. It had a gorgeous exterior appearance, the dagger's sheath was embedded with all kinds of gems. I went over to receive it. I didn't observe it carefully. After all, my heart was completely filled with feelings of separation, I couldn't be concerned with anything else. Aside me, Teacher Di's eyes flashed with a peculiar vigor.

I can't stop now, else it will be even harder to leave. I grit my teeth and turned around and set foot on the journey home with Teacher Di. With great difficulty, I resisted the urge to look back. But I could not hold my tears back, they flowed freely.

"Don't miss Ma Ke too much. Do you want to go up to the sky and have a look?"

Teacher Di's words diverted my attention, "The sky? How would I go up to the sky?"

"Don't tell me you forgot? My minor is wind, we can fly." Teacher Di cast a wind soaring enchantment on himself and slowly floated off the ground.

"This is my first time seeing you fly. So then how do I fly?" I can't possibly use wind magic.

"I'll carry you. Hold onto my waist."

Like that, Teacher Di and I ascended to the skies. It felt not bad at all. The forests and villages underneath looked just like ants. A light breeze brushed against my face. It truly felt like we were immortals. I enviously said, "When will I be able to fly?"

"It's not impossible. Even if you can't use wind magic, later on you will have opportunities to study some top class Dou Qi with similar effects. After that you will definitely be able to fly. "

"You can use Dou Qi to fly?" I asked with doubt.

"That's right. In addition, flying with Dou Qi is much faster than flying with magic. It's just that it cannot be sustained nearly as long.

Teacher Di's words arose a yearning to learn Dou Qi, being able to fly is truly good. In the future when I have an opportunity, I must diligently learn Dou Qi. So long as I can use it to fly, that'll be enough.

About an hour of flying in the sky, I saw Teacher Di's complexion turn a bit pale. After all, flying for such a long period of time would consume a great amount of magic energy. In addition he had also carried a person. Even though Teacher Di was a magister, the burden was quite large.

"Teacher Di, lets go down and let you rest." I said with concern.

"Alright, Ah... I'm already old, my body feels like dying. It seems I can no longer bear the burden of using magic for a long period of time."

We landed on a small hillside and rested a while. Then we continued on our journey.

By flying, we finally made it to my hometown. Currently, I am the pride of the village. When everyone finds out that I have the means to become a Grand Magister, the endless amount of praise and flattering would send me to the sky. When Father and Mother saw me come back, they were so happy, they didn't know what to say. I don't dare tell anyone that I returned with one of the only ten magisters on the continent, otherwise the pot would surely explode.

After we rested for a day, Teacher Di talked to my mother and father about letting me learn from traveling. They were both silent. In their minds, the Royal Advanced Magic Academy was the most orthodox and proven path. In addition they were also concerned for my safety. However, they revered Teacher Di and couldn't say anything.

How could the experienced Teacher Di not see this? He patiently explained to them the purpose of allowing me to learn from my travels and his expectations of me, as well as the various means he will use to ensure my safety. In the end, Father and Mother were satisfied and allowed me to travel.

At night, Teacher Di and I took a walk outside the village. I was immersed in the enchanting scenery of the night. Teacher Di had suddenly stopped and solemnly said to me, "Zhang Gong, this traveling assignment is truly formidable. For your safety, I will gift you with many, different things." He took out three magic scrolls from his bosom.

"The ability of these three magic scrolls are the same. In short, they are escape scrolls. They can immediately move you 50 kilometers away. Hold onto them well."

Taking the magic scrolls I said, "Thank you, Teacher."

In addition, I asked the Continent's number one magister to set up a magic array at the academy. When you encounter a problem you are unable to solve during your assignment, you can use this magic array to return to the academy. The drawing and activation method are written in this booklet. You should memorize it as quickly as possible, and become able to achieve a teleportation accuracy of at least 90% or greater." Done

talking, Teacher Di handed me a small, frail booklet.

After I took the booklet, Teacher Di also said, “Pay attention. When you use this magic array, your magic power must be in top condition, otherwise a deviation will occur.

“I understand, I will practice it well.”

Also, I’ve deposited a thousand diamond coins into your amethyst card, it should be enough for you to use. Don’t be too stingy. For your assignment, the divine artifact’s approximate location is in a Dalu Kingdom’s province within a valley. You will go there to look for it. That’s it. That is all I wanted to tell you.”

I attentively memorized what Teacher Di said. Suddenly he remembered to say something else, “That’s right! Last time before you departed, Ma Ke gave you a dagger. It isn’t likely to be an ordinary dagger. Although it isn’t comparable with a divine artifact it does contain some power. It can penetrate magic and Dou Qi defences. Use it with caution.”

## Chapter 3: Being Away from Home

The dazzling sunshine woke me from my sleep, reminding me of the loathsome sun from my childhood. It truly does feel like I have grown up. After washing my face, I went outside and took a deep breath . When the light elements within me sensed the fresh air, they grew excited, thus giving me much vigor. Today is the day I set off. I'll be separated from the most familiar places of my life.

"Zhang Gong, it's time to eat breakfast." Mom's voice carried over from the kitchen.

"Coming!" At this moment, I truly wish to cherish the short amount of time I have left with my family before my departure. I hurriedly ran downstairs. The whole family was there sitting in a circle around the dining table.

"Ah. Eat some more Zhang Gong. You won't be able to eat mom's cooking for a long time." Mother benevolently added more and more food onto my bowl.

"You should eat too mom. You can be at ease, I will definitely return home safe and sound."

"After seeing you two like this, I don't know if letting Zhang Gong go on a journey is a good choice anymore." Teacher Di jokingly said after seeing a meal full of deep affection.

At last, the time of departure has come.

"Pay attention to your safety on the journey." Mom said with red eyes.

"Don't disappoint me." Dad said with trembling hands.

"Don't forget about the escape scrolls I gave you." Said Teacher Di.

Although I was reluctant to part, I bid farewell to them and set foot on my journey of learning.

As I walked away from the village, I repeatedly turned back to take a look. I've left home already. The melancholy I'm feeling within my heart is impossible to resolve. According to Teacher Di's plan, I first have to go

to the Xiuda kingdom to find his good friend. The Dean of Xiuda's Knight Academy, Teacher Li Ke Wen. I'll cultivate there for a bit before continuing my mission.

Without any feelings of anxiousness, I slowly walked on upon the road while admiring my surroundings beautiful scenery. My homeland is actually so beautiful. Ahead of me there was some steam drizzling down. I opened up the map Teacher Di gave me and inspected it. My walking speed truly isn't that slow. I have already reached Serene Dream Lake. After crossing another province, I'll be at the Xiuda kingdom's borders. In the past, I heard Teacher Di say that this area's scenery was exceptionally beautiful. I want to hurry up and go take a look. I increased my pace and advanced towards Serene Dream lake.

Ah! The lake sure is big. I can't even see the shore on the other side. I can even see the fish in the clear dark blue lake water. Truly beautiful. I crouched down beside the lake and splashed my face with the clear lake water. It felt so cold. So comfortable. Right now it was the start of summer so soaking in the ice-cold lake water is indeed extremely comfortable.

I took off my shoes and began walking in the water. Enjoying this scenic lake and mountain gave me a wonderful feeling. Suddenly, there was a rustle behind me. I turned my head to take a look. I saw seven or eight people in black running in my direction. It looks like their figures are awfully vigorous. It seems that they practice martial skills. From their slender figures, I can make out that they're all women.

As they progressed, I counted how many there was. There was nine people. Today there was such a great heat yet they're wearing cloaks that cover up their whole body. It looks like the tallest one is their boss while all the other one's seemed like stars holding up the moon. I don't know how they grew up, but why do they all need to wear cloaks that cover up their whole body? I can't help but stare at them.

I don't know if it was my stare that was too glaring, but one of them noticed me. "Hey, that brat over there. What are you looking at! Hurry up and get lost. We want to rest over here. If you keep looking we'll scoop

out your eyes.”

Wow! They’re so violent. She truly is a loathsome woman. It goes without saying that the lady wants to rest and being the gentleman that I am, I was going to go to the side. However, after hearing her words I’m not going anymore. I refuse to acknowledge her. I raised my head to her and hummed a tune from my hometown. “Sometimes the hurriedly worn socks will be inside-out, sometimes I really want to wash dishes tomorrow since I’m too muddle-headed and just a bit lazy. Don’t bother me and let me be a spoiled child sometimes~” This song was something dad was often singing called “Great Woman”. Maybe he sang it because he was afraid of mom. After listening to it for so long, naturally I learned it.

Seeing that I didn’t react, the one who shouted angrily at me before began walking towards me while spitting anger. Apparently she wants to be rude to me. Hmph! Who’s afraid of who here?

The leader of the young women began speaking. “Ling Zi, don’t cause trouble. Have you already forgotten what my dad told you to do when going out?” What a sweet-sounding voice. Even a skylark’s chirping would be eclipsed by her splendor. In comparison to my own voice, it’s so much more compelling. If she sang a song, I wonder what it would be like. I began letting my imagination run wild.

That girl called Ling Zi ferociously groaned before saying: “I’ll forgive you this time. Hurry up and get lost!”

I don’t know if it’s because of her resentful words or if I just wanted to listen to their leader’s beautiful voice some more, I hid my disdain beneath my contempt and provoked her. “Is this place part of your property? It’s so amazing. Even if you try to drag me, the young gentleman that is I, won’t leave.”

Sure enough, my desire was achieved. That girl’s leader spoke again. “Ling Zi, go teach him a lesson. But don’t kill him.”

So pleasant to hear, it truly is pleasant to hear. Why won’t she speak a few more sentences? While I was being infatuated with her, something troublesome came. Maybe that girl called Ling Zi already thought I

wasn't pleasing to the eye, but when she heard her master's command, she immediately fluttered over. She took out a jeweled sword from her waist and swung, just barely missing my head.

A cold wind attacked me, causing me to struggle with shivers. I said: "Aiya! Resorting to killing already?" With a single teleport, I moved 10 meters away. Dangerous, simply too dangerous. A few locks of my hair seems to have been cut. What a fast sword! "You're actually coming at me!"

"So you're actually a mage. No wonder you're so shameless." I was currently wearing clothes that commoners wear. so she only knew I was a mage after seeing me use magic.

Wa! Are all mages shameless? I gloomily said within my heart. It doesn't matter if you insult me, but my teacher, friends and my parents are all mages! For their sake, I will teach you a lesson. "Oh light elements, my friend, congregate into sharp arrows and annihilate the enemies before me!" The strengthened light arrows were fired from my hands.

She appeared to have a very hateful appearance after seeing me fire off some light arrows. The sword in her hands began emitting a week silver colored light and in a moment, she cut down my light arrow. Following that, she immediately rushed towards me. After all, it is only natural that a warrior would try to engage a mage in close quarters combat.

Wa! That's Heaven Dou Qi. I've heard of it before, but this time I'm actually seeing it! It seems that I'll have to use some of my actual skill. "Oh light elements, my friend, transform into Holy Light." Brilliant rays of white light rushed forth from my body, enveloping everything in my surroundings. It formed a defensive screen. This is the advanced class defensive light magic: Holy Light. When she clashed with my Holy Light, it looked as if she was suffering in pain. She retreated with lightning speed. From head to toe, she was trembling.

"You. You're a light mage."

## Chapter 4: First encounter with Magic Race

Not yet finished talking, she fell down.

That isn't possible. My "Holy Light" is a defense type spell, it doesn't contain any offensive qualities. How did it become like this? While I was completely confused, the young woman in charge took out her hand.

She murmured many incantation verses. On her hand appeared a dark violet sphere. With a wave of her hand, she did not attack me but rather aimed at the girl named Ling Zi. Ling Zi seemed to feel much better. She no longer trembled and started to breath deep breathes.

What kind of magic is this? I've never seen it before. "Young woman, what magic did you use? I've never seen it before." I curiously asked.

The sound of the young woman's beautiful voice came, "Don't let him run. Kill him."

"Stop. I only said a few words yet all of you want to kill me. You're all too fierce." By the time I finished speaking, they had already surrounded me. I continuously strengthened my defensive enchantments, waiting to see how they will handle me.

Their leader still hadn't acted, it was only that the eight had surrounded me under her command. They had started to form a circle, I believe they are using a martial skill. However, I discovered they actually haven't moved. Not good. They started chanting an incantation.

A thick, black fog came out from their bodies and completely enveloped me. I protected my body with Holy Light and when the black fog touched it, it made a fizzling sound. It seemed to be some sort of corroding acid. I immediately felt an large increase in pressure. It was truly formidable but Holy Light continued to resist it.

"Oh Great Light Elements, I request you to allow me to borrow your formidable power. Allow the limitless light of the earth to shine!" The current Brilliant Empire was unlike before, I could fully control the spell's strength and position. So naturally, I surrounded them using an area release spell. Following my chant, I slowly floated off the ground,

surrounded in blinding white light. I lifted my head and the gold dan within my upper Dantian enveloped my body with a third of my magic power. The radiance surrounding me shrunk back for a moment and then instantly burst forth. The white rays of light rapidly engulfed the black fog, counter attacking the surrounding eight women. I held back, not using my full strength. I didn't want to kill. I still had a lingering fear when I remembered the scene when I had first killed.

In face of the eight women's critical situation, their leader rapidly cast a ring of purple energy, wrapping around them and protecting them from my Brilliant Empire's attack. Their defensive spell was obviously hurried. Although they managed to react against my attack, they were still injured to an extent.

The eight women's cloaks were all destroyed by the threads of light element, exposing their form fitting magic armor [their sexy lingerie] . A few cracks had appeared on their armor. Ah, what beautiful girls. Not only were their appearances beautiful but even their figures had no flaws. Even I, who held little interest in women, had a quickened heartbeat.

But when I lifted my head, I was astonished. It was impossible words to describe the beautiful scene before me. This was beauty unlike that of Serene Dream Lake. To compare the two would be like comparing a glimmering ember and the luminous moon.

Their leader wasn't in the same, sorry condition as her eight subordinates. But the cloak that concealed her face had fallen off, revealing her indescribably beautiful appearance. It was that beautiful scene that stunned me.

So beautiful, so very beautiful. Out of all the beautiful women I've met, they are incapable of being compared with her. She by no means held a vulgar beauty but a delicate and graceful one. If all the woman of the world were to be compared, she alone would stand above the rest. I, who had never wavered before, started salivating.

The beautiful woman saw me act like a lecherous pervert and noticed her own cloak had fallen off, quickly covering herself. "Teacher, quickly,

help me kill this pervert!"

An eerie voice arrived, "Who dares to vex my little princess?" A chilly wind blew, the ice cold voice removed "passion" from my heart, not even a sliver remained.

In the wake of the terrifying voice, a black smoke flashed. Then at the beautiful girl's side appeared a completely bound bamboo pole. To say he was a bamboo pole would wouldn't be a slightest bit an exaggeration. Although I couldn't clearly see his stature, it would appear that out of his entire body, only the palm of his hand could be considered wide.

"Teacher, it is him. He already knows our secret and have seen our appearances. Quickly, help me kill him." This beautiful woman is truly not capable of love. How could such a sweet voice say such vicious words, so readily willing to kill?

"Beautiful woman, you are very vicious. However, I like that. How about we become friends?" I frivoulously tried to stopped her.

[TL Note: Who do you think you are? Ma Ke?]

Without waiting for her to speak, the bamboo pole had float over. Approaching me, he released a formidable, imposing pressure, rendering me unable to breathe. A master! I went on guard. A true master. Aside from Teacher Di or Teacher Long, I haven't encountered anyone else capable of making me feel this pressure.

I immediately became wary, covering my body with light element and defensive enchantments.

That shady, ominous voice emerged once more, "So it turns out to be a light magic boy. Aren't those who learn light magic few in number?"

"Who said very few? How would you know, bamboo pole? Right now, light magic is very popular throughout the continent and I am the worst one!" Humph, I must confront and mislead him. But I hadn't expect that these precise words had allowed humanity to avoid a calamity.

"What did you say, is this true? The continent's people use light magic? The intelligence I received as not as such." He is truly frank and

outspoken, unable to differ lies from truth.

I deliberately put on a serious face and said with exceptional earnest, “Of course it is true, do I have reason to lie to you?” Of course I do, you can’t tell lies from truth, even with your life on the line, hehe. Within my mind I sinisterly laughed.

“Teacher, don’t listen to his nonsense. Kill him first, you cannot let him reveal our secret.” The beautiful woman yelled from the side. This beautiful woman is really out to get I, her daddy. There isn’t a single good thing about beautiful women. In the future, I’d better not take a beautiful woman for a wife.

“Fine. I’ll first settle this, and then you’ll go out and verify.” The bamboo pole began chanting an incantation, “Mighty god of darkness, your servant humbly requests you, become an insatiable devourer. For this, I willingly offer my soul.”

Though I was ignorant, I could feel that his incantation used dark magic. I loudly yelled in surprise, “Magic race!”

A black shadow shadow emerged from behind the Bamboo Pole and came flying at me. I immediately cast Brilliant Empire trying to meet his attack. But something unexpected happened. The black shadow did not engage with Brilliant Empire but rather turned into a large cover, gathering Brilliant Empire’s pillar of light and trapping it within. I lost control over my spell, and soon the light element within the black cover gradually faded away.

## Chapter 5: Successful Escape

So powerful! Darkness magic is actually so powerful! They're of the magic race, so they have a hatred for humanity carved in their bones and engraved in their hearts. How could they possibly spare me? In the first place, I have never encountered them before so I didn't know how to deal with darkness magic. This won't do, I need to run away. Safety is the most important after all. I can think of a method to deal with them in the future. I took advantage of the fact that the darkness magic was still covering up my Brilliant Empire to quickly use a short range teleportation to leave the site. I picked a direction and did my best to flee.

In fact, I didn't need to be so anxious about escaping. They didn't chase me at all. Even though that bamboo pole counteracted my Brilliant Empire, it still consumed a lot of power. Darkness magic and light magic are mutually restrictive after all. In the first place, he didn't have any advantages at all.

After counteracting the Brilliant Empire's energy, the bamboo pole took a deep breath. "That light magic was very powerful but he also knows spatial magic. It seems that it will be impossible to chase him. He's so young yet he has so much strength. Ah. Princess, it seems that you still can't compare with him."

"Teacher, how are you? Don't tell me.... Even you can't deal with him? Is he actually that powerful?" The beautiful lady quickly went over to assist the bamboo pole. She had said that since she was unconvinced.

"Ah, Princess. If what that youngster said just now is true, then our magic race is in danger." Sure enough, they are of the magic race. "Their light magic is something we haven't faced for a long time. It's power is extraordinarily strong. It was clear that he hadn't used all of his strength yet. Although he can't be considered my match at the moment, in a few years he will surely surpass me. He also know that the magic race has invaded humanity so he will certainly take appropriate measures. It seems that we will have to temporarily stop our invasion of humanity. We will have to make clear the strength of humanity first before we can

continue with our plans.”

“Okay. I will listen to you. Then are we still going to the kingdom of Aixia?”

“We’re still going. However, all of you should go ahead and find a place to set up first. I must return to our country and report the situation to His Majesty first. I’ll ask His Majesty whether or not we will alter our plans.”

“Good. Then we will immediately set off.” The beautiful lady turned towards the eight maids and said. “How are your conditions? Quickly change into good clothes. We’re setting off now. Once we’ve arrived at the city walls, we’ll look for a place to rest and heal.”

Back to me. After running for who knows how long, I was gasping for breath. Ah. I’m so tired. I turned my head around as I ran and saw that there wasn’t anyone chasing after me. There shouldn’t be any problems if I stop running then. I found a shady tree and sat down before wiping away the sweat on my forehead. What did those magic race people come here to do? What kind of bad luck do I have to let me run into them. My luck is really bad today. Right after setting off on my journey I have already met such a powerful enemy. It’s a good thing I can run away quickly. I still felt a lingering fear when recalling the black cover the bamboo pole used on me.

However, the leader of those girls was simply too beautiful. Does the magic race have many beautiful women? I originally thought those two elusive sisters were already very beautiful women, but this magic race women is even more beautiful! I can’t help but shake my head. Although my heart has never raced for any women before, this time I’m a bit tempted. But she’s a bit too fierce. When she saw me, she didn’t just want to beat me, she also wanted to kill me. If I married her in the future, then wouldn’t my life be awfully miserable? A few passionate words and she’ll give me her blade. It’s already over. It seems that all beautiful women are fierce. In the future, it’ll be fine if I just find an ordinary looking girl to be my wife. It’s enough to just look at beautiful women.

I truly don’t know what our protagonist is thinking. Right now he is

continuously thinking about the issue concerning them and himself. He was unexpectedly thinking about how the magic race passed through the Si Te Lun stronghold and arrived at the Tian Wu continent. What is their purpose?

With my body exhausted and my spirit drained, I unconsciously fell asleep in the shade.

I slept very well, and I woke up freezing. I opened my eyes and saw that it was already night. My body was wet with dew and sweat; I felt unbearably sticky. I wanted to immediately find a place to wash.

Where is this? There seems to be light a small distance away. It looked like a village. Without any delay, I immediately ran toward it.

I walked close and carefully looked. As expected, it is a village, a very small village. Probably about only twenty households. I walked toward to the largest house and knocked on the door, “Is anyone there?”

An old voice passed through the door, “Who is it?”

“Hello, sir. I am a traveler. On a whim, I came here first. Could you let me stay here for the night? I will leave tomorrow, thank you.”

After a moment, the door opened. It was a wrinkly old grandpa. After he spent a moment examining me head from toe, he said, “Come in.”

“Thank you.” I answered at once and then followed the old man into the house. The house had about three different rooms. The living room was very simple; it only had a bench, a small table, a small stool, and a few domestic necessities.

The old man poured a glass of water for me. I immediately answered, “Thank You.”

“You don’t have to be so polite. Where did you come from, young man?” The old man asked with a smile.

“I came from the city of SenKe. I wanted to take a tour around the Xiu Da Kingdom.” I didn’t conceal anything with these words. This isn’t a secret that I have to hide.

"Ah SenKe, that's the second largest city. I visited there when I was young. Oh that's right, you still haven't ate. Look at me, old and senile. I'll go get you something to eat."

I was indeed very hungry, I cannot be polite about this, "In that case, I will trouble you." Actually, in my mind I still wanted to say, 'You should bring more, I eat a lot.'

I found a basin, and I scooped up a bit of water from the yard's water jar and washed my face. As expected, it was very refreshing. After I finish eating, I'll give myself a good wash.

"Time to eat, young man." The old man called from within the room.

"I'm coming." When I entered the room again, the small table already held many dishes on top of it, including a bamboo basket filled with steaming sweet potato and corn. There was also a bowl of fragrant sweet potato congee. This is great. Smelling the fragrant aromas of the meals, I felt like I was eat.

"Let's sit down and eat. Rural folk like me don't have anything good to treat guests with."

"This is already very good. At home, I always eat like this." I could no longer help it. I threw myself at the table's various foods and with all my might, tried to stuff it all in my stomach. The old man watched me eat with a knowing smile.

With the battle concluded, I had cleared off all the food. I patted my bulging belly, satisfyingly said, "I'm very full, I haven't eaten this much ever since I left home. Thank you truly."

The old man rose and cleaned the battlefield. I also quickly set to the task. Letting me wolf down so much food, how could I possibly push the cleanup onto someone else. The old man didn't bother being polite and told me where the kitchen was.

## Chapter 6: Mercenary Guild

Finished cleaning, I went back to the living room. The old man seemed to be waiting for me, “We’re done. Let me bring you to where you’ll be sleeping.”

“Young man, you’ll be sleeping here. Straight and simple, put it together. Ah that’s right, I still don’t know your name. This old name is called Lei Jie. You can call me uncle. I haven’t married, I’ve been by myself.”

“Here is good. Uncle, my name is Zhang Gong. Thank you.”

I sat on the bed and chatted with uncle. I heard him say we were near the Aixia kingdom’s border. In the past, this place had once belonged to the Kingdom of Xiuda. The folk on this side are sincere and down to earth, and they all treated their guests well. After all, they are at the border, there aren’t that many people who can use magic here. He also said that if I still wanted to go to the Xiuda Kingdom, I must be careful. Recently, it hadn’t been very peaceful and secure over there. At our border, there are a few bandits that come and go as a result of our friendly relations. The territory’s sovereignty is a sensitive topic, therefore it wasn’t properly guarded.

Hearing him talk about this location, I couldn’t help but ask, “Then currently, is it impossible to go over there?”

“No, everything is ordinary at our border city. Polima city assembled a large group of people and hired a few mercenaries as escorts. With this, it’s already much safer.”

“Oh, Then I should go to Polima.” Haha, there was still such a great thing. I should try out becoming a mercenary. I might even make some pocket money, hehe.

[TL Note: But you’re already filthy rich...]

That uncle had clearly misunderstood my meaning, “Right, since you want to go to the Xiuda Kingdom, it is better to travel from that place. Going together with merchants will also be much safer.”

Without needing to explain, I asked where I could wash. He told me there was a brook behind the village I could bathe in.

I used the clear and cold river water to wash the dirt and fatigue. So comfortable. After washing, my body felt indescribably refreshed. From the dimensional pocket I took out a set of clean clothes, and changed into them. Then I took the washed clean clothes and returned to that uncle's house.

I lied down on the bed, thinking about today's events. Although I said that from now on I wouldn't take a beautiful woman as a wife, their fairy-like appearance continuously swam in my mind, and I dazingly entered slumberland.

At dawn, I had finished eating breakfast with uncle and we said our goodbyes. According to his directions, I went forward to Polima city.

Perhaps it is because merchants from both countries pass through here, even though it was a border town, Polima was a very prosperous city. The main street was bustling with activity. All kinds of shops were dazzlingly light up like glittering jewels. I inquired the location of the mercenary guild from a passerby.

The mercenary guild's sign is a diamond coin with sword passing diagonally through it. I suppose the idea behind it was that mercenaries used their own skill to get their coin.

Walking through the mercenary guild's entrance, I faced a very large hall. The hall had various sorts of desks all around. At center of the hall were many differently dressed people. There were those who wore warrior's clothing, mage's clothing, and there were even a few sharp eared elves and a few short, rugged dwarves. Elves and dwarves are both classified as minorities, both are peaceful races. Elves are born archers, possessing keen senses and impressive eyesight and capable of learning any natural magic. Dwarves are powerful warriors and very skilled craftsmen. A great many high quality weapons were forged by them.

I walked to what I believed to be the front desk, and inquired to the young lady behind it, "Excuse me, where could I receive mercenary missions?"

The service lady took a glance at me. Seeing that I wore only ordinary clothing, she obviously wasn't very enthusiastic. She lazily said, "First go to the left over there and get a form and apply to become a mercenary. After that, you will get a mercenary's mission card. Then you can go to the right and receive missions."

"Oh, Thanks." I answered quickly and took a form. The asked for name and surname, profession, degree of ability and so-on. On the form, for ability, I put that I was a great mage. When I gave the registry form to service lady, she said with surprise, "You're a great mage?"

"That's right, what's the matter?" I, who diligently studied at royal magic academy for a very long time, naturally didn't know that great mages were uncommon.

"Do you have identification from the magic union?"

"Of course I do. " I took a magic union capability card from my bosom. (A mage's ability and experience are all verified and confirmed within the magic union's record card. Everyone had their own unique magic card.)

That service lady anxiously authenticated it for a moment. She read it and mumbled: "Zhang Gong Wei, graduated from the Royal Intermediate Magic Academy, representative of his year. As a result of his exceptionally outstanding achievements at the academy, he was exempt from testing and awarded with the title of great mage. Wow! You're a great mage that graduated from the Royal Magic Academy?"

Because of her voice was relatively loud, everyone present had heard. At the time, I became everyone's focus and felt somewhat embarrassed.

"That's right, what's the matter? Can I become a mercenary or not?"

Distracted for a moment, she promptly said, "You can, of course you can. Because you're a great mage, you are directly promoted to a rank C mercenary. You can accept any missions you believe you are capable of."

"Rank C Mercenary? Mercenaries are ranked?" I asked with doubt.

She smiled at me, I suppose it because I was ignorant and inexperienced. "Naturally, Mercenaries have high to low ranks from S, A,

B, C, D, E, F, to G. What missions a mercenary can accept depends on their rank. They are promoted in accordance to the difficulty and quantity of their completed missions.”

“Oh, so it’s like that, thank you.” I took the mercenary card that she handed to me, and then I walked to the desk on the right to look for a mission that went to Xiuda.

The service staff at the desk to the right knew that I was a great mage and treated me with an exceptionally friendly attitude. Seeing me walk over, they approached me and asked, “What rank of mission would you like to receive?”

“The rank doesn’t matter. What matters is if it goes to the Xiuda Kingdom. I want to travel there, so a mission heading there would be best.”

“Wait one moment, sir. I’ll help you check.”

While she was searching, I was looking at the top tile of the mission board and it was unexpectedly the first assignment that Teacher Di had given me, to acquire Holy Sword, the weapon that the God of Creation had once used. Rank SSS, Ah, there are three S's! It is clearly going to be very difficult. The reward was also extraordinarily high, to go so far as to offer a hundred thousand diamond coins. I reckon that is about how much my country receives from taxes annually.

## Chapter 7: Eating and Eating

I asked the service lady: “The reward for these three S rank missions are so big, who could afford this?”

This time not only did she laugh at me, but all the people around me looked at me as if I was an idiot. What are they looking at? It’s just that I don’t know since it’s my first time out in the world. I’ll just ignore them then.

“Since the beginning of the Mercenary guild’s, this mission has had the highest rank. It’s already been like this for over 1000 years. If someone actually managed to complete this mission, they can just go to the capital and claim this reward. The power of the divine artifact will be even greater if it recognizes its master. (Teacher Di has already told me that even if I happen to find a divine artifact, I won’t necessarily be able to obtain it. I must obtain the divine artifacts approval first before I can attain it. This much I already know.)

“Oh. So it’s actually like this. Have you found the mission I wanted yet?” With so many people staring at me, I really want to leave at once.

“Here’s a mission that suits you quite well. It’s a B rank mission. The mission is to escort a merchant to the capital of the Xiuda kingdom, Xiuda City. The reward for this mission is 300 diamond coins. However, this type of mission is usually accepted by a whole mercenary company. Will you be fine by yourself?”

“Ah. How many people are there in a mercenary company?” It would be better to find some other people to accept this mission with. Safety is the most important thing after all.

“It’s not exact, but the minimum is around ten people.”

I surveyed my surroundings then abruptly shouted: “Any mercenary groups that want to take this mission, I want to join.” This truly is clever of me. If I don’t want to do this mission by myself, then I can just find a mercenary company to join. How wonderful, I probably won’t meet any bandits and even if I do, they’ll take care of it. I’ll certainly be safe this

way. I truly am too clever.

While I was being infatuated with my cleverness, I heard a loud voice. “Then you can join us since we’re also thinking about taking this mission.”

Ah, What a loud voice! It frightened me just now. I turned my head to look at the owner of the voice. Waa! He’s so huge! His height is over 2 meters and a foot! He had a wild beard on his face and he was carrying a huge axe on his back. With a single look I could tell that he had the strength of one who trains in martial skills.

“Hello, you guys are a mercenary company?” I courteously asked.

“Ah, yes that’s right. We’re the famous Holy Sword Mercenary Company.” The huge person said in a straightforward manner.

“How many people are in your group?”

“We have about 20 people in our company but they’re all martial practitioners. We’re from the Xiuda kingdom so we wanted to take this mission as we could use it to go home conveniently. We’re lacking a mage. So how about it? Do you want to join us?”

20 people. That’s not a small number, but I don’t know how their strength is. Looking at his appearance, I estimated that he if he had Earth Dou Qi, it would be quite good.

“Then what warrior rank are you right now?”

“Me? I’m on the verge of reaching the level where I can get the authentication of a knight. Most of the people in the company are intermediate rank warriors.” (An intermediate warrior is equivalent to an intermediate mage.)

“Oh. So that is to say you’re an advanced warrior. That’s fine then. I wish to join your ranks until we finish this mission. However, I have a few conditions I hope you can agree to.” Although their strength isn’t that powerful, I really like this big guy.

The big guy blanked out for a moment. “What conditions?”

I muttered to myself before saying: "There are three conditions. Number one: I want you guys to prepare a carriage for me during the journey since I'm a mage so I don't have much physical strength. Number two: I won't be considered to be part of your mercenary company but simply as an ally. I don't want you guys to command me. Naturally, I will dispose of any dangers. Number three: I want a tenth of the reward money."

The first two conditions were a bit harsh, but the last condition was actually advantageous to them. The big guy thought about it for a bit before agreeing to them, he only needs a passable carriage and it'll be done. What would I do with all this money? It would just be pocket change to me. What's more, they have to split it among twenty people. If I asked for more they wouldn't make much profit. I'm still outstandingly kind and honest after all.

After accepting the mission and deciding on when we would assemble, we left the Mercenary Guild. First off, I want to go find a good restaurant to comfort my stomach. Apart from that time I ate my fill at that uncle's house, I've been eating rations for the rest of the journey. My stomach nearly revolted after that.

After exiting the Mercenaries Guild and walking quite a bit, I saw a restaurant with a big sign called the Signature Tavern." What an interesting name. I'll eat here then.

As soon as I entered the restaurant, a server came over to welcome me. "Hello Mister. May I ask how many people are with you?"

"It's just me. Please give me a more peaceful area."

"Okay then. The second floor is a bit more peaceful. I'll bring you over then." I followed the server to the second floor then sat down at a table beside the window. As expected, it's really peaceful here. Maybe it's because it isn't dinner time yet, but there was only a sparse number of people.

"What kind of special dishes do you guys have here?" I was already a bit impatient, since my stomach wouldn't wait for them. It continued to protest.

“Our specialty here is stir-fried duck hearts, dong po pork, ....” He continuously listed off ten different dishes. They all sounded quite good. I’m already beginning to drool.

“It’s fine now. You don’t need to continue. The dishes you said just now, bring me all of them. I also want ten steamed buns and a bowl of porridge. Hurry up.”

“Can you eat this much?” The skeptical server has met the Rice Bucket.

“Just hurry up and do it. What are you asking so many questions for? It’s not like I’m not paying for it.”

After driving away the server, I was already beginning to anticipate my delicacies. They were really fast. In not too long, my table was filled with an incomparable feast. (There wasn’t any wine. I haven’t started drinking yet. I’ll speak about it when I have the change in the future.) My mouth suddenly opened wide. I took the chopsticks and began my struggle.

My speed isn’t that slow. It only took me about one hour to finish it. Actually, I didn’t really take my time eating a lot of the dishes. No matter the taste, it just slipped straight into my stomach. Not bad. Truly not bad.

“Server, the bill please.”

The server walked over. “In total that was 3 gold coins and 4 silver coins.

“Oh.” I took out the amethyst card from my chest pocket and gave it to him. “Will the card be fine?”

When the server saw me take out an amethyst card, his face had a look of reverence on it. “Please wait a moment. I’ll go look for my boss.”

In order to use the card, he needs to find the boss. So troublesome. Forget about it. I’ll just wait then. In any case, I sat there motionlessly.

Authors note:

Who told you to be such a good for nothing Zhang Gong. Recklessly eating so much. There are people who are saving money who can’t eat. Yet you have so much waste. Corruption and waste are the biggest sins.

Author: Speechless.

## Chapter 8: Encountering Bandits

A short and stout middle aged man walked over, “Hello sir, was it you that wanted to use the amethyst card to pay the bill?”

“That’s right. What’s the matter?” I lazily answered. I’ve eaten my fill, right now my greatest concern was going to bed.

“May I ask you what is your profession?” The middle aged man asked with a smile.

“I am a mage. What does this have to do with the meal? Let me pay the bill immediately, I want to go.”

“It’s like this, the reason why we are called Signature tavern is because every person that eats here either has great ability or a position in society. So long as you write your signature here, you can eat a meal for free.”

“So there was such a good thing. Then I’ll give you my autograph.” Eat a meal without paying, not bad.

“Then what is your mage rank?”

I took out my magic union identification card, “Great Mage, is this a high enough rank?”

The shop keeper’s face showed a pleasantly surprised smile, “That is high enough. Without doubt. Then I will inconvenience you.”

With just a casual signature on the names of four delicious dishes, I was excused from paying for several gold coins worth of food. It seems that the magic identification card has it uses, not bad.

Later generations testified to the shop owner’s wisdom, for the Child of Light’s autograph was later auctioned off for 20,000 diamond coins.

I randomly picked a hotel to stay the night. Tomorrow morning, I’ll go to the east city gate. That was where I made an appointment with the strong man yesterday.

There were a truly great amount of people and great many carriages

parked on the roadside. I suppose this is the caravan I'm supposed to escort. Isn't that the strong man? From a glance, he looked like he was chatting with a few merchants.

"Hi, I've come. When are we leaving?"

"Ah, you came. Let me introduce you. This is the leader of the caravan we are escorting, Mr. Li Ci Meng." He said pointing at a stout merchant. "This person is a great mage. Ah that's right. I still don't know your name. My name is Long Meng Hai."

"My name is Zhang Gong Wei. Greetings everyone, I am honored to be escorting you all with Long Meng."

Mr. Meng looked at me in doubt, "You are a great mage?"

"That's right, what? Not convinced? Oh great light elements, heed my call, friends. Congregate in front of me, become a holy light annihilating everything." I only displayed my own strength, so that I could take it easy during the journey.

Following my incantation, my body suddenly dispatched a dazzling white light pushing away everyone within five meters of me.

"If any of you have the slightest knowledge of magic, you should know that was a rank six spell." My voice transmitted from within the Holy Light.

My powerful spell caught the interest of everyone present, and they all gasped with surprise. I withdrew my holy light, "With this you should be convinced."

As expected of a merchant, Mr. Meng immediately walked over with a smile across his face, "Excuse us, we shouldn't have doubted you, great mage. With you on this journey, our safety is guaranteed."

Long Meng also walked over. A moment ago when I released the power of Holy Light, he hadn't been able to resist even the slightest. He said ashamedly, "To tell the truth, I had also doubted your abilities at the beginning. Now I know how silly I was. In this escort mission, my mercenary company and I have decided to listen to your orders."

With everyone flattering me, I got a bit carried away. “You don’t have to do that. I just didn’t want everyone to think I was only here for food, hehe. You’ll still be in charge, I don’t want to. If something happens, it will be fine to just call for me.”

Like that, the journey had started with me and Long Meng’s mercenary company escorting about a hundred merchant carriages.

Because I had displayed my strength, everyone had treated me with admiration, letting ride in the most luxurious carriage and receiving the best rations during meal time. I also became a freeloader. It seemed that magic was truly not widely learned. Knowing magic had many benefits, not only having to not pay for food at a restaurant but I can also freeload off of the mercenaries, haha.

My carriage is at the center of the caravan. It is said so that I could look after the entire caravan from front to end. Just when I was about to fall asleep, someone had shook me awake. It was Long Meng. He looked exhausted, his brow beaded with sweat.

“What’s the matter?” I lazily asked.

“It’s bad. It seems we’ve come across bandits.” Long Meng said nervously.

“That’s not possible. There are people that dare to rob such a large caravan?” In my mind, I imagined about twenty to thirty bandits.

“We have a large amount of men? Why don’t you go out and take a look?” Long Meng was clearly a bit nervous.

It seemed somewhat amiss, I dropped from the carriage, and was stunned by the situation before me. Now I knew why Long Meng had sweated so much, because I had also broke a cold sweat.

On top of the hills, I saw group of more than three hundred men before me. Such a large bandit group, how did I end up with such terrible luck. I originally believed I could comfortably complete this mission, but it seems this time there’s going to be a bit of trouble.

Long Meng’s mercenary company and I came together to the front. The

bandit group had arrived in front of us in a flash, and scattered in every direction, creating an impenetrable encirclement.

“Tell your leader to come out and reply.” A bandit arrogantly yelled.

Long Meng, Mr. Meng, and I all looked at each other, who will go? They suddenly pushed me out. This, This is really unloyal! But I already came out. Let’s take a look. Honestly, to run away by myself is unacceptable. It’s possible to flee but I’m not that afraid. I walked forward a few steps.

“May I ask how we may help all of you gentlemen?” After I asked, the bandits immediately gave an arrogant, heartily laugh.

“Who do you think we are? Leave all of your belongings behind at once and I, your father, will release you. Or else, hehe.” Their black battle armored boss said loudly.

“Elder brothers, we all aren’t that easy. Won’t you let us go?” I pleaded.

“Let you go? We waited a month with great difficulty for an attractive, wealthy target and you want us to let you go? What a delusion.”

It looks like it’ll be impossible to pass. I was suddenly hit with a bright idea, and recalled what Teacher Di and I had discussed. The people of the Xiuda Kingdom truly value face, especially the pride of a knight. It seemed I can exploit this.

“Excuse me, you, leader, are you a knight?” My words were hard and firm, piercing through the leader’s black battle armor.

Before he replied, a bandit viciously said, “Of course. Our boss is a heaven knight.” That leader wore an obviously proud appearance. Not bad, they fell into my trap.

# Chapter 9: Bandit Leader's Charge

"Then how about we make a bet?"

"What sort of bet?" He obviously didn't put me in his eyes.

I pretended to think for a bit, "Let's just bet you won't be able to beat me." My words immediately made all the bandits burst out in wild laughter, apart from the silent bandit standing besides the bandit chief.

The chief bandit didn't even stop to think and immediately replied: "Ok. I'll bet with you. But we won't just be betting on all of your merchandise, we'll also be betting the lives of everyone in your party. You still want to bet?" It seems he wasn't foolish, to make use of my group.

Now I'm put into a difficult position, I have to take into consideration the lives of several hundred people. "Please let us discuss this for a moment."

I returned to our party, "You all heard my conversation with the chief bandit, what do you guys think?"

Long Meng excitedly said: "I hand my life over to you, Great Mage, I'm sure you can win against him. How about it brothers?" All the mercenaries under Long Meng shouted in uniform: "We'll bet." A proper group of brave men.

I turned to the caravan leader, Mr. Meng, "What about you guys, are you willing to put your lives in my hands?"

Mr. Meng was very hesitant, "Can you let me discuss it more with that chief bandit?" Everyone has the right make their own choices. Although Long Meng's mercenaries were glaring at him, I didn't express anything, "Alright, you can try to negotiate again."

I accompanied Mr. Meng to the bandits, Mr. Meng very politely said, "If us merchants don't participate in this bet, can you let us just give you the merchandise and not die?"

The chief bandit impatiently said, "Fine, you are so troublesome. Quickly decide what your going to do. Originally, we could easily capture

you guys. We just agreed to your request to let you guys accept defeat. I'm not going to be so polite anymore if you don't decide soon."

Mr. Meng pondered for a bit. First he helpless said to me: "I have to insure everyone's safety. I hope you can understand." Then he turned to the chief bandit: "We are willing to hand over all the merchandise."

I silently sighed. Originally, there was an opportunity to withdraw without loss. But now I'd rather not fight, as there's no longer any reason to. However spoken words are like spilled water, they can no longer be taken back.

Seeing the chief bandit's pleased look, I, who is rarely angered, was somewhat upset. First I calmly said to Mr. Meng, "Since you do not trust me, then from now on I along with Long Meng's mercenary company will hereby end our employment under you." Mr. Meng shook his head and went back sighing. It seems that he was going to prepare his goods for delivery.

"I represent myself and these twenty brothers of mine in an exchange of pointers with you. If I win, you let us go. If I lose, our lives are yours." I said resolutely with gritted teeth. With my strength, I believed that there was no way I could lose against a Heaven Knight.

"Good. Boy, you have courage. Come!"

All of the bandits went out, leaving a large, empty expanse. It seems that the people of Xiuda greatly care about the fair nature of an exchange of pointers. Long Meng's company were also in the surrounding encirclement, giving me confidence. Those merchants were looking from the distance, waiting for our match to end to hand over their goods.

I gave the brothers in Long Meng's mercenary company a confidence smile, and loudly said, "Brothers, believe in me, I will definitely bring everyone out of this troubling situation."

At the center of the site, the bandit leader and I stood face to face. I calmly threw off my outer robe and waved my right hand, "Come, dimensional storage."

"Boy, you are a mage. Then you certainly won't use a horse. I will not use one either. Let us immediately start this match." It seems this bandit is truly worthy of being considered a heaven knight; he truly has a knightly demeanor.

From the dimensional pocket, I took out my Light God's Robe and wore it. After all, I am bearing the lives of tens of people. I must be cautious. Wearing the Light God's Robe, I immediately gained much spirit power. I cast several defensive enchantments on myself. "Come, let me experience this heaven knight's strength."

The bandit wildly laughed, drew his sword, and flew straight towards me. So fast, I only saw a dim shadow for a flash of a moment, and he had arrived in front of me, in one blur, chopping at my shoulder.

He is truly fast, so fast that I don't even have enough time to teleport. I waved my right hand and brilliant rays of light came forth to obstruct him.

The bandit stopped for a moment. "Are you a mage or a warrior? How come you have Heaven Battle Spirit?"

"I'm not using battle spirit. This is just another method of using magic." This is my real strength. Right now I could even cast some rudimentary spells without chanting. I only need to will it then the light elements will congregate into the result I want. This took me three years to comprehend. Although there's still a gap between me and Teacher Di, my power is unexpectedly similar to using battle spirit. At the moment, the bandit wasn't attacking me at all since I was simply too great. Even though I managed to block his attack earlier, my whole right side is numb now. After all, fighting each other like soldiers with short weaponry certainly isn't a mage's strong points. I won't give him this sort of opportunity again.

Using teleportation, I moved out of his range. It seems like I'll have to use some stronger spells since his battle spirit is actually so powerful. His probing attack just now nearly injured me, if he had used all his strength I would have been unable to resist. I continuously used teleportation to

change my position. He's actually really quick as he was only a bit slower than me while I was using teleportation magic. I'm afraid he'll cut me down if I stop. This situation can't continue on.

I dodged to the side and starting chanting an incantation. My hands started to emit a faint white light. The radiance grew stronger. This is a different spell than the one I had just used. This is my improved Light Severing Sword. With a wave of my hand, I can control my magic, using it to directly attack. It is a rank 6 spell, and its single target attack power is exceptionally strong. It is greatly suited to this situation. If Brilliant Empire isn't necessary able to hit him because of his speed, and area attacks too large are spread too thin to be able to harm him, then currently, I can only use Light Severing Sword and stake it all.

I suddenly stopped and turned around with a white light. He immediately used a battle spirit movement technique and slashed at me with his knight swords that were emitting the same white light. I willed my magic to block it. "That's right! Don't run away. It's isn't satisfying if you run away."

"Fine then. I'll give something satisfying." Fast as lightning, I shot one Light Severing Sword after another at him. In return, he brandished his knight's sword to block them. Although I was unable to injure him, he was also unable to attack me. Now we'll see who lasts longer, my magic power or his battle spirit.

## Chapter 10: The Formidable Xiao Jin

The whole area we were fighting in was filled to the brim with my magic and his battle spirit. I secretly complained within my heart, why did I have to encounter such a powerful bandit? Don't tell me.... Are all the people of Xiuda are this strong? That's too scary to imagine...

His battle spirit seemed to gradually dwindle, it seems that this was more than he could handle. I finally saw a ray of hope. Even though I used up a lot of magic power, I could still sustain this. Immediately, I took advantage of this opportunity and accelerated my attacks. My efforts weren't in vain. He was careless and got hit in the shoulder. He was sent flying quite a far distance. The power of a rank 6 attack spell is truly frightening. Even if he had battle spirit protecting his body, I don't think he would get off with light injuries.

I stopped my magical assault since I knew that an exchange between knights stops when the opponent is unable to fight back anymore. Since he has his grace, why can't I also act like a knight?

After he got up from the ground, I saw that his left shoulder was somewhat unnatural. He gave me an eccentric laugh and roughly said: "Brat, I didn't expect you to be this strong. It's admirable that at such a young age you have already reached this level. Regardless of the outcome of this exchange, I'll release you guys. Actually, I knew that if you guys truly wanted to run, we wouldn't be able to stop you at all. But you stayed behind for your friends. I can really admire this as a fellow man."

Regardless of the outcome? What does that mean? Could it be that he still has enough strength to strike back? I indifferently replied: "Then I'll thank you first. I also admire your chivalrous spirit." These were my heartfelt words.

As he brushed off the dirt on him, he said: "I'll let you see my true strength. Come out, War Tiger." In the wake of his words, a big brightly colored fierce tiger came out with a majestic roar. "This is my magical beast, War Tiger. You can also summon your magical beast, then we can fight each other with all of our strength. I haven't enjoyed myself for so

long. War Tiger, fusion.” The War Tiger gave out a long roar before charging into the bandit. In a flash, the man and tiger fused into one. On his body appeared some tiger striped armor. It covered up all the important parts of his body, in total covering about 60% of his body. Even on his knight’s sword appeared some stripes. His hair was let down magnificently. This imposing manner of his gave me a sense of being overwhelmed.

Wa! This is the armor of a successful fusion between a warrior and his magical beast! Teacher Di told me before that a warrior’s magical beast is similar to a mage’s magical beast. They both aid their master to attack and defend. However, if the magical beast reaches rank 7 and the master has Heaven Battle Spirit, it can fuse with the master and become armor. This will also increase the master’s attack abilities. In comparison to individual combat, this way was much more powerful. Being able to create armor by fusing with his magical beast means that he’s already approaching the level of a Radiant Knight. (Equivalent to a magister)

“Let me experience your magical beast too.”

It seems that I’ll lose if I don’t let Xiao Jin out to fight with me. I still haven’t pieced myself together from the shadow of Xiao Jin’s last battle. I’ll try it out and let Xiao Jin out. It’s different from those days. Xiao Jin shouldn’t be defeated that easily now. “Come out Xiao Jin.” In a flash of golden light, Xiao Jin’s huge body appeared and nestled up against my side.

It was clear that Xiao Jin’s appearance gave him a fright. He said in surprise: “Ah! What kind of magical beast are you? You’re so big.”

The current Xiao jin was over 10 meters long and from head to toe he was covered in white scales with three golden stripes flickering with light. The horn on his head has also grown a lot and the large wings on his back were only slightly shorter in length than a person’s height. On his abdomen five sharp claws scratched the ground. He looked extremely domineering.

I discovered that Xiao Jin didn’t want to fight at all. He gave out a

cheerful roar since he hadn't been outside for so long. It might be that he thought I brought him out to play. It wasn't until I told him we had enemies through telepathy that he nervously shook his adorable head to look around us. He sensed that only the bandit's there were a threat to me and asked telepathically: "Are these the enemies?" I gave him an affirmative response.

Unexpectedly, Xiao Jin suddenly had the imposing manner of a king and began to ferociously glare at the opposing bandits. All of his scales were erect and he even unfurled his wings and waved them, causing a small sandstorm. This frighteningly imposing manner caused all of the surrounding bandits to scatter in all directions as they shouted: "Monster!"

"Stop, stop. I don't want to battle anymore." From within the sandstorm came the bandit's voice.

I promptly told Xiao Jin to stop, but within my heart, I couldn't help but be baffled by the bandit. Neither me or Xiao Jin have attacked him yet he had already surrendered.

"Damn. What kind of magical beast is this? It's way too terrifying. My War Tiger already seems to be afraid of him and wants to separate from my body. I admit defeat so hurry up and recall him." It turns out that when the bandit confronted Xiao Jin, he already knew that he was unable to contend with me. So he took the initiative to admit defeat.

Indeed, Xiao Jin is so strong that even I can't believe it. I know that right now I'm absolutely not Xiao Jin's opponent. Especially considering his imposing manner of a king just now. I was flabbergasted, was this actually my Xiao Jin who was so cute and adorable before?

Xiao Jin unwillingly returned to my body. I suddenly felt weak. I have consumed a lot of magic power. Even though I wasted a lot of magic power during the exchange of pointers, summoning Xiao Jin also consumed a lot due to how powerful he is. (I supply him with all of his energy.) He didn't attack otherwise I would have collapsed. It seems like I still have long way to go. If in the future me and Xiao Jin are able to

display our full powers simultaneously, I estimate that our strengths wouldn't be too far off from a legendary Grand Magister's.

After the dust had gradually settled, I could see the bandit not far from me standing there while being covered in dirt. He has already recalled his War Tiger. I couldn't find a single thread of hostility in his gaze as he helplessly looked at me. By relying on Xiao Jin's formidable power, I've beaten him.

Letting out a bitter laugh, he said to me: "I've got to say my boy, this magical beast of yours is too abnormal. Ah, how did you find him? I don't know what sort of breed he is."

I replied with a smile: "I don't know what breed he is either. I only know that he's my best friend. Actually, you didn't lose at all. It's just that your magical beast couldn't compare to mine. Our strength's are about equally matched."

I reckon that my words have satisfied his vanity since he couldn't conceal his excitement. "Alright then. You're a real brother. We're friends from now on then!"

## Chapter 11: Having a Bandit as a Friend

The chief bandit cheerfully said: "Alright then brother. You and your friends can go now. I'll just go and receive the spoils of war now. Haha."

I really didn't expect that in the end there would be this sort of result. Simply too dramatic. Unexpectedly, I became friends with the bandit robbing me.

When the caravan leader, Mr. Meng saw that we had turned enemy into friend, his heart felt unwell. Within his heart he was unceasingly scolding himself for having such poor judgement. Without looking at me, he quickly walked over to Long Meng and begged: "Ah, Long Meng. Talk with the Great Mage Zhang Gong to help us by getting these older brothers to let us off. If we lose all of this merchandise, our losses will truly be too big."

With a disdainful look, Long Meng coldly replied: "Isn't it too late now? Who told you guys not to trust Zhang Gong? Who is to blame? Blame yourselves. I wouldn't have any face if I helped you guys to plead."

"Yes, yes. It's all because of my poor judgement. I was too selfish. But we, the elderly are above and below are the young. There are a lot of people this time whose loss would be the same as losing their family fortune. I beg of you, help me talk to him." Mr. Meng was already shedding tears as he said this."

Even though Long Meng looked the fool on the outside but within, he was extraordinarily kindhearted. After seeing Mr. Meng, a grown man, crying, his heart softened. Helplessly, he said: "Fine then. Don't be like this. I'll go and try but I can't guarantee that Zhang Gong will agree."

"Thank you, thank you! You truly are a good person!"

I heard their conversation long ago since I was right behind them. I contemplated this for a bit. Ah! It isn't easy for a merchant to survive either! Forget it. There's no need to lower myself to their level.

Without even letting Long Meng to open his mouth, I hurriedly said: "Fine then. No need to say anymore Long Meng. I'll go and try pleading

for them.”

I walked over to the bandits that were currently taking inventory of the merchandise and embarrassingly said: “This is really embarrassing. I will have to inconvenience you.”

The Bandit Chief straightforwardly said: “What’s there to feel embarrassed about? If you have something to say then just say it.”

“It’s like this you see. It isn’t easy for these merchants either so would it be possible for you guys to let them off this time? After all, this is the first time I’ve received a mercenary mission so I wouldn’t want to stop midway and pay the fees.”

The Chief Bandit shook his head and awkwardly said: “I’m afraid that it’s impossible for us to spit out that fat meat that’s already in our mouths. Why do you still want to help them? Didn’t you see the true face of that band of profiteers just now? They don’t trust you at all so why do you still bother with them?”

While also feeling very awkward, I let out a sigh. “Ah. There’s nothing to be done about it then. First of all, they’re my customers, and second, they also have wives and children. I only hope you wouldn’t be too harsh on them. I know that you must have your own difficulties, but everyone have to give themselves a way out.”

The Chief Bandit’s face sank with gloom. “Are you threatening me?”

I stared at him in the eye unyieldingly. “Of course I’m not threatening you. I just hope you will agree to me request. In the future I will certainly pay you back the favor.”

Under my resolute gaze, he gradually softened and released a gentle sigh. Helplessly, he said: “I truly can’t say no to you but I really like your character. I can agree to releasing one horse for them, but not the rest. I want half of the merchandise since I have so many brothers following me. I definitely can’t let them return empty-handed. Besides that, I have one more condition.”

His answer was already very satisfying since these unscrupulous

merchants should also be taught a lesson. This is the best possible outcome. With a smile, I said: "Then I'll thank you first. Just tell me what condition you have and I will do my best to satisfy you."

"My condition is very harsh. Your heart must be prepared. If you can't do it, then the previous agreement will have been a waste."

My heart tensed up and I clenched my teeth. "Say it then. I'll do it if I can." Will he deliberately, embarrass me? he wouldn't want me to strip would he...?

Laughingly, he said: "My condition is--" He deliberately drew out this word to cause me to feel suspense. "It's to invite you to go to our mountain stronghold as a guest."

After hearing his words, it was like unloading a ball of gas. I became soft and nearly fell collapsed onto the ground. I collapsed. I violently collapsed. Ah! How can this be considered a condition? It's too simple!

I said with a weak voice: "Boss, I'll do it."

Fabbergasted, he replied: "What? You don't wish to go to our place as a guest? Then forget about it. I'll cancel the agreement."

I hastily replied: "No no no. I want to go. I want to go see what it's like at your place. Are you trying to scare me to death?"

Abruptly, he gave out a hearty laugh of rejoice. "Haha! You've been fooled by me. This is my revenge.

I was speechless.

With the Chief Bandit's promise, the crowd of bandits returned half of the merchandise to the merchants. These profiteering merchants thanked me until I grew annoyed. I don't care about them at all. I told Long Meng the Chief Bandit's condition and told them to escort the caravan to Xiuda first. I need to go to the bandit's nest for a few days as a guest after all.

Initially, Long Meng was firmly opposed to this but after my unceasing explanations of how the Chief Bandit definitely won't harm me, he finally agreed. He said he definitely follow me in the future, so I must arrive at

Xiuda safely. I accidentally received so many little brothers. I also have some means. I told him we would speak of this in the future when I arrive in Xiuda and find them.

After watching the walk away, I turned around and looked at the Chief Bandit. I said with a smile: "Boss, let us go then. Oh, that's right! I still don't know your name. My name is Zhang Gong Wei. I'm 16 but I'll be turning 17 this year."

"Everyone calls me Zhan Hu so you can call that too. I don't wish to carry my former name anymore. This year I'm 29 years old so I'm much older than you. Then I'll be your older brother."

(TL: Zhan Hu means War Tiger. Like his magical beast.)

Inwardly I thought, surely he has some extreme circumstances in his past. It would be best not to touch upon it. I answered: "Of course. It goes without saying that you're the big brother. Lets go then. Let me go and see what your nest is like." While saying this, I made a bandit give me horse before rushing onwards.

"You know the way? It'd be better if I lead the way." Zhan Hu's horse was evidently much more excellent. In a moment he already caught up to me and rode besides me.

Their nest is within the mountains of the border between Aixia and Xiuda. It wouldn't be accurate to call it a bandit's nest. It would be better to call it village due to it's large scale. Furthermore, Zhan Hu was precisely the village's chief. Whether young or old, when the women and children saw the bandits return with so many valuables they all welcomed the bandits as if they were heroes.

The scale of this bandit village wasn't small at all. The mountains encircled this small village situated in a depression within the mountains, thus providing a natural barrier for them. It was as if the whole village fused together with the surrounding mountains. How verdant and lush. If I didn't know any better, I would think this was an isolated world.

## Chapter 12: Big Brother Zhan Hu

Zhan Hu and I entered the village. He really is the village's idol; when someone sees him they always greet him. He also responds to them one by one. He let all of his subordinates return home and brought me to his residence. He lived in a simple, crude reed house in the deepest part of the village. Surrounding it was a very tattered fence.

I said jeeringly, "You should repair this house, otherwise the wind will blow you away together with it."

He didn't care about my jeers. My words seemed to evoke a worry on his mind. He murmured, "On the eighth month, a great autumn wind furiously roared and swept up my house's heavy reeds. The reeds flew to the river and scattered throughout. Up high, the winds takes the branches of tall trees. Down below, it creates a whirlwind, hollowing the ground beneath it. Before, I lived a life of luxury; now there is nothing. Contrary, only a simple, basic life is my goal now."

I patted his shoulder, "It seems that you are also deeply heartbroken by these past events. Can you tell me about it? I am willing to hear you out. Let everything out of your heart, you'll certainly feel much better."

He looked at me. His eyes displayed the gaze of an intimate friend, and said boldly with abandon, "Right, continuously stifling my heart's thoughts have made me feel unwell. Today I will let you hear. Walk, let us enter the house, and talk and drink."

He had never married and lived by himself. He brought out a jar of wine from who knows where and brought out a few simple dishes. "Let's eat. Little brother, tomorrow I'll let them give you something a bit better."

I immediately said, "This is already very good."

He took out two large wine cups and said, "Come, let's drink."

I said embarrassed, "I never drank wine before. How about you drink by yourself?"

"Not drinking is out of the question. Wine is a truly good thing. Us men

have enough hardships for a lifetime, with no smoking (tobacco), with no drinking, you might as well live life as a dog. Come, drink.”

It was hard to refuse such great hospitality. I wanted to try wine and experience what it tastes like, “Alright, today I will keep your company and drink with you.” I picked up the wine jar and filled our cups to the brim. We raised our cups leveled to each other and drained it in one gulp. “I respect big brother, respect for finishing first.”

He had a happy appearance and took another drink. “Good, drink to your heart’s content.”

When we drank the wine, I started to feel a bit hot, yet I also smelled a pure, simple fragrance. With it, it isn’t very hard to drink. But the inside of my stomach felt like a fire burning, I felt as if my whole stomach was aflame. My face held a deep red. A good half day later, my energy started to slowly come back.

Zhan Hu laughingly said, “Aren’t you drinking a bit slowly? This wine’s strength cannot be considered weak. Your stomach for liquor will definitely be pretty good in the future. If an average person drank a cup of this wine of mine, they would be on the brink of death.”

With a red face, I said, “Oh, so it turns out to be that kind of wine.” I hurriedly tried the dishes.

After we ate for a while, I asked, “Big Brother, why have you become a bandit? With skill like yours, you should be able to go anywhere and receive great status.”

Zhan Hu sighed, saying, “Little Brother, you wouldn’t know. Before, I was also high spirited like you. I was previously regarded as a genius of the Xiuda Kingdom’s young generation. When I was twenty years old, I had already become a Heaven Knight. At the time, I was a symbol of my family’s glory, what everyone had hoped to accomplish.” He stopped here and drank a large mouthful of wine.

I interrupted saying, “Then what about later?”

He continued, saying, “Later, I joined the army. Because of my

outstanding performance, I gained the admiration of everyone. Quickly, I climbed to a position that everyone yearned for even in their dreams. You should know about the Xiuda Kingdom's trump unit."

"The Earth Dragon Corps?" I heard Teacher Di talk about it before. If on plain terrain, a single Earth Dragon Legion could easily get rid of any adversary. Earth dragons have extraordinarily strong magic defenses. Unless it comes across exceptionally high rank magic, it would be fundamentally impossible to harm it and its knights. On the East Continents, only the Xiuda Kingdom produced an earth dragon, but the numbers are quite sparse."

"Right, you're correct. At the time, I was one of the three Corps chiefs in the Earth Dragon Corps."

Ah? It turned out that he had once been so formidable. "Then at the time, you were very proud of yourself. What about your earth dragon? I heard when earth dragons recognize a master, it will eternally follow him."

Zhan Hu continued to poured himself many cups of wine and painfully said, "My earth dragon's name was Zhan. He was the strongest earth dragon in the Earth Dragon Corps. The greatest reason for I am now like this is because of him. During our first training session, because of my mistake, Xiao Zhan sacrificed his life. He sacrificed his life to save me." He painfully grabbed the hair on his own head.

I grabbed his hand, and consoled him, "Don't do that. These matters have already past. There is no use in regretting it now. You must start pulling yourself together."

Perhaps because my consoling had impacted him, he gradually became tranquil. We continued to drink and chat. He said since Xiao Zhan died, he had never been able to forgive himself. Everyone had blamed him; they all said it was his fault that his precious earth dragon had died. This also caused him to be dismissed from his position as a Corps head. At that time, he had began to learn to drink alcohol. Every day drunk, every day looking at others with indifference. He couldn't endure it and ran

away. Without a goal, he wandered aimlessly without direction until he arrived here. Coming here, everyone was pressed to banditry. That is because of Zhan Hu's skills, it was only natural the people of Village Li would be put to order. But later, because he sympathized with the bandit's lives and was simultaneous wanting for a home, He had also stayed behind and became their bandit chief.

So it turned out that his past was so complicated. I was deeply moved. I drank a mouthful of wine and said outspokenly, "Big... Big Brother, I greatly admire your character. How about we become sworn brothers?" My tongue had already become large. Currently the wine had already become sweet. I saw two Zhan Hu's swaying in my eyes.

Zhan Hu also drank almost as much as I. "Good, good little brother, Big Brother recognizes this little brother. In the future, if anything happens, tell Big Brother. Big Brother will surely help you settle the matter."

I embraced his broad shoulder and while swaying, I lifted the cup, saying, "Great, for the affections of us as brothers, come, lets dry these cups." It was as such, he drank a cup, I drank a cup, taking turns until we both finally completely toppled over.

Ah, my head really hurts. In the morning, I managed to wake up, feeling dizzy and muddle headed. Moreover, with this tremendous head pain.

"Little brother, you're awake." Zhan Hu's voice came over.

"Oh, Big Brother, my head, why does it hurt so much?"

"Haha, yesterday you drank so much, how could your head not hurt?" Zhan Hu said with a smile.

"Then how are you alright?" I wondered.

"I drink everyday, I've already adapted. Little brother, yesterday you said you wanted us to become sworn brothers. Is that true?"

Sober, I said, "Of course, I would be honored to have an older brother such as yourself."

Emotionally moved, Zhan Hu said, "Very well, I recognize you as my

younger brother. Why don't you stand, go wash your face and eat something? Then your head won't hurt."

Afterwards, it was precisely because of Zhan Hu's assistance that the Child of Light was able to obtain true love. Furthermore, Zhan Hu had later become an unforgettably mighty character in history.

# Chapter 13: Exchange of Skills

Name: Zhan Hu

Height: 184cm

Weight: 80kg

Major Magic: N/A

Minor Magic: N/A

Magical Beast: War Tiger

Overall Magic Strength: Heaven Knight

Magic Control: F

(Grades are divided into S, A, B, C, D, E and F)

Magic Power: F      Magic Perception: B      Magic Defense: A

Magic Attack: F      Speed: A (Unable to fly)

Physical Attacks: A      Physical Defense: A      Stamina: S

\*

After eating breakfast, me and Zhan Hu climbed a hill to enjoy the scenery with untroubled hearts. I said: “Big Brother, are you in a better mood now after you spoke the words hidden within your heart?”

In the middle of his laments, Zhan Hu said: “It’s already been so long since I’ve been so satisfied. Now my whole body feels at ease.”

After we laughed together, I inquired: “What kind of battle spirit are you using that’s so powerful?

“My battle spirit has been passed down through my family from generation to generation. It’s called the Ascending Dragon’s Judgment. It’s also what Xiuda’s Royal family cultivates. Since we’re already brothers, I don’t need to conceal this from you. My father is the younger brother of the current king of Xiuda. The Grand Marshal of the kingdom’s armies, Qi Lu Xiuda. My original name was Jing Yun Xiuda.”

I couldn’t help but laugh: “Ah, I never expected that you’re related to

the king, Big Brother! Little Brother truly is climbing up the social ladder.”

Zhan Hu forced out a bitter laugh as he said: “You’re playing with me aren’t you? How can I still be considered royal blood? I’m just a drifter now, that’s all. Why are you asking me what kind of battle spirit I’m using? Could it be that you want to learn it?”

I muttered with a red face: “Originally I wanted to learn it from Big Brother since my teacher gave me a mission beforehand. That is, to learn some basic battle spirit to strengthen my weak body. But Big Brother’s battle spirit is a royal secret. How could I possibly be able to learn it?”

“Foolish little brother, why can’t you learn it? It doesn’t matter. Sect bias has already buried so many talented people, let alone you, who majors in magic. I’ll teach you the Ascending Dragon’s Judgment right now.” Zhan Hu boldly said.

What a pure person I have recognized as a brother. It seems like one of the missions Teacher Di has given me will soon be accomplished. I gratefully said: “That’s simply too good then. Thank you Big Brother.”

With a solemn voice, Zhan Hu seriously said: “The Ascending Dragon’s Judgement is just one of many cultivation methods but its origin is extremely ancient. It should be something the Sacred Knights created thousands of years ago. Its cultivation is split into nine main stages. Namely, they are establishing the foundation, entry, basic understanding, first success, understanding, purification, transformation, ascension, peerless and unfathomable. The early stages are easy in comparison to the later stages; you only need to cultivate and you will surely be able to reach it. However, from the fourth stage and onwards, it becomes extraordinarily difficult. You can no longer advance with just your efforts; comprehension is required. I’m already at the middle of the transformation stage. There’s actually a lot of overlap between the cultivation of battle spirit and your cultivation of magic power. It’s just that one is acting from the mind to control the external magic elements while battle spirit is the development of the body’s potential. Generally speaking, both have their own methods of cultivation. I’ll teach you the

basic meditation method to cultivate battle spirit."

Zhan Hu was a very strict teacher. If I slacked off even the slightest, he would severely reprimand me. He planned to train me for two months before letting me go to Xiuda. Every morning there would be training to strengthen the body and under his supervision, I wasn't allowed to use magic at all. The body training mainly consisted of running and strength training. In the afternoon I would begin cultivating my battle spirit by meditating. At night I can meditate and cultivate my magic.

In the beginning I wasn't used to this, but he wasn't in any way inferior to the years of training under the devil teacher, Teacher Xiu. However, I gradually discovered that no matter how tired I was in the morning, after meditating for a while in the afternoon I would already be recovered. The next day I would always be even more vigorous. Gradually, battle spirit began condensing within my lower dantian and combined with my magic power without any difficulties (The lower dantian is located in the lower abdomen). I was truly relieved that they combined without conflict.

After today's afternoon meditation, I got up and stretched my body. I picked up an iron sword and brandished it. At the moment, I was practicing the basics of swordplay. While I practiced swordplay, I also controlled my battle spirit the way Zhan Hu taught me and made it flow into the iron sword from my arm. Shortly after, I was successful. However, this success may be due to my powerful mind. It felt as if the sword became lighter. With a light swing of the sword, I could sense the powerful spirit within it. With my strong foundation, I began a sword dance which caused the wind to whistle. It felt quite good.

Suddenly, I had an idea. What would happen if I also imbued the sword with magic power? Lets try it out. Within my gold dan, I separated a bit of magic power. As I condensed this light element, I slowly began pouring it into the sword. In the beginning it seemed as if the battle spirit and magic power were doing their own thing and ignoring each other, but then they gradually began resonating. The battle spirit and magic power fused into a powerful energy. I swung the sword at a boulder to test it out. Immediately, the boulder split into two. It seems like I've made another

discovery. Under certain conditions, magic power can increase the power of battle spirit. I need to go tell this wonderful news to Zhan Hu.

After hearing what I said, Zhan Hu told me with extreme excitement to demonstrate it again. He told me he hasn't been able to improve his strength for a long time. If he could fuse magic power with battle spirit in sword to create a magic sword, he would surely be able to improve once again. I was also very excited for him. Of course, the task of teaching him magic fell on my shoulders.

Magic power and battle spirit had distinct differences. Battle spirit was easy to begin cultivating but magic power was much harder to begin cultivating in. Zhan Hu had never learned any magic so I first had to make him comprehend the existence of the light element. This was necessary if I were to teach him light magic.

After arriving at his cottage, I prudently told him: "Big Brother, I'm going to use my magic power as a guide for you to sense the light elements. You must congregate your spiritual power in accordance with my guidance, otherwise the light elements won't recognize you. There is only one chance, so you must pay attention."

Zhan Hu nodded his head. "Okay. Begin then."

I made him sit cross-legged in front of me. Slowly, I began lifting my finger until it was resting on his upper dantian. "We're beginning now."

I condensed my magic power into a thin thread as it followed my finger and entered his upper dantian. During the opening of his upper dantian, he was trembling from head to toe but gradually, he became more and more tranquil.

I started speaking. "Light element is an extraordinarily gentle kind of magic element. The true essence of light is that of generosity, tolerance, peace and love. All living things require light element to grow. Light is like our elder brother and our fathers and mothers. Use your heart to sense it. Let it accept you. We are all the children of Light." After finishing this speech, not only did I feel that Zhan Hu has comprehended the light elements, I also felt a change within my body.

## Chapter 14: Onward to Xiuda

I felt the surrounding light elements begin to wrap around me. My entire body was immersed in an ocean of light element. What is causing this? I withdrew my finger, letting Zhan Hu comprehend the subtle light elements by himself. Sitting cross legged across Zhan Hu, I had focused on my translucent golden sphere. The golden sphere showed no abnormalities, unmoving between my eyebrows (on top of the upper dantian).

I had just relaxed, thinking about standing up and stretching; when suddenly, the light elements around me frantically surged with me at the center. Light element spread throughout my body, its power far too great. I don't dare resist and only relaxed my body, accepting the baptism of light elements. The light element within my body gathered like lightning. From head to toe, my body was like a balloon being inflated. I could not longer absorb any more. At this time, the golden sphere began to move. It began to run through the blood vessels, rapidly absorbing excess light elements. The feeling of swelling gradually disappeared. The golden sphere's absorption rate was much greater than before. Quickly, the frantic light elements that entered my body achieve equilibrium. I finally relaxed and exhaled. I continued to maintain the current situation until light elements no longer surge into my body.

I took in a deep breath, controlling the golden sphere within my body to cycle through my body before slowly returning to my upper dantian. I was amazed to discover that my originally translucent golden sphere had already entirely become transparent, showing a sparkling light. Within my body, Xiao Jin sent out a lively mood for me. It was obvious that from the frantic surge of light elements just now had granted me benefit not at all small. I remembered that Teacher Di told me I should strive for my golden sphere to at least become completely transparent within four to five years. Then how can this be? I carefully recalled what had happened previously. Could it be that when I introduced the light elements to Zhan Hu that they had acknowledged me once more? This is too miraculous. I could not bear the violent joy surging through me. Currently, I have have

become the continent's eleventh magister, at least from my magic power. Give me a bit of time to adjust and I won't be inferior to any person. This is too wonderful.

I opened my eyes. Zhan Hu had already woken up earlier, fixedly looking at me. Seeing me awake, he hastily asked, "Zhang Gong, what happened to you? A moment ago your body was twinkling a dazzling, golden light, rendering me unable to approach you. What was that?"

I emotionally said, "Big Brother, I've succeeded. When I introduced you to the light elements, I don't know why but I went through a baptism of light elements. Right now, the source of my body's magic power, my golden sphere is already completely transparent."

When Zhan Hu heard, he had a slightly confused appearance and smiled, saying, "Talk a bit slower, don't speak so fast. If you speak so fast, I can't hear clearly."

I deeply looked at Zhan Hu's eyes, and said word by word, "In other words, currently your little brother's magic power has already reached the level of a magister."

After Zhan Hu heard what I said, his mouth turned into an O and said with awe, "Younger Brother, you've done it. You've done it. This older brother might not be able to be your rival. Haha! Very good. I have a magister as my little brother, let us drink a cup and celebrate well."

Feasting, I asked him what he had felt from the light elements. He told me he had felt very comfortable. I told him he must think deeply about the methods that I have taught him.

After I became a magister, we continued to exchange each other's knowledge. Two months had past in a blink of an eye and I had already practiced Ascending Dragon's Judgement to the level of basic understanding. Zhan Hu was very amazed by my rate of learning. We both said that my current spiritual power is exceptionally powerful. Therefore not only can it be used to control magic power, it can also be used to control battle spirit to a rather exceptional degree. My body is much stronger than before, and as a result of gorging myself on food

everyday, my body weight increased by five kilograms. In addition, I've grown a bit tan from exercising everyday. From Zhan Hu, I learned three sword techniques. My battle spirit had fundamentally aided the use of my magic.

Zhan Hu's progress was also equivalently large. He could already use a few of the most basic light spells. I primarily taught him a few support enchantments, because learning advanced light attack spells isn't something that can be learned in a short period of time. He was able to use light support enchantments with his knight's sword and battle spirit in concert. It produced an exceptionally good result. If I used advanced spells to attack him, it wouldn't affect him whatsoever. It was very easy to explain to him. He excitedly told me that he had already begun to stride towards becoming a radiant knight. I believe that he is capable of succeeding soon. He also said that he will certainly not let me advance alone and will definitely overtake me.

Two months of living together made us as intimate as true blood brothers. We have already reached the point where words are no longer said. I told him about the assignment that Teacher Di had given me. He said that when I finish my travels from Xiuda that I must come back and look for him. He wants accompany me to complete this formidable assignment together. Naturally, I was extremely happy. Having his powerful arm give me assistance will be of great aid in completing this assignment. With these brothers' power combined, they could break gold. Haha, I didn't expect Ma Ke to not come and have Zhan Hu accompany me.

I should go. Zhan Hu sent me off from the village's entrance. He gifted me a set of his previous knight clothes. Although it wasn't gorgeous, when I put them on, they looked very spirited. To match it, he gave me an iron sword, It had a mighty appearance. Zhan Hu said that like this I could be received welcome at Xiuda. It would also be easy to obtain everyone's respect. It would be make it very convenient when entering and leaving a city.

Standing at the village's entrance, I took a glance back at the small

village as similar to the size of a peach orchard, and said with a sigh, “Big Brother, I truly would somewhat hate to part here.”

Zhan Hu drew my shoulder towards him, saying, “Little Brother, even a feast will eventually have to end. Take care of yourself on your journey. When you finish your travels at Xiuda come back immediately and find me. We’ll find the holy sword together. Big Brother looks forward to go out together and create a new world.

“Good. Big Brother, be at ease. I will return as quickly as possible.”

Zhan Hu with a bit of grief, said, “When you go to Xiuda, If you have an opportunity, could you go take a look at my home? But you mustn’t tell them about my circumstances. So long as they are safe, I would be relieved.” It seems that he is still very concerned about his home. After all it was the home where he was born and raised.

“Then why aren’t you going back? It would be great if you returned with me then! Then we don’t have to separate. The king isn’t that young anymore either. Even if he has high expectations of you, he won’t wish for you to leave again.” I said in an attempt to persuade him to come with me.

“I can’t. You don’t understand. We can talk about it again once you return so we can set off to retrieve the Holy Sword. You go now then. Quickly go so you can quickly come back.”

It seems like I’m unable to convince him no matter what. Reluctantly, I waved goodbye the big brother I have just gotten these last two months. Facing towards Xiuda’s vast earth, I continued my journey.

# Chapter 15: The Knight Academy

Entering the borders of Xiuda, there were many differences here compared to Aixia as expected, but the simple and honest nature of the people here were the same. Everywhere in Xiuda, you could see warriors wearing knight's attire. Even a few remote villages were like this as well. It is clear that Xiuda held military tradition in esteem.

On the road, I practiced a few rank 8 spells that I couldn't use previously with the light magic book Teacher Di gave me. Although they were only one rank higher, they were truly awesome, their results were certainly as different as heaven and earth. My increase in strength made me feel full of confidence in completing this journey of learning.

Because I wore the earth knight attire (what Zhan Hu had given me), I arrived at Xiuda Kingdom's Capital City without a hitch. Ah, What grand buildings, the tall city gate tower intimidated people at first glance. From my observations, the city guards were all made up of advanced warriors, truly powerful.

When city guards' officers and men saw my earth knight's attire, they displayed a gaze of reverence, satisfying my vanity once more. Just as I was about to enter the city, I suddenly heard a person shout from inside the city, "People in front, move out of the way!" I unconsciously stood to the side and looked toward the city's interior. Wa, that's an earth dragon?

I saw ten massive creatures rush out. On top of each creature sat an armored knight holding a massive 3.6 meters long dragon spear. Truly awe inspiring. Those huge creatures should be earth dragons. I attentively observed, discovering that their lengths were similar to Xiao Jin's, they were only a bit shorter. Their bodies were about five meters long and two meters tall, with two thick, strong hind legs to support their massive bodies and two large claws on their forelimbs. There was no doubt it had the power to rip a tiger apart.

I inquired to the person to my side, "Hello, are those the Earth Dragon Corps?"

The soldier looked at me and replied, “You aren’t a native? The Earth Dragon Corps routinely patrol the city everyday. They are truly our idols.”

I laughed and said, “That’s right. I came here to attend the Royal Knight Academy. I’ve never seen earth dragons before. They are truly impressive.”

The soldier wore an expression of reverence and respectfully said, “In the future you will surely become a member of the Earth Dragon Corps.”

Walking into the Xiuda city, everywhere in the city was bustling with noise and excitement. I only asked once and heard the directions to the Royal Knight Academy. Arriving at the academy’s gate, just as I was just about to enter, a guard barred the way.

He politely said, “Hello sir, may I ask who you are looking for?”

I promptly said, “Hello, I am a graduate from the Aixia Kingdom’s Royal Intermediate Magic Academy, on behalf of Principal Lao Lun Di to come and look for your academy’s principal Li Ke Wen.”

“So you actually came from Aixia Kingdom, I’ll bring you to go see the principal.” He said straightforwardly.

“Then I will thank you.” He explained to another guard, then brought me inside the knight academy. The first thing I saw entering the gate were a pair of statues of swift, noble horses. It seems that these are the knights’ emblem. The guard and I turned seven corners and moved through eight school buildings and several large training grounds, arriving at the corner of the academy. This environment is truly good. It was like a small forest; you rarely see so many plants growing. At the center of the forest, there was a small courtyard, at the center of the courtyard there was a small room. Without even being nearby, I heard people talking.

A bold and angry voice said, “How are you so stupid? Don’t use inflexible strikes, use what you’ve learned creatively. If you continue to practice so inflexibly you will forever be unable to become a radiant knight. Damnably stupid.”

A different bright and respectful voice replied, “Yes, Teacher.”

“It’s like I’m with an idiot. Come, again.”

I asked the guard, “What is this all about?”

The guard smiled saying, “The Great Principal is teaching his disciple. Let’s go over.”

In my heart, I was somewhat terrified, “Will it be alright if we disturb them?”

Just as I let out my voice, the bold voice from the small, inner courtyard pieced it, “Who is it? Did I not command to disallow anyone casually disturb me?”

The guard respectfully said, “Great Principal, Aixia Kingdom’s Great Lao Lun Di has sent a person to come find you.”

“Oh? Quickly come over.”

I entered the courtyard with the guard. There were two people inside. One was an elderly man with a height exceeding two meters and a dragon’s beard. He was wearing tight fitting warrior’s clothing and held a wooden sword. At his side was an adolescent that appeared not much different than me. He was a bit taller than me. His upper body was bright red and displayed strong, rugged muscle. It seems that a moment ago they were exchanging blows with wooden swords.

I quickly walked in front of the old man and deeply paid my respects. I lowered my head and respectfully said, “Teacher Li Ke Wen, Hello. I am Zhang Gong Wei, a graduate from the Aixia Kingdom’s Royal Intermediate Magic Academy. I was entrusted by Teacher Di to come and meet you.”

Teacher Wen looked from head to toe and said with a smile, “Lao Lun that old fellow, I thought he had already forgotten about me. You’re his disciple? Even now there are still people that are willing to learn his lousy light magic. It seems your aptitude is not bad but it isn’t equal to my learned martial skills, haha.”

A very straightforward character, however his words made me somewhat embarrassed. Neither humbly nor arrogantly, I said, "Teacher Di's light magic is still quite ferocious. Like your martial skills, they each have their own merits. Excuse me, this student cannot put this off any further. Here is a letter from Teacher Di. Please look at it."

Teacher Wen took the letter and said, "Don't speak so formally. It is awkward for me to hear. I'll look at what Teacher Di wrote." He quickly finished reading the letter and once again looked at me from head to toe. Looking at my straight hair, he finally said, "Old Di wrote that he had much confidence in you, said you were a magic genius. I don't know how much of a genius though."

I didn't dare reply, fearing a reply would badly excite the fiery temperament of the old man. It was actually his apprentice that helped me out of the predicament. "Master, a guest arrived, won't you invite him into the room to rest? You're frightening him."

"Hehe, right. You youngsters will be very intimate in the future, huh? Walk. Let's enter the room. Guard, you can return."

We entered the wooden room. Teacher Wen inquired from me how Teacher Di was doing. From his questions, I felt that he and Teacher Di had a deep friendship.

Teacher Wen said, "Oh that's right. I still haven't given you an introduction. This is my disciple, Dong Ri Huo. He's half elf. He's a kid that keenly feels teacher's temperament, hehe."

Dong Ri felt a bit embarrassed by Teacher Wen's words. I nodded at him, saying, "Hello. Please take care of me in the future." He gave a warm smile in return.

# Chapter 16: Physical Training

“Come on, let’s chat while we eat.” We arrived at the principal’s exclusive dining room. At first, I was a bit nervous and ate the food bit by bit. But when I saw what Teacher Wen looked like when eating, I felt that my previous image was simply too elegant.

Teacher Wen had one foot up on his chair and was noisily, madly scooping up food into his mouth, making food fly all over the place. Dong Ri gave me a sheepish smile. I heard Teacher Wen’s voice: “Zhang Gong, why aren’t you eating. Quick, eat some more.”

After hearing Teacher Wen’s encouragement, I’ll definitely be blunt. I started sweeping up food like a tornado. From morning until now, I’ve only eaten some traveling rations. I’ve been hungry enough to die for a long time. Now it was their turn to be dumbstruck. In the short time Teacher Wen wasn’t paying attention, I’ve already cleared off more than half the food on the table.

“Wah, this kid. Has Lao Lun been starving you so much, that you came over here to balance it out?” Teacher Wen teased me.

Now that I’ve already started eating, I can’t resume being polite. I’ll eat until I’m full before I’ll consider it again. With my mouth full, I muffledly answered: “Teacher Wen, if you don’t hurry up and eat, you’ll be hungry later.”

“Ah! Dong Ri, eat quickly. He’s eating too fast, we won’t get anything to eat if we don’t hurry up.”

How can we still chat while eating like this, it’s literally just like a competition. By the time all the food was cleared, I reckon I was the only one who was full. Teacher Wen grudgingly said: “Looks like we need to make more food in the future. Old Di sent me a rice bucket.”

[YunZhi TL Note: rice bucket – someone who eats a lot]

After returning to the log cabins, Teacher Wen said: “Ah, Zhang Gong. From now on you’ll live with Dong Ri in the house on the left. Old Di let me train you for half a year. Will you be able to persevere?” I saw a bit of

craftiness in his eyes. Looks like my life's going to get difficult. Then I must not embarrass Teacher Di. I resolutely answered: "No problem. I will certainly persevere." Inwardly I believe that, with the foundations I learned from Big Brother, I will definitely be able to cope with whatever comes up.

We started to idly chat. From our conversations, I learned that Teacher Wen is a radiant knight and Dong Ri is an earth knight. Underneath Dong Ri's blonde hair was his unique characteristic as a half-elf – pointy ears (half-elves are very rare, they are the results of when a human and an elf mate. They have humans' intelligence as well as elves' talent. Take Dong Ri as an example, he has a human's structure but an elf's face. Elves are all very handsome, on this point Dong Ri makes me admit my inferiority. I know that in terms of talent, he's certainly not any worse than me. It's just that he wasn't as lucky as I was, hehe). Teacher Wen said that Dong Ri's archery skills are ancestral skills. They are extremely powerful, he even admits his inferiority in this aspect.

I accidentally said: "Dong Ri's archery skills are that good. If he learned some magic to make some magical arrows, then it will be even more powerful."

They both stopped talking and were looking at me weirdly. Dong Ri's eyes were also showing boundless desire. I asked: "What, was what I said wrong?"

For the first time, Teacher Wen started to get serious and said: "No, what you said couldn't be truer. If you didn't come, I was going to have Dong Ri go to Old Di to get him to teach him some magic. Now that you've come, you two can learn from each other. In exchange, I will also teach you some martial arts."

I said smiling: "Don't be so serious sir. Brother Dong Ri and I certainly won't let you and Teacher Di down."

Starting from the next day, Teacher Wen had me do physical training with Dong Ri. Teacher Wen had very rigid requirements, even harsher than Big Bro Zhan Hu. If not for the fact that I had a certain amount of

foundation, I would have collapsed long ago. Teacher Wen even praised me saying that my physical ability isn't like a mage's. How could he possibly known that I've already been training for two months?

I was finally able to rest in the afternoon. Originally, Teacher Wen also wanted to teach me battle spirit, but I told him that I've already learned some battle spirit from a friend and didn't want to change it. Teacher Wen wanted me to show him, but I muddled through by saying that my friend didn't want me to show it to other people. Teacher Wen got a bit angry and said that he won't bother with me anymore then. The next day, he increased the level of my physical training by a lot. Nearly killed me.

That's good. The Ascending Dragon's Judgement truly is a good battle spirit cultivation method. I only need to sit down and meditate for a while then my physical strength will be restored. My magic power seemed to have reached a bottleneck. I couldn't find a method to continue advancing but I had this feeling of being enriched. However, I sensed that with my current strength, I could even move the mountains and fill the seas. My magic power was like the unceasing torrent of the Yangtze River.

[Ruze TL Note: The raw said 长江大河 which means a long and large river. However, 长江 could also be the Yangtze River. I chose to go with the Yangtze River instead of long and large river.]

I used the same method that I used to teach Big Brother Zhan Hu to teach Dong Ri light magic. His acceptance was even quicker than that of Zhan Hu. When I experienced his sword techniques, I could only describe them as frightening. It is said that within 800 meters, relying on his keen sight he could cut off the right wing of a housefly without even touching the left wing. Teacher Wen had exaggerated that with one glance, Dong Ri could identify the father and mother of a housefly. Dong Ri's personality is rather easygoing. A few parts of his character are quite similar to mine. Although we haven't known each other for a long time, we've already become exceptionally good friends.

Evening was the best part of the day for us because we could go out and have fun.

Time goes by so fast. I've already been in Xiuda city for over a month. Today, Dong Ri and I went out to play. We were just outside the academy when someone called out to Dong Ri.

"Big brother Dong Ri." A delicate voice floated over.

Dong Ri and I turned around at the same time. A red-haired girl approached us, maybe younger than us by a year (I'm two months older than Dong Ri). She had big, watery eyes and very long hair. I poked Dong Ri and whispered to him: "Your girlfriend?"

Dong Ri's face immediately went red. He hurriedly explained: "No, we're just ordinary friends." I teased: "Really? Doesn't look like it. Hehe."

At this point, that red-haired girl already arrived in front of us and said to Dong Ri: "Big brother Dong Ri, long time no see. Is Teacher Wen being too strict? You seemed to have lost weight." Wow, she's this concerned about him and he still says she's not his girlfriend.

Dong Ri muttered: "Hello Miss Hua Lun."

Miss Hua Lun angrily said: "Didn't I already tell you, don't call me Miss Hua Lun. Call me Hong Xue okay. Eh, who is this?" She had only noticed me now, am I really that insignificant? I'm practically being regarded as air.

"Hua Lun, ah, no, Hong Xue. He is my friend, a student of a friend of Teacher Wen's. He studies magic."

I smiling said: "Hello Miss Hua Lun, I am Zhang Gong Wei. "

She also replied kindly, "Hello, I'm Hong Xue Hua Lun. It's a pleasure to meet you."

I said to Dong Ri: "Dong Ri I still have some things to do. You and Miss Hua Lun talk, I'll go ahead." I speedily slipped away without waiting for Dong Ri's reply. Haha, let's give this kid a chance.

## Chapter 17: Orphan Dong Ri

As she watched me leave, Miss Hua Lun said to Dong Ri: "Oh, your friend is so considerate. He left so quickly."

Dong Ri complained in his heart, what kind of friend is he? He escaped without me. This time I've been ensnared by Hong Xue and won't be able to escape for a while.

Leaving aside how Dong Ri dealt with Hong Xue, I wandered around the main streets leisurely after I separated with them. As I wandered around the streets, I suddenly noticed that there were many people gathered ahead of me. What are they up to? I couldn't help but be curious with my juvenile temperament, so I walked over to take a look. It turns out it was an announcement. I squeezed to the front of the crowd. On the announcement it was written that next month there would be a nation wide grand tournament. They're inviting experts from all over to come and participate. It wasn't limited to martial arts, that is to say that magic was also allowed. The top 10 people can directly join the Earth Dragon Corps. I wasn't really interested in it since I already had a Five Clawed Golden Dragon. Naturally I wouldn't be interested in fake dragons.

I returned to the academy to discover that Dong Ri still hasn't returned. I asked Teacher Wen about the competition I read about in the announcement.

Teacher Wen asked me: "You're participating Zhang Gong? Ah, this is a great opportunity for you." 让

I shook my head and said, "I'm not participating. Everyone else is a knight and I'll be the only mage. What's the point? Besides, I don't want to join the Earth Dragon Corps. It would be better for you to have Dong Ri participate."

It was only now that Teacher Wen noticed that Dong Ri hadn't returned with me. "Where did Dong Ri go?"

I gave him a mysterious smile. "Him ahhh. He's fine. He's on a date with that girl Hong Xue Hua Lun."

Teacher Wen knitted his eyebrows. “So it’s actually that girl Hong Xue.”

“You also know about her?” I asked.

“Of course I know. She’s His Majesty’s niece. The child of the king’s younger sister. Ever since I attended a banquet at the royal household with Dong Ri, she would always come to bother Dong Ri. I feared that she would affect Dong Ri’s studies so I made sure he avoided her as much as possible.”

“This is where you’re wrong. Both men and women have to marry. How could you stand in the way of other’s love?” I said with a giggle.

“You brat. You’re not the least bit serious at all, just like that old fellow Lao Yun. Hmph! Wait until I ask Dong Ri when he gets back.” Ah, Dong Ri. You can’t blame me. I didn’t do it on purpose.

After an a little bit more than an hour, Dong Ri returned. As soon as he entered he was greeted by Teacher Wen’s repulsive face. “Teacher, I’m back.”

“Hmph! You still know to come back. There’s nothing good to be said about your martial skill yet you still go and court girls. You’ve made me lose face.”

Dong Ri wasn’t acting like how I imagined at all. Instead of admitting his mistake in fear and trepidation, he faintly said: “I’m an orphan, and the other person is royal blood. What qualifications do I have to court her? I’m going to go rest now.” (Dong Ri was picked up by Teacher Wen when he was small. Since then he has followed Teacher Wen.) After saying this, he turned around and went to his room, leaving Teacher Wen to glare at my small eyes with his big eyes. Teacher Wen said: “This child, how can he be like this? Ah, he’s never contradicted me before.”

I thought it over for a bit before speaking. “He is surely feeling wronged because he feels inferior. You can be relieved. I’ll go console him. I must also accept some of the responsibility for this matter. I shouldn’t have abandoned him earlier.”

When I returned to the room, I discovered Dong Ri sitting in the corner

staring into space foolishly. I walked in front of him and asked: “What’s going on Dong Ri? Who’s bullying you? It was my bad, I shouldn’t have abandoned you there.”

Dong Ri indifferently responded: “It’s not about you.”

“Then what’s the matter? Don’t be like this all right? I’m also a commoner, how about that? Let others say what they will.” I used my strength to shake his shoulders.

Suddenly, Dong Ri violently pushed me away as he roared: “Even if you’re a commoner, you still have a mother and father! What do I have? I don’t have anything at all. I’m an orphan. Do you know what they say about me? They say I’m a mixed breed. A mixed breed. Did you know?”

At this moment, Teacher Wen rushed in from outside and tightly hugged Dong Ri. “Child, don’t be like this. You still have me. I’m your closest relative now.” It seemed Dong Ri found some comfort within Teacher Wen’s embrace for he soon burst into tears. Embracing him, Teacher Wen couldn’t help but release his tears too.

“Child, tell me. Who said you’re a mixed breed? Tell me.” Teacher Wen emitted an ice-cold murderous spirit as he said this. I was convinced that if a name came out of Dong Ri’s lips, Teacher Wen would immediately pounce on that person and chop him up. Maybe Dong Ri also knew what would happen if he said anything, so instead he wept and said, “You don’t need to ask.”

“Tell me.” Teacher Wen had tightly grabbed onto Dong Ri’s shoulders. I immediately ran over from the side, grabbing Teacher Wen’s hands and said, “Teacher Wen, you don’t need to bother with this matter anymore. If you take any action people will say that you’re the big taking advantage of the young. Let us younger people settle our own disputes. I will certainly go with Dong Ri to demand justice.” I also had a monstrous fury bubbling forth within me. They actually dared to bully my friend, it seems they’ve lived long enough.

It was only due to this that Teacher Wen gradually became more and more calm. He said with a sigh: “Zhang Gong, then I’ll request that you

please do so.”

I coldly answered, “You might not know, but before I arrived, my magic power has already reached the rank of a magister.” If I want to increase his confidence in me, I can’t conceal my strength from him.

Teacher Wen and Dong Ri were both stunned. Such a young magister! Who could possibly accept that?

Thinking that they still weren’t convinced, powerful light elements surged forth as I brought out the transparent gold dan from my upper dantian. After revolving around me for a bit, it stopped at my upper dantian. This is one of light magic’s most direct and powerful spells, a pure energy attack.

It seems Dong Ri had already forgotten about his shame when he said: “Ah, you’re so powerful Zhang Gong.”

I withdrew the magic and resolutely told Dong Ri: “Good little brother, tomorrow we’ll go find those that bullied you and get your revenge. Are we not also people? In the future we will certainly be able to create a career for ourselves.”

My words seemed to have allowed Dong Ri to pull himself together. He tightly gripped my hands. All of our words had been said.

After Teacher Wen left to go rest, I inquired from Dong Ri what the matter was. While clenching his teeth, he told me about what happened during their encounter.

It turns out that after I left, Hong Xue ensnared Dong Ri and forced him to accompany her for a walk. Not long after, they came across a noble’s child. No matter if they were the son of a duke or an earl, they all tried to court Hong Xue. She truly is a femme fatale. It was only natural that they were extremely jealous of Dong Ri who was able to accompany Hong Xue. They immediately began spouting evil words at him. All sorts of vulgar words were thrown at him. From his childhood, Dong Ri had never had much contact with others and he also wouldn’t strike back. It was only after Hong Xue retaliated on his behalf that he would angrily fight the nobles and run back, sulking.

## Chapter 18: Taking the Initiative to Provoke

“Dong Ri, Rest assured. Tomorrow I will definitely go with you to seize justice from them.”

I made us meditate together. Like this, we quickly entered the land of dreams. Tomorrow I will definitely speak out for him.

Early morning, when Dong Ri and I woke up and was just about to start our body strengthening exercises, Teacher Wen stopped us. Teacher Wen said, “Today I am giving you the day off. Rest well.” Saying this, he turned around and left.

Dong Ri and I looked at each other with surprise. We both knew that Teacher Wen gave us this time in order to take revenge. This is great. I immediately urged Dong Ri to quickly change his clothes, so that we could go find that gang of despicable fellows and get revenge.

“Principal, Is Elder Principal here?” A familiar voice came from outside the room and I quickly ran out to look. It turned out to be the gate guard.

I smiled and said, “Elder Brother Guard, What business do you have? I think Teacher left to inspect the academy.”

“Ah, so it’s Zhang Gong. It’s not good. Something big happened. Duke Bi Qi Zhu brought several Earl Elders to come see the Principal. It looks like something terrible is approaching. I don’t know what’s going on. They’ve brought their own clan’s future generation. Altogether there are about a hundred or so in total. Their relentless demands is slowly eroding away the gate’s guards.” He said while panting. The guard looked very worried.

Ah? Impossible. We still haven’t gone to take revenge. Unexpectedly they actually came to get revenge against us. Although they have infuriated me, I calmly said, “Elder Brother Guard, first go into the academy and find Teacher Wen. Dong Ri and I will go to the gates and take a look.”

Dong Ri and I arrived at the academy gate with the speed of lightning. Damn! It was truly noisy, just like a market. A large group of people were

crowding at the academy gate. Dong Ri pulled on my ear and quietly whispered into it, “Zhang Gong, look. Those brats over there are the noble children I hit yesterday.”

I thought to myself, little brother, you can really hit. All those you hit were the children of government officials. It’d be useless to say anything now. Together, Dong Ri and I walked over. Dong Ri didn’t dare to say anything, so I took the initiative to yell, “Everyone quiet down! What happened? What troubled you so much that you came to disturb the knight academy?”

A bloated fatty that could not have walked more slowly came over and said, “Who are you? Tell your principal to come out and talk. I am Bi Qi Zhu.” Although he was very fat, , I sensed from the radiance in his eyes that the duke was not a simple person, but was actually a master.

I politely said, “Hello Duke Elder. I am a student at this academy. Bringing so many people to this academy’s gate, I fear this has caused a rather bad disturbance. When Principal Wen is satisfied he will come out. Could you wait at the side of the road for a moment?”

He wrinkled his brow and frowned, saying, “What clan are you from? I’ve never seen you before. Are you a commoner?”

I nodded, “That’s right. I was born from commoners.” Without waiting for me to finish, he interrupted me, “So it turns out you were such a lowly peasant. You don’t have the privilege to speak to me. Go off to the side.”

Hearing his words, my anger immediately surged, “What’s wrong with commoners? Are commoners not people? Are only you nobles considered people? Without us commoners, what would you nobles eat, drink? Is it not because of your ancestors that your names carry a bit of weight? What is so amazing about that? I will not move out of the way. What could you possibly do to me?”

My words made the commoners present let out a breath of their resentment. The commoners have suffered long enough from the bullying of the nobles. Behind me, Dong Ri continuously pulled on me. Later, I would know that this Bi Qi Zhu snobbishness was extraordinarily large.

My words clearly infuriated him. “Oh good. A filthy peasant dared to oppose me. Men, come teach him a lesson.” This is a populated area. Can he not distinguish this? We have to find a desolate area away from the city. He prematurely called his men to come fight me. His subordinates knew their boss’s intentions and prepared to cripple me for life in order to relieve their boss’s anger.

Dong Ri suddenly came out from behind me and said, “What do you dare to do? This is the knight’s academy. We do not tolerate the disorder you bring.”

Not only did Dong Ri’s appearance prevent me from escaping the trouble but contrarily had gotten himself into trouble. From within the duke’s crowd yelled a person’s voice, “It was him! Yesterday it was him that hit us!”

Bi Qi Zhu glared at Dong Ri and fiercely said, “So it was you who hit my son! Humph! I will give you an ugly death! Come! Surround them for me! Do not let them run!”

Bi Qi Zhu henchmen immediately surrounded us. Our situation was far from good. I sensed that Dong Ri behind me had cowered back a bit. Attentively, I responded to his feelings, “Afraid of what? Have you forgotten I am a magister?” My words greatly increased Dong Ri’s confidence. With a magister, what could you possibly be afraid of? Even if you fought, it would be impossible to lose.

We were surrounded like water in a bucket, with three rows surrounding another three rows. You don’t have to be this extreme. We are only two children. The fat duke sent out orders, “Go. Arrest them for me.” It seems he wants to find a proper place to “punish” us. Although the masses were dissatisfied and infuriated by the conduct of nobles bullying commoners, but with Bi Qi’s large forces they dared not to speak out.

“Who dares to try?” I am truly furious. My past temperament had always made me avoid conflict. Maybe it was because my current strength is exceptionally powerful and also because they’ve bullied us too much, that I was at the end of my patience. I’ve decided that I would no

longer run but would instead battle of life and death.

I secretly chanted an incantation to protect Dong Ri and I from within. A layer of faint white light wrapped around us like a ring. Apart from Dong Ri, everyone had thought it was battle spirit. It was actually my spell, Divine Halo.

Bi Qi was very surprised, and thought to himself, these two brats are truly powerful. No wonder they could hit my son. It is a good that I've brought many people. "Everyone, together! I don't believe they can block all of us."

"Truly shameless. You have to use this many to defeat us?" I said with disdain.

Hearing my words, most of the men that Bi Qi brought had ceased their advance. It seems they still greatly value their honor. A knight's spirit is deeply rooted into their minds. It will be much easier this way.

I chanted, "Oh great light elements, my friends, I request of you to let out an endless radiance." This is a rank 5 light attack spell. Its appearance was exceptionally scary to others, even though the spell's attack potential was not every strong.

Following my chant, a dazzling white light burst out from my body, enveloping a range of 50 meters. The thugs approaching within 10 meters of me were thrown far away. A few of the weaker thugs suffered heavy injuries.

I coldly snorted, "Whoever no longer wishes to live, do not hesitate to come over. Lets see if us brothers can put this worthless lot into order."

The people present don't dare move. Bi Qi seeing this situation go amiss, swayingly walked to the front, his slender small eyes on his chubby face were already blinded forming two slits, "What you had just used was magic? Fine brats, it seems I have underestimated you. I will let you look at my strength. Know that my dukedom was not a product of coincidence. Humph!"

As his voice fell, I felt the pressure on my body increase. The Duke's

small stature let out grandeur that reached to the sky. This is far too unthinkable. Don't tell me, could it be....?"

The Duke's words confirmed my notions. He proudly said, "You didn't expect that I was actually a radiant knight from my appearance did you? In Xiuda, strength is not limited to one's own appearance."

## Chapter 19: Revealing the Enemy's Weakness

I composed myself. I was barely able to suppress the fear I felt within my heart. I felt that if I truly fought him, the outcome would be disastrous. The rank of radiant knight is on the same level as a magister. I definitely cannot be careless. I secretly adjusted my magic power so it was in peak condition.

Bi Qi saw a different scene before him. At first, Bi Qi smiled when he saw me turn pale under his pressure, thinking that evidently I wasn't able to resist it. Suddenly, a halo of faint white light emerged from my body, completely suppressing the pressure he had previously emitted. He couldn't help but think to himself: 'This brat. Could it be.... he actually has the strength to contend with me? Then doesn't that mean he has the strength of a magister? It's unimaginable for someone so young to possess such strength!'

At the moment, we were standing opposite of each other. I heard a sound coming from my side. The sound was different from the spiritual communication of magic, it was created by using a string. Therefore I was the only one who could hear its contents. It was Teacher Wen's voice. He said impatiently: "Quickly stop resisting Zhang Gong. Don't let him sense your strength. Quickly!"

My heart jumped in alarm. That's right! It truly would be unwise for me to expose my strength. I gradually willed my magic power to withdraw into me. Once again, my face showed an expression as if I couldn't endure his pressure.

Bi Qi was relieved. He thought that my strength was short-lived and my real strength was far weaker. Right as I was about to act, his old foe appeared.

"Oh! What kind of wind could have blown the Duke all the way over here? Hehe. Ah, what are you doing here with such a large amount of troops?" Teacher Wen's words weren't at all like his ferocious outer appearance. On the contrary, they were unusually smooth.

After seeing that Teacher Wen had arrived, Bi Qi reluctantly withdrew his pressure. He cynically said: "I was wondering if this old ghost would come out. I'm here to get justice from you, not to idly gossip."

Feigning astonishment, Teacher Wen inquired: "Justice? What justice? Ah, I haven't offended you, the duke."

The fat on the duke's face began trembling before he replied furiously: "You don't know? Your disciple beat up someone yet you don't know? Today, you must give me an explanation for this. Your disciple beat up my son in addition to many other nobles yesterday. Tell me then. What is to be done?"

Awkwardly, Teacher Wen replied: "Right, it seemed like there was this kind of report. However, it was told to me differently. The disciple said it was the noble children who insulted him first. It was only after being insulted that he acted. Ethics would say that they provoked him first."

It seemed Bi Qi has calmed down a bit as not a single emotion was revealed on his face. Those who knew him well would know that he was truly angry now. He coldly said: "That is to say, you want to shield your disciple."

Teacher Wen still had a good temperament, so he could ask with a smile: "Can you let me see your son's condition first?"

Without even waiting for Bi Qi to speak, a luxuriously dressed youth came running out of the crowd. He shrewdly said: "You see, you see! He hit my face!" While saying so, he revealed his fat face to everyone.

Teacher Wen as well as all of the surrounding observers laughed. It turns out that this youngster had been slapped, thus leaving a palm print on his face. Ah, it looks like Dong Ri's hands were really light yesterday. Originally I thought he had beaten him up otherwise why would he bring so many people to carry out his revenge? I secretly tugged on Dong Ri's clothes and whispered to him: "Ah, your hands are so light!" He replied: "But I can't freely injure others either. It's enough to give them a lesson."

Teacher Wen said to Bi Qi: "I see that your esteemed son's injuries aren't that grave. Is it truly necessary for the Duke to muster such large

forces for this matter? This is the Royal family's highest level of knight academy after all." Clearly, within these words was a hidden threat.

Bi Qi angrily kicked his fat son's ass back into the crowd. He hatefully said: "You scoundrel bastard! Who let you enter this world? You've actually made me lose so much face!" He turned his head to Teacher Wen and said: "You refrained from pressuring me today so if you give me an explanation for this matter today I'll leave it at that."

Teacher Wen restrained himself from smiling and coldly said: "Then what are you thinking of doing? Your son abused my disciple. Don't tell me... you still want my disciple to apologize? I didn't go looking for justice from you, yet you, the guilty party came to me. You thought I was easy to bully didn't you?" Following Teacher Wen's words, a mob of students led by teachers from every branch rushed forth from the academy. These students were all pillars that supported the kingdom. Not a single one of them was weak let alone the academy's teachers who were all at least earth knights. With such strength, I fear only the Earth Dragon Corps could contend with them. (Authors note: A rule of the Xiuda Kingdom. Every single noble may possess a military force in accordance to their rank. A prince can possess 5000 troops, a duke 3000, an earl 2000 while all other nobles may possess 1000 troops at most. On the other hand, the knight academy possessed 8000 or so students. This was one of the reason why Teacher Wen wasn't afraid of Bi Qi at all.)

Bi Qi's complexion changed. "Fine. You're too cruel. We'll take this matter to his majesty to judge. What does it matter how many come to pressure me?"

Teacher Wen disdainfully replied: "You have less people. If you're going then go. I'm not afraid of you." Teacher Wen had already been conferred the position of "Teacher of the State". Within Xiuda, this position possessed incredible fame and influence. Because he undertook a project to provide the best education, the knight academy became an official organization recognized by the kingdom. Although the title he was granted fell short of Bi Qi's, within Xiuda he wasn't at all weaker than Bi Qi.

Bi Qi had all the nobles go back and wait for his message. Teacher Wen also dismissed all of the academy's people. Before he left, he used a voice string to tell me to not take any action if he didn't return and to watch after Dong Ri.

Actually, ever since we saw Bi Qi's true strength, me and Dong Ri had some laments. We didn't expect that a person like the duke had such profound martial skills. Who would have imagined that within the nobility there was such a capable person? Of course we wouldn't rashly go take revenge anymore. Of course, Dong Ri took some persuading before he gradually released his emotions. Other people said to let his words out. There was no need to be angry and suffer.

Bi Qi and Teacher Wen went to the Royal Palace to have judgement. Neither of them gave each other an inch. On the other hand, me and Dong Ri could only return to our rooms and wait anxiously. Even the gluttonous me didn't go eat. It was only when Dong Ri comforted that I felt better "Be at ease. With Teacher Wen's relationship with the kingdom, there surely won't be any problems."

Sure enough, after a little more than an hour Teacher Wen returned. However, he looked displeased.

## Chapter 20: A Battle of Honor

I immediately went over and asked, “What is going on? Could it be that His Majesty had sided with the Duke?” With an anxious gaze, Dong Ri looked at Teacher Wen.

Teacher Wen sighed and said, “It will not be like that. His Majesty is a very wise monarch and very shrewd as well. If he were to hit fifty slabs, not one strike would be different.\*

[ED note: Basically means that the king is very impartial.]

“Then why do I see you having such an unhappy appearance?” I inquired.

Teacher Wen replied, “Although His Majesty did not discriminate against any party, he has given me a difficult task. He will have me send a troop of students from the academy branch in order to compete in Xiuda’s five year national martial competition. Bi Qi will also have to send a single rank of troops. In addition, this affair will be resolved by seeing which dispatched troop receives the higher ranking. The winning party will have the losing party apologize in public.”

“Ah? So it’s decided like that.” That’s a bit unreasonable. We truly were the just party.

“Zhang Gong, you wouldn’t know. Bi Qi has an exceptional amount of influence in Xiuda. His Majesty had no choice but to yield to him to some degree. Furthermore, because of Xiuda’s prevalent martial traditions, many affairs are decided based on the result of a martial competition.” Teacher Wen said with significance.

Dong Ri interrupted, saying, “Then we won’t have to worry. Our academy has many powerful students. How could we possibly be afraid of Bi Qi?” Indeed, because of our strength, we could even rival the nobles.

Teacher Wen wrinkled his brow and said, “That is exactly what I am worried about. Bi Qi was adamant on the two of you participating. He will also send his eldest son to participate in this tournament. Each team in the competition must have five members. Although the academy

students' strength isn't weak, their age is comparatively young. It is impossible for them to have deeply cultivated their strength, but Bi Qi does not have that problem. It is said that his eldest son is awfully hard to deal with."

I curled my lips, "What good could that fat hog possibly produce? Take his young, idiotic son for example."

Teacher Wen gravely rebuked me, "Zhang Gong, you cannot look down on your opponents. You should know about Xiuda's most ferocious Earth Dragon Corps. His son is the second corps chief of the three Earth Dragon Corps. This isn't a position that can be obtained through bribes and influence. His eldest son this year is thirty eight years old and is already Xiuda's genius knight. At the age of thirty he was already a heaven knight. Second only to the previous Earth Dragon's third corps commander the Imperial Prince Qi Lu Xiuda, known as the Zhan Hu (War Tiger), Son of Jing Yun Xiuda."

Ah? Isn't that Big Brother? That being said, the duke's eldest son isn't any weaker than Big Brother.

Teacher Wen continued, "These past eight years, only the heavens know whether or not he was able to become a radiant knight. Although Zhang Gong has a magister's strength, in the end his cultivated experience is comparatively short. In addition, we don't know what other experts Bi Qi will dispatch. Therefore, I am truly worried about this competition."

In my mind, I felt nervous. Although becoming a radiant knight isn't an easy matter, nothing is absolute. But if the five people on the opposing team possesses Big Brother's strength, then we are determined to lose.

While I was waging war in my mind, Dong Ri started talking. He said passionately, "Teacher, be at ease. No matter the cost, we will surely obtain the final victory. We are the righteous party. It is unconditional; we cannot let them have their way."

Dong Ri's words influenced me, "Right, we will definitely win."

Teacher Wen smiled and said to Dong Ri, "Foolish child, what would you know of righteousness. Only the strong are just. To defeat the nobles

is to defeat evil. Besides, from a fundamental point, Bi Qi isn't such a villain. It is only that he has many faults, nothing more."

Dong Ri and I looked at each other in dismay, I said, "He isn't regarded as a villain even with that behavior?"

Teacher Wen chuckled and said, "You two are still young and far too naive. In this world there are no absolute villains. Neither are there any absolutely good people. There are only those with different ideas. That is why regardless of how small a good is, don't forsake it and no matter how small an evil is, don't commit it. With regards to Bi Qi, it is only that he is somewhat obstinate. He has a strong notion of his clan and is somewhat protective. But when facing issues of right or wrong, he can still choose the correct choice. Can you still call him bad?"

Teacher Wen's words deeply moved me, establishing the future philosophy that would undertake.

"Those were words spoken before. If you are satisfied then participate in the competition. Even if you were to train it would be too late. I can select the three strongest students at this academy to participate with you. In these coming days I will have you five people get used to each other. I demand that you ensure yourselves to be in your peak condition. Fight to obtain a high rank. In fact even if you lose it wouldn't matter. At worst I would have to have to thicken my face skin and find Bi Qi and acknowledge I was wrong. He shouldn't bother me about it too much."

After finishing, Teacher Wen laughed at himself. When I heard a hint of bitterness inside his words. He clearly isn't very optimistic toward us. Dong Ri and I secretly resolved that we must beat Bi Qi's troop. Teacher Wen was at such an old age, and additionally he exceptionally valued face like most of Xiuda's people. We absolutely cannot allow this old man to suffer humiliation.

"It is done. Today was very tiring. Rest a bit earlier. Tomorrow morning, I will find teammates for you, and have you train and get familiar with each other. Dong Ri, who I am most worried about is you. Your strength is still comparatively weak to the opposition. Train with great effort."

Saying this, Teacher Wen went back to his own room.

Finished eating dinner, Dong Ri and I practiced in the courtyard. I muttered to him, “Dong Ri, this competition will definitely be arduous. I believe you should fully display your advantage.”

Dong Ri curiously asked, “I have an advantage?”

I smiled and said, “Of course you do. Your advantage is indeed ferocious. It is your bow and arrow.”

Hearing my words, he despaired, saying, “Bow and arrow? I am only accurate, my strength is not at all strong. It is of no use against an expert.”

I said profoundly, “How could it possibly be useless? What I want is exactly your accuracy. We can use magic arrows.” Saying this, I quietly whispered [sweet nothings] my plan into his ear. His wrinkled brows gradually unfolded.

Dong Ri smiled and hit me with a fist, “Luckily you thought of that. Now we can handle them. In these two days we must diligently practice our coordination.”

I nervously said, “Lower your voice. This is our secret weapon.”

Dong Ri covered his mouth with his hand. His comical action made me hold my sides as I laughed. Only then did he know I was playing with him. He came over and noisily laughed with me.

Teacher Wen silently looked at us from the front window and couldn't help but faintly shake his head and said to himself, “Youngsters truly don't know the feeling of worry. I don't even know if they have any secret abilities.”

After all, what kind of secret ability was it? Let us find out in the competition.

## Chapter 21: New Teammates

Me and Dong Ri woke up early in the morning. Thinking back on the results of last night's practice, we couldn't help but smile. We were brimming with confidence in regards to the tournament. We didn't see Teacher Wen in the house; maybe he went to go look for some teammates for us. I was also looking forward to having new teammates.

Waiting was the best way to get annoyed. It wasn't until noon that Teacher Wen returned. "Have you found some teammates for us? How come you were gone for so long?" I grumbled.

Teacher Wen smiled and said, "I see that you are anxious, but I'm even more anxious! I had to screen them; only the most suitable teammates will do. Hehe."

"So you're saying you've already found some suitable candidates? Who are they?" I eagerly asked.

"I told them to come report in the afternoon since we have to eat lunch first. Once they're here, we'll go over the tournaments rules and system again. You two can go practice for a bit before we eat. Just don't tire yourselves out. The most important thing is to be in optimal condition. You won't have a breakthrough in such a short amount of time."

"Oh. Then we'll go practice ." I said dissatisfied as I dragged Dong Ri off to practice.

Soon, it was afternoon. We were currently in the house resting when we heard some people shouting. "Xiu Si Ma Li, Xing Ao Li Si and Gao De Jin, reporting for duty!" It seems our teammates have arrived.

Teacher Wen replied: "Good. Come in." I quickly ran out of the room with Dong Ri to welcome our new teammates.

All three of them had differing appearances. Two of them were exceptionally tall, exceeding two meters in height and possessed a sturdy body. Although they weren't handsome, you could tell from their appearances that they had tempered themselves through extremely difficult training. They had a ferocious aura. From head to toe they had

bulging muscles causing them to have a very valiant appearance. They seemed to be about 27 or 28 years old. The last person was a bit shorter, he was only about 180 cms tall, just a bit shorter than me and Dong Ri and appeared formal and cleanly cut. With clear and deep eyes full of wisdom, he looked to be about 24 or 25 years old.

Teacher Wen also came out of the house beaming. “Come, I’ll introduce you guys. This one here is Zhang Gong. He came from Aixia and he’s an expert in magic. Over here is Dong Ri, my disciple. He’s also the weakest out of all of you, so you must take care of each other in the future.”

Teacher Wen pointed at a robust man in red samurai’s clothing. “This is Xing Ao Li Si. His strength is approaching that of a heaven knight’s. He could have graduated long ago, but in order to learn martial skills that are even more profound, he stayed to continue his studies. He’s one of the expert warriors at the academy.”

Dong Ri and I immediately went over to greet him. Although Xing Ao’s etiquette was very thorough, he didn’t really look at me and Dong Ri.

Teacher Wen pointed the other robust man. “This is Gao De Jin. His circumstances are similar to Xing Ao’s. He’s also an expert warrior.”

Indeed, their circumstances really were similar. He didn’t really put me or Dong Ri in his sights either.

Finally, Teacher Wen arrived at the side of the gentle and quiet youth and patted his shoulders. “This is Xiu Si Ma Li. He’s admired by everyone as the number one expert at the academy with the strength of a heaven knight.” He truly did possess a formidable strength. As he was attentively watched me, he took the initiative and stretched his hand out. “Hello, I’m Xiu Si.”

I smiled as I shook his hands. “Hello, I’m Zhang Gong. I welcome you guys as our new members.” After seeing Xing Ao and Gao De standing behind Xiu Si, I knew that Xiu Si was the boss of the three.

Teacher Wen said: “Alright then. For now, you can all go practice and get to know each other. I’ll talk to you all about the tournament later.”

All five of us bowed in salute as Teacher Wen returned to the house.

Without letting me speak, Dong Ri said in rush: "Ah! You're big brother Xiu Si. I've heard of your reputation as the number one expert among the students long ago. Please give guidance to your little brother in the future."

Xiu Si softly said: "I don't dare to give you guidance. We'll mutually help each other in the future instead." Dong Ri could only sheepishly smile in response.

He really does know how to capture people. I don't like these kinds of people. I interjected, "Ah, don't we need to organize a team for the tournament? We need decide on a captain and give the team a name."

Xing Ao directly said, "Why do we need to choose? Obviously the team captain should be Boss Xiu Si."

Xiu Si said with a frown: "Xing Ao, don't speak in your confusion. My ability isn't enough to be the captain."

"How were my words confused boss? With your strength, if you aren't going to be the captain then who is? Don't tell me.... you mean them?" He said as he shot us a glance full of contempt.

So violent. I said with a slight smile, "I hope that we can all talk to each other in a peaceful manner. We all share the goal of surpassing Duke Bi Qi's troops and to ultimately attain the position as champions to win honor for the academy. It would be pointless for us to argue over such a trivial matter. How about this, each of us will exhibit our strengths and whoever is the most powerful will be the captain."

Xiu Si secretly thought to himself, 'He's only a child yet he's so insightful. He must have an uncommon strength.' Thinking this, Xiu Si replied: "That's fine."

Xing Ao and Gao De both took the initiative to forfeit. Dong Ri also forfeited; he didn't have any ambitions within his heart at all. I didn't have any originally either, but in order to prove to them that neither Dong Ri nor I were weak, I must compete with Xiu Si.

Obviously, Xing Ao and Gao De thought I was overestimating myself. Gao De even told me it would be better if I forfeited, otherwise my defeat would be too unsightly.

I ignored them and concentrated on my opponent who was as calm as water, Xiu Si. “Will you be starting or will I?” Xiu Si indifferently replied, “The guest will comply with the host’s rules. I’ll see your strength first. (He meant for me to demonstrate first. I’d reckon that Xiu Si is from the mountains. Haha.”

I bluntly replied, “Yes.” I walked to the center of the courtyard and closed my eyes. I started slowly moving my body, but gradually increased the speed. The whole courtyard gradually became filled with my reflections. Suddenly, my figure stopped moving in the courtyard but instead, there were 10 exact copies of me standing in a circle.

Xing Ao gasped in surprise. “What sort of [witchcraft] trick is this!? Why are there so many people now?”

[Editor DD Note: Burn the witch at the stake!]

[TL Ruze Note: Shhhhhh. Just step into the cauldron.....]

All ten of me said, “This isn’t a trick. This is a type of spatial magic. I created it from short range teleportation magic. Every reflection is me while at the same time they aren’t me.” This was a spell I created using short range teleportation magic as a foundation. It hasn’t ever been seen in Aixia before. Actually, it was just that my teleportation speed was very fast but it required a large amount of magic power to sustain. It was only when I entered the realm of magisters that I was able to use this spell.

## Chapter 22: Radiant Battle Squad

It's only natural I don't solely rely on it. This spell is only used give me enough time to cast larger spells. The ten of me simultaneously chanted, "Oh Great Light Elements, my life's most intimate companions, become the most magnificent halo of light to be shed on this earth." This is the most gentle rank eight spell I can currently use, Brilliant Halo. It is also a sealing spell. This was the first time I used a rank 8 spell.

Following my chant, all ten of me let out a faint golden light. From each and every illusion's body emerged a weak ring of light, encasing everyone present. Aside from Xiu Si, everyone was somewhat shocked. Once they were all covered, they had all stopped, including Dong Ri. By use of his profound battle spirit and quick reflexes, his body let out white heaven battle spirit, withstanding the halo's attack. However this was all useless. The ring of light continued to pursue him and eventually enveloped him.

All ten of me opened our mouths, saying, "If anyone can break through my magic, I will recognize you as team captain. If none of you are able to break through, then I will be team captain."

Dong Ri had immediately given up resisting. So long as one doesn't resist, this spell would only trap you within, without harm. The three new teammates certainly were unable deal with it well. They tried their utmost to struggle, letting out their battle spirit in an attempt to contend with my ring of light. I paid most attention to Xiu Si. His body had almost been entirely covered by the ring of light. It was like a cover of light had trapped him within.

A moment later, no matter how much they had struggled, they were unable to get rid of my spell. This is the gap of strength, the gap between a magister and a heaven knight.

Xiu Si took the initiative to speak, "I concede. I accept senior as the team captain." Hearing their Boss's words, even Gao De and Xing Ao had given up resisting.

I revoked my spell. Xing Ao said, spitting angrily , "You are truly

despicable, launching a sneak attack on us.”

I smiled, saying, “Do you want to try again? This time I’ll let you properly prepare. Let us see if you can avoid it.”

Xing Ao angrily said, “You!” Then turned his head toward Xiu Si, “Boss, you should speak. We can’t let this little demon be our leader.”

Xiu Si had spoken, “Xing Ao, speak of this no more. A man’s worth doesn’t depend on his age. You think too little of Zhang Gong. Even if we had been prepared, we wouldn’t have been able to resist his magic. There is a gap between our strengths. If I haven’t guessed incorrectly, only with a magister’s ability could he use such strength suppressing magic simultaneously on the three of us. Zhang Gong, you are a magister.” That last sentence was directed at me, with the tone of certainty.

I nodded. It wasn’t necessary to hide this from them.

“Fine, we will obey you. Previously I had long felt myself to be a genius. But compared to you, I am still far too lacking. I will strive much harder in the future. When I surpass you, I will take back that title.” Xiu Si said, neither humble nor arrogant. Knowing that I was a magister, neither Xing Ao nor Gao De said anything.

“Good, I will wait for you. I also hope that you accomplish this. Because from now on we are going to be comrades, and we will also be friends,” I said sincerely, gripping his hand. Although Xing Ao and Gao De’s appearances showed they still weren’t convinced, I knew that they had already accepted me in their hearts.

I scratched my head, saying, “Big Brother Xiu Si, you decide what our battle team’s name should be, is this alright?”

For the first time, Xiu Si smiled; his smile was as bright as sunlight. He said smiling, “What spell did you use a moment ago?”

“The spell I had just used was a rank 8 light spell called Brilliant Halo.”

“Then from now on our name will be the Brilliance Team.” Even now, this name receives everyone’s unanimous approval. Xiu Si gave me a feeling that his wisdom had surely outstripped his martial prowess.

Teacher Wen came out. I didn't know if it was by chance or if it was intentional. Our problems settled, the old man's questions arose, "It seems you are all very close. This is very good. I wish for you to later assist each other in carving out a piece of the sky for yourselves. Come over. I'll tell you about the competition."

We formed a semicircle around him. Teacher Wen said, "You will be facing very difficult competition. In this competition, not only will experts from Xiuda participate but a few experts from the Dalu kingdom and Aixia kingdom will also participate. For example, Zhang Gong is a person from Aixia. That is why winning the competition will be a severely difficult task."

He paused and glanced at us before continuing, "First of all, you can compete as a group. I think you won't have many problems with this. Everyone participating isn't weak. In the competition, you can advance through a series of duels and also through team matches. When you come across a powerful team, I recommend you challenge them as a team because Zhang Gong can use his magic. With his powerful magic, you will be able to fully display your strength with a sure advantage. From my investigation, this competition has about 10,000 groups participating, dividing into 1,024 different branches. In each branch, every group will have to undergo ten rounds. Only the branch's champion will advance to the next stage, the knockout competition. Then finally you will move on to the finals.

We've never participated in a competition such as this. Hearing that the competition had so many stages, you would need to gain at least twenty victories in the competition in order to become the champion. It was just like a marathon.

"The competition rules are very simple. All you have to do is fight on the stage. If you're going to lose you can take the initiative to concede. Aside from the being unable to kill anyone, there are no particular restrictions. The competitors can fully display their complete strength. But I must request of you that unless you must, you mustn't injure others. We are people that follow the path of virtue. This is the proper spirit of

us, the Knights of Xiuda.”

Apart from me, the other four earnestly nodded their heads.

“Zhang Gong, in this competition, your position is extremely important. You will primarily provide assistance for everyone’s attacks. If there is a situation where you cannot assist, you should also participate in the attack. I believe that your formidable magic will give us an outstanding performance. I saw your competition a moment ago. While it is true that it is very good for everyone to learn from interaction, you mustn’t injure your allies. From now on, the captain of your team will be Zhang Gong. Xiu Si had made up his mind and I believe in his wisdom.” Teacher Wen nodded at Xiu Si.

Xiu Si did not acknowledge Teacher Wen’s praise. He had only nodded.

“There are still three days before we leave for the competition. I wish for you to properly practice cooperating with each other for the next three days. This combination of yours is very strong. Frankly, I hope that you will save this old face of mine. I also hope that in these upcoming battles your names will spread throughout the lands as brave and chivalrous.”

Together, we let out a loud, strong, and resolute replied, “We will certainly succeed.”

Like this, because of the Child of Light’s command, the first Radiant Battle Squad had been established. Later, during the Child of Light’s adventures, the formidable Brilliance Battle Squad accomplished countless heroic feats.

TL Note: We’re assuming Brilliance is their initial name and they change it to Radiant later.

## Chapter 23: The Grand Xiuda Tournament

Three days passed by in an instant. The Radiant Battle Squad now had a basic understanding of one another. Unfortunately, there wasn't enough time for them to get to know each other better as they were forced to leave for the tournament.

The tournament was being held in Xiuda's largest plaza. The plaza was larger than 10 football\* fields combined. They had built 51 stages in the plaza long ago. Besides the stage in the center meant for the semi-finals and the finals, the rest of the stages were being used to conduct matches. After drawing lots, we were put into the 198th group while Bi Qi's Wind Dragon Battle Squad was put into the 803rd group. We still haven't encountered any members of their squad.

[TL Note: Real football. Not the American kind. Salty.]

[Wavydashen ED Note: A.K.A. "Soccer" to Americans]

The five of us arrived at the stage. Everyone around the stage was part of a battle squad while spectators were located on elevated stands outside of the stage. There were also many newly built pavilions and seats for spectators .

After looking around, I noticed that the majority of the participants were dressed like warriors while only a few people had different professions. I wore the matching uniforms of my squad, white warriors clothing. We planned on hiding my magic as much as possible during the preliminaries.

The tournament rules were explained by the organizers just prior to starting the tournament.. According to the lots we drew, we wouldn't fight until the third match. Judging from their appearances, the first battle had only ordinary warriors on both sides. The most they could manage was to simply chop at each other as there wasn't even a single Earth Knight participating. In the end, the winning squad won 3-2.

The second match was virtually the same. We nearly fell asleep watching these matches before the 198th group's judge finally

announced, “The third match, the Radiant Squad versus the Steel God Soldiers Squad.”

Xing Ao laughed. “Isn’t this Steel God Soldiers Squad actually just a rusty pile of iron?” We all burst into laughter in amusement. Xiu Si said to me, “To save time we’ll directly face off against the other team.”

I nodded in agreement.

We arrived on the stage and stunned the audience with our matching white uniforms and uniformly towering height that was greater than 180 centimeters. From the other side of the elevated stage came the sounds of heavy footsteps. Bang, bang! Damn! They’re exaggerating too much.

The Steel God Soldiers Squad appeared. They really are overbearing! All five were fully equipped with heavy black infantry armor and an average height of more than 2 meters. Combined with their two handed greatswords, it seems they aren’t lightweights after all!

Xiu Si whispered into my ear, “Ah, they’re really calculating. The space on the stage is very limited, so they plan to charge us in an attempt to knock us over and win!”

I answered, “It’s a pity that they encountered us.” We laughed with our hearts brimming with confidence.

Naturally I had to go forward to negotiate with them as the team captain. They happily agreed to a team fight as it was advantageous to them.

The judge announced the start of the battle with a whistle. Immediately, all five Steel God Soldiers brandished their greatswords and rushed us together. While their vigor really was incredible, their speed simply was too slow. Dong Ri, Xiu Si and I didn’t move at all. We just stood at the edge of the stage with Gao De and Xing Ao holding their greatswords in front of us. Xiu Si had told me before the battle, that if it’s possible we should win with the least amount of people.

When the five opponents reached us, Xing Ao welcomed them with a roar as a faint yellow battle spirit enveloped his greatsword. The two

swords crossed and the originally bold and vigorous opponent was blown away by Xing Ao's slash. Xing Ao had also greatly nicked his opponents greatsword in their exchange.

The rest of them were all beaten by Xing Ao. After clashing with him a few times, all of the opponents were unsteadily swaying from side to side. Gao De grumbled, "You didn't leave any for me and took care of them all by yourself." All of the other competitors in the audience stared at us foolishly. Many of them were annoyed that we had only used one person.

I walked to the front and stopped Xing Ao from continuing his assault. I said to the opponents, "I advise you all to surrender. Surely you realize how great the gap is between the strengths of our squads."

The opponent's boss propped himself up with his sword and heavily said, "Brother, just now was your teammate using Earth Battle Spirit?"

I nodded my head. "That's right." I didn't know whether to laugh or cry at what followed.

The five opponents went up to Xing Ao and knelt before him while their boss spoke. "Big brother, please accept us as your disciples. We participated in this tournament in the hopes of finding a master proficient in battle spirit."

Xing Ao's face turned red. He had practiced martial arts his whole life but had never before encountered such a situation. Xiu Si came to his rescue and told our five opponents to find us once the tournament was over and gave them our contact details.

It wasn't easy for us to leave the Steel God Soldiers Squad. On the road back to the academy after finishing our first battle, Gao De kept prodding Xing Ao by saying, "Ah, not bad. Brother already received five disciples on the first day of the tournament. Haha. If all the battles in the future are like this, we'll be able to form our own legion!"

Xing Ao ignored him and asked Xiu Si, "Boss, do you think I'll be able to accept them?"

Xiu Si smiled. "From what I've seen, they're simple and frank men.

There shouldn't be any problems with accepting them as your disciples. As for whether you should accept them or not, that's up to you."

Carrying on, each day we participated in one group battle. All of the battles proceeded smoothly for us with Xing Ao, Gao De and Dong Ri defeating all of them. Xiu Si and I just watched them with the detached view of bystanders. In 10 battles, we had 10 victories, allowing us to proceed from the 198th group into the semi-finals.

In between each of our battles, we would go watch Bi Qi's Wind Dragon Squad's battles. All of their battles were unexpectedly won by just one person at the rank of Earth Knight, letting them effortlessly enter the semi-finals. From beginning to end, we didn't see any other members of their squad. Teacher Wen said that he feared this person was the weakest of Bi Qi's team. Our situation wasn't looking too hopeful.

After concluding the preliminary battles, we were given two rest days before we were to draw lots again. The first round of the knockout competition would take place over four days with us participating on the third day. In other words, we had four days to rest. We were quite pleased with this arrangement. We didn't go scout out our opponents strengths, instead we unceasingly practiced building up our skills as a team. While Dong Ri's battle spirit didn't progress much, he undoubtedly saw the most progress. He was already able to use some elementary light magic by relying on his natural elven affinity with the elements and my guidance with magic power. Furthermore, he was able to greatly increase his strength by fusing the elementary light magic, Light Arrow, with his own arrows.

## Chapter 24: A Display of Strength

Our first match for the semifinals was held today. We didn't know how powerful our opponents were, but we knew they wouldn't be able to stop us from advancing. After we arrived at Xiuda Plaza, we saw that the spectator stands were already completely filled.

After everyone got on to the stage, the judge introduced both sides. "Advancing from stage 384 from the 512 of the original 1024 groups, is the the Royal Knight Academy's Radiant Battle Squad and the squad composed of people of various nationalities, the Devil Battle Squad." After their introduction , the audience began booing them. It was only later that I found out that in all of their preliminary matches they had seriously injured all of their opponents. They had even beaten some to their last breaths.

The Devil Squad consisted of three warriors and two mages. I felt a refined strength from our opponents. I said to Xiu Si, "It seems that today we must all appear on stage."

Our opponents were evidently experts in team combat. After stepping onto the stage, both teams assumed a fighting stance, waiting for the judge to signal the start of the battle.

The Devil Squad's three warriors hadn't attacked impatiently, but rather had their mages cast defensive enchantments on them. This greatly surprised me, as the two opposing mages had the strength of a grand mage. Although their powers were far inferior to me, the defensive enchantments they used were exceptionally brilliant.

I stopped Xing Ao and Cao De, who were both eager to attack, "Let me. Since our opponents have mages, let them experience what true magic is." Up until now in the competition, I still hadn't participated and had been itching to act. Seeing that opponents have mages made me eager to display my skill.

Xiu Si indifferently said, "Don't give our opponents an opportunity. Finish them in one move."

Xing Ao clearly knew that he could not handle the opponents well. He whispered to me, "If you finish them by yourself, I'll admire you."

I threw a glance at him and replied, "Ah, so it turns out you still weren't convinced of me. Fine, today I will let you see my attack magic. You should all go down." I directed the last sentence to my squad.

Xing Ao and Gao De still appeared a bit uneased. Xiu Si said, "Go. There is a fundamental gap between them and Zhang Gong." Everyone walked off the stage. When the opponents had nearly finished casting, they discovered I was the only warrior there. They were stunned. A mage asked, "Are you going to fight alone? Can it be that you are representing your entire squad?"

I said with a smile, "Of course I will represent my team. As long as you can beat me, I'll consider it your victory."

A man wearing red armor from the Devil Squad bellowed in rage, "You're looking down on us too much! Even a Radiant Knight might not necessarily be able to defeat us when we combine our forces. Brothers, let's charge him and let him pay the price for his arrogance."

The three warriors charged at me together. The two mages had also started to chant their incantations. "Great Fire Elements, gather at my side, condense into a dragon of fire and annihilate the enemy before your eyes!" A fire dragon. It seems this person is a fire mage. "Great Water Elements, gather at my side, condense into a dragon of water and annihilate the enemy before your eyes!" This is a water dragon. So he's a water mage.

A pair of rank six spells, the water and fire dragons, approached me. The three warriors, each possessing the strength of an earth knight, attacked once more in concert. They were truly strong and clearly enraged with me, charging towards me with all their strength.

If it was three or four years ago I definitely would have been greatly injured by this combination of martial skill and magic, but as of now that would be out of the question.

As their spell took form, I teleported to the corner of the arena to buy

myself some time. I began chanting, “Oh great light elements, I request to borrow your formidable strength, let the infinite light permeate the earth and shine!” My body suddenly emitted a dazzling light and in a flash it overcame the twin water and fire dragons. As for the Devil Squad, they had all been knocked off the stage by my Brilliant Empire.

When they touched the spell, I reduced a portion of its magic power. It had only knocked them out the stage without injury. The pair of water and fire magic dragons were not weak. Even when compared with the absolute power of Brilliant Empire, they could not be considered inferior. However, their magic power was far inferior to my own. In addition, my psychological tactics had succeeded. Had they not recklessly charged at me in anger and rather defended against me together, it wouldn’t have been easy for me to defeat them. With such advantageous conditions, it was only natural for me to easily win.

The audience gave me a round of enthusiastic applause. Contrary to the atmosphere, I hadn’t felt the need to whistle towards the sky and many had asked from above who was the imposing hero that stood where I was..

When I walked down the stage, Dong Ri quickly came and excitedly said, “Zhang Gong, you truly are so powerful! It turns out magic is actually so useful!”

I said smugly, “Learn it properly then. Learn all you can from big brother and shake the world when you go out! Haha!” After revealing my strength in this battle, Gao De and Xing Ao were finally convinced that I hadn’t beaten them that time with a cheap trick. They were completely obedient to me now.

The following battles were very easy for us as we didn’t meet any teams stronger than this one. We played our triumphant hymn the whole time and in one breath, we had reached the top 32.

From the observations made by Xiu Si and I, all of the Wind Dragon Battle Squad had made their appearances. All of them were warriors, just as we predicted. Aside from the Earth Knight that appeared first, the rest

of them all had the strength of a Heaven Knight. However, it was unknown whether or not if they had concealed any of their real strengths. The one that posed the biggest threat to us was Bi Qi's eldest son. In all of their previous battles, not once had he truly used his strength. He only acted once or twice, when the other members of his team were in a pinch, thus allowing them to smoothly win afterwards. As the commander of the Second Earth Dragon Corps, he had innately possessed the air of a commander. Regardless of the battle's circumstances, he would definitely be able to lead them. Even if Mt. Tai (if there was a Mt. Tai) collapsed in front of him, he had the mettle to remain calm and continue leading. He was about 190 centimeters in height with a lean build. Explosive power could be felt whenever he issued an order. I couldn't help but be anxious. He absolutely must not break through the bottleneck to become a Radiant Knight, otherwise we will be humiliated.

Our next opponent was here to protect the Royal Prince Qi Lu Xiuda's Prince Battle Squad. It is said that they were highly expected to win. They were the most powerful opponents we had faced yet. All five of them were heaven knights. Furthermore, they were well coordinated during the battle. Evidently, this was the fruit of their many years of training together. The Prince's Battle Squad was the greatest obstacle if we wanted to surpass the Wind Dragon Battle Squad that Bi Qi sent.

I didn't know whether or not I would be able to meet Zhan Hu's father, Prince Qi Lu, and accomplish the only mission big brother had given me.

## Chapter 25: A Battle of Strength

As long as we can enter the sixteen strongest, we will come across Duke Bi Qi's Wind Dragon battle squad. Therefore, we must overcome the Prince's team. After a day of rest, we arrived at the same stage as yesterday and prepared to compete in our hardest match yet. For today's battle, I specially wore my Light God Robes. Xiu Si and the rest of the team had also worn their best armor.

Standing on the stage, a feeling of unease sprung up when I saw our opponents. They presented a strong sense of unity. But in order to make up for our mutual weaknesses we had to fight as a team.

The competition had yet to start, so I let my teammates warm up beforehand. Grasping my magic staff, I walked two steps forward and politely said, "Hello, we feel very honored to have the privilege of competing with the Prince's team."

All of our opponents were wearing silver warrior's attire. They had replied to me courteously. The tall team member in the middle walked forward two steps and said, "Hello. We saw your performance yesterday. Your magic is quite powerful, but today we will certainly halt your advance here. Our target is the championship." Although he spoke in a very polite manner, his self confidence was evident in his pleasant words.

I carefully looked at him. I noticed that he and Big Brother Zhan Hu had many similarities. The main difference was that he was a bit older. I couldn't help but ask, "Excuse me, are you Prince Xiuda's son?"

Clearly surprised, he said, "How did you know? I am Shan Yun Xiuda and the corps commander of our country's First Earth Dragon Corps."

He was Zhan Hu's older brother! I had prepared myself, but the fact that he was an Earth Dragon Corp's commander scared me. After a pause, I asked, "Is Prince Xiuda well?"

Shan Yun suspiciously looked at me and casually said, "He is very well, why do you ask?"

I smiled, "I'll tell you after the competition. Let's use all of our strength

in this match and see whether or not you can truly stop my advance.”

My words stirred Shan Yun’s heroic spirit, with a bright voice he said, “Very well. Younger Brother, let me witness whether or not your magic is truly ferocious!”

The judge announced the start of the match and in accordance with our prior plans, Xiu Si, Xing Ao, and Gao De were in front. They were responsible for obstructing the opponent’s assault while Dong Ri and I were behind them. I was responsible for casting magic and Dong Ri was responsible for protecting me with covering fire, to let me focus on attacking.

I didn’t dare hesitate. I waved the magic staff in hand and started chanting.

“Light Elements, my friends, use your endless light to expel evil.” Holy Light, it bestowed upon teammates clarity of mind and also increases their defense.

“Light Elements, my friends, become a divine halo and protect my friends.” Divine Halo, not only does it protect my teammates, but also harmonizes with their battle spirit, further strengthening their defenses.

“Light Elements, my friends, transform into sharp swords and annihilate the enemy before you.” Light Severing Sword, rank 6 attack spell. It immediately attacked the five opponents.

I successively used three rank 6 spells. After I laid down my defensive enchantments, the three in front accompanied the Light Severing Sword charging toward the opposing knights. The opposing team had Shan Yun as their vanguard and met the attack in a cone formation, with their swords emitting a white battle spirit.

Three meters before they clashed, Shan Yun loudly shouted, “Brilliant Stars Banishing Evil!” The five people brandished their longswords simultaneously, converging five lines of battle spirit into a powerful sphere of battle spirit, colliding head on. It was too late to dodge. The first to meet it was my Light Severing Sword. With almost no effect, it was swallowed by the mass of battle spirit. Close to it was Xing Ao and Gao

De. They hadn't expected the opposition to make a move from that position. Unprepared, they were unable to dispatch their own battle spirit skills and could only use their swords to resolutely withstand the blow. Xiu Si reacted a bit quicker and loudly shouted, "Illusory Execution!" The longsword in his hand dispatched a void of light and shadow to meet it.

We had lost the first bout. Gao De and Xing Ao were knocked back to my side. If Dong Ri hadn't caught them, they would have exited the stage. They violently coughed up a mouthful of blood and it seemed that they no longer had any battle spirit power left. Xiu Si was in slightly better condition and was pushed back only by five or six steps. A thread of blood trickled from the corner of his mouth.

Compared to our miserable condition, our opponents were faring much better with only their warrior's clothing being a bit damaged. That damage should have been caused by my Light Severing Sword.

Too powerful. Their combination technique truly was too powerful. I fear that we would have all collapsed if I hadn't protected Xiu Si and the others with my magic.

Shan Yun's Knights clearly poised themselves well and hadn't pursued. Shan Yun calmly said, "You can still concede. Although I am surprised you were able to withstand this strike, you won't fare as well with the next strike. Concede."

Xiu Si used his sword to prop himself up as he said with an indignant light in his eyes, "We definitely won't surrender. If you have the ability, then knock us all down!"

Shan Yun shook his head and said, "You're forcing my hand here." All five of the Prince's Battle Squad simultaneously raised their longswords.

I couldn't wait any longer. I ran in front of Xiu Si and lifted my magic staff high chanting,

"Oh Great Light Elements, my life's most intimate companions, become the most magnificent halo of light to be shed on this earth." Following my incantation, a speck of light came out of my upper dantian. It gradually grew brighter and brighter before taking the form of a small

pale golden orb. The small orb gradually changed its form to become a massive golden halo before it flew towards Shan Yun's team. In order to further enhance its strength, I had to pour all of my magic power into the halo, causing it to become even more formidable.

Shan Yun's eyes gave an astonished expression. He lifted the longsword in his hand and yelled, "Combined Star Execution!" Five Longswords were lifted simultaneously, and let out five streams of white battle spirit, converging into a huge sword of battle spirit, chopping at my Brilliant Halo. I focused all of my spirit into the Brilliant Halo. When the battle spirit sword slashed at my halo, my whole body felt a huge vibration. It took an extreme amount of effort to maintain the the halo's form. If this were magic, then these were five Magic Scholars casting a spell together.

The opponent's sword formed of battle spirit shattered when it clashed with the halo. However, the halo was also knocked back. Blood could be seen dripping from the corner of the mouths of Shan Yun and his team. It seems that they have received some internal injuries. I wasn't feeling well either. It was only that I was a bit stronger than them, that's all. I concentrated my efforts on stabilizing the halo in preparation for the next attack.

In this circumstance, Xiu Si and Dong Ri's battle spirit power was unable to intervene. The powerful pressure of both the battle spirit and magic power had pushed us to the edge of the stage. I knew that it would be our victory so long as I could trap the opposing team in my Brilliant Halo.

## Chapter 26: With Xiao Jin

Shan Yun wiped his mouth. He bitterly smiled and grudgingly said, “It seems I’ve underestimated you. I hadn’t expected you, who is so young, to achieve the power of a magister. It is truly unthinkable. It seems I can no longer conserve my strength. Originally, this maneuver was meant to deal with Bi Er, from the Wind Dragon Squad. It seems I have no choice but to enjoy using it on you first. Come Brothers! Let them witness our true strength.”

Saying this, he lifted his longsword into the sky. Shan Yun’s four teammates sent out four streams of white battle spirit into the sky. Shan Yun appeared very strained. The white light on his sword gradually changed into a red radiance. Suddenly it soared into the sky, fusing with the four streams of white light. It formed an immense blood red longsword.

Xiu Si exclaimed, “Not good! This is divine battle spirit.”

Shan Yun’s complexion was quite pale, but he wore a victorious grin. He proudly said, “Right. This is divine battle spirit. Let’s see whether or not my strength as a radiant knight can defeat a magister’s. Come! Witness my ultimate technique, Bloodstained Glory.”

Just a moment ago, I directed my halo towards the Prince’s team. But after I heard Xiu Si’s exclamation, it was already too late to evade. I’ll go all out. I clenched my teeth and released all of my magic power. Brilliant Halo flickered an even greater, dazzling golden light. I willed the halo to charge at them a second time.

These two powerful forces collided in the sky, violently exploding, scattering their energy onto the stage. Shan Yun and his team crashed down to the ground. The most miserable was me; I was violently coughing up blood. My mind blurry, I collapsed into Dong Ri’s embrace. I felt my entire body had depleted all its magic power, my golden sphere pitifully depleted.

It was fortunate that the audience wasn’t affected from this distance.

When they all saw our tyrannical strength, they all let out gasps of amazement.

Dong Ri and Xiu Si were behind me and hadn't received any impact. They were only coated in grime.

Shan Yun climbed up from the floor. "Such powerful magic! With the strength of us five combined, we could barely withstand your attack. I have already exhausted my fighting spirit." He looked at his teammates knocked down onto the ground. He shook his head and bitterly smiled, saying, "They can no longer fight."

Xiu Si coldly said, "Then concede. We still have two that can fight."

"Concede? Impossible. Come, Young Hawk. Fuse." Although my body could no longer move, I knew that if Shan Yun used a magic beast fusion, he could recover some of his fighting strength. Fused with his magic beast's strength, Shan Yun was about to stake it all against Dong Ri and an injured Xiu Si.

With a weak voice, I called Xiao Jin from the bottom of my heart, "Xiao Jin, I no longer have any magic power. Can you still fight? Help me."

Xiao Jin replied that he had accumulated enough energy to support me for about three minutes.

With great difficulty, I extended my hand to stop Dong Ri from charging. With a faint voice, I said, "Keep your secret skill hidden for a later match. Let me. Come out, Xiao Jin."

A gold light flashed, Xiao Jin appeared into the world, covering the sky. With a rough dragon's appearance, he roared toward the sky. I knew that time was pressing and immediately sent out an attack command. In order to save his strength, I had him directly using physical attacks. .

Xiao Jin beat his huge wings and charged into Shan Yun. Shan Yun was scared stiff. It wasn't until he sensed danger that he brandished his fantasy beast infused longsword. He shouted loudly, "Divine Hawk's Storm Sword!" A hawk composed to battle spirit appeared on the tip of the sword, charging together with it towards Xiao Jin. In fact, Shan Yun's

power was almost exhausted. He was entirely relying on his magic beast.

Xiao Jin waved his large wings and had already won when he extended his front claw. The scene was somewhat humorous. The hawk of battle spirit that Shan Yun dispatched was snatched by Xiao Jin's claw, much like the grab of a bird of prey. It struggled with all its might. Xiao Jin shook his claw back and forth and with a grab of power, he crushed the hawk. Then he pounced towards Shan Yun.

I feared Xiao Jin would kill him and immediately told him with my mind to not injure the opponents. Xiao Jin withdrew the sharp claws he extended and instead use his wings to beat Shan Yun flying. He fainted on the ground. This time he won't be getting back up.

Relying on Xiao Jin's formidable strength, we won the final victory. I was already very weak and could barely withdraw Xiao Jin. I didn't know what happened next.

.....

I gradually regained consciousness and opened my eyes in a daze. I was in a small wooden room. There was nobody around. I tried moving a bit and my body ached from head to toe, making me groan. It seems I'm still exhausted. I concentrated my spirit to look at my magic power. It can only be described with one word. That word is wretched. It was exceptionally wretched. The remainder of my magic power hadn't even reached 30%. He hadn't even known this was the result of a long period of rest.

Dong Ri's voice came from outside, "Teacher, I think I heard Zhang Gong move. I'm going to see."

Dong Ri pushed the door open and walked in, "Zhang Gong, you're awake. How is your body?"

"Yes, my body is very sore all over. What time is it now?" I weakly asked.

"Currently it's already the afternoon of the next day. You were unconscious for one night and day," Dong Ri replied.

"Ah! Then tomorrow we're going to face wind dragon squad. How are

the others?"

Dong Ri sighed and shook his head. He grudgingly said, "Gao De and Xing Ao is certain to be unable to appear tomorrow. They received serious injuries. Although Xiu Si can fight tomorrow, I'm afraid that he cannot fully recover in time. I hadn't expected the Prince's squad to be so ferocious. It was truly a disastrous victory for us. We still don't know what to do tomorrow."

Teacher Wen's voice came from outside the room, "Is Zhang Gong awake?"

Dong Ri replied, "Yes, he's awake."

Teacher Wen also came over. Ashamed, I said, "I am sorry, Teacher Wen. I failed to live up to your expectations."

He laughed and said, "Foolish child, what are you saying? You've already done extraordinarily well. I hadn't actually expected Qi Lu to dispatch Shan Yun to battle. Even more so, I hadn't expected him to have already become a Radiant Knight. Originally there were only six radiant knights on the continent. Xiuda has four of them. The rest belong to the Dalu kingdom. If Bi Er is also a radiant knight then it is impossible for you to win tomorrow. You've already defeated opponents that were far greater in strength than you five. I am already very happy. Even if you lose tomorrow, nothing terrible will come of it. Rest well. If you can't fight tomorrow, it's fine if you just forfeit."

With a resolute voice, I said, "That won't do. No matter what, tomorrow we must compete. Even if it's only me and Dong Ri we still have to compete." Actually, I knew that if I wanted to win tomorrow, a miracle would have had to occur.

Teacher Wen had simply smiled and said, "Rest well. We'll talk about this again tomorrow."

After Teacher Wen left, I closely stared at Dong Ri's eyes. Gritting my teeth, I said to him, "Tomorrow no matter how well I've recovered, we must go fight and go all out using even our very last strands of power."

Dong Ri had tears in his eyes and grabbed me, "Right. Tomorrow I will go all out with them. We must get back face for Teacher Wen. We are the just ones. Justice must win."

## Chapter 27: The Winning Arrow

Dong Ri left. Right now I only focused on recovering as much magic power as I could, as quickly as possible. I closed my eyes and focused my entire spirit onto my shrunken golden sphere. The golden sphere within my body was slowly revolving, absorbing and compressing magic power. This was too slow. I let go of my body and mind, and summoned the light elements in the air.

I felt many small specks of light hastily gathering toward me. I was recovering at a rate much faster than before. I directed my entire mind toward recovering my magic power.

When the match was about to begin, there were only three people on our side: Dong Ri, Xiu Si, and me. Xing Ao and Gao De's injuries were too serious and were unable to continue competing. If my magic power had fully recovered, perhaps our situation would have been a bit better. But it's no use saying that. Currently my magic power wasn't in an optimal state, as it was only at 70% capacity, but I still wanted to fight.

Early morning, when I discovered that my magic power was unable to fully recover, I spoke to Xiao Jin, hoping to rely on his power to win the match. But no matter how much I called for him, he wouldn't wake. Later, I learned that this was because I had used too much of my magic power during the previous match. Xiao Jin was afraid that my body was unable to bear the strain and passed his long accumulation of magic power onto me. Having exhausted his energy, he became dormant. Had he not, I absolutely could not have been able to recover 30% of my magic power at the time.

There were many people who had come to watch the battle today. Naturally Duke Bi Qi and Teacher Wen were included.

Currently, it was too late to say anything else. We can only fight with our all. Like the last match, we chose to fight as a team. But this time, I was standing in the front. My hand grasping the magic staff, I looked at Bi Er Zhu opposite of me. Standing there, I sensed that although they had the unconditional advantage today, they did not have a pleased

appearance. He stood there peacefully like a towering mountain. I was unable to see through him. I knew that this time I had run into a truly powerful opponent. Bi Er's power was not at all inferior to that of Shan Yun's.

Today we must win with a surprise attack. Without speaking , I raised my magic staff and closed my eyes. Carefully feeling my surroundings, I didn't chant an incantation but instead I gathered battle spirit and filled half of my magic staff with it. Simultaneously, I separated a portion of magic power from my gold dan and gathered it in the magic staff. I let both powers slowly fuse together, until they finally reached a state of resonance. Not bad. This was the fusion technique of magic power and battle spirit I had accidentally invented while I was big brother Zhan Hu. It mainly based on magic power being assisted by battle spirit, each inclusive of the other. Although I wasn't proficient in this technique yet, I didn't have any other methods. With my current magic power, I'm not able to use several of the larger spells. With this method, I would be able to conserve some magic power.

Bi Er felt a power pressure produced from my body, especially from the formidable power gathering at my magic staff. He did not know that this was magic. His team formed a powerful defensive formation.

I used my spirit to tell Dong Ri to ready his bow. This is our only opportunity. We absolutely cannot be defeated.

I extended my left hand, and concentrated all of my remaining magic power into it. My hand emitted a faint golden light. I chanted, "Light Elements, my friends. I request of you, burst forth as endless blaze, annihilate the enemy before you." This was a rank seven light spell, Flames of Light Engulfing the Heavens.

Following the incantation, light elements flooded a large area of the sky as flames of light, as if they were surrounding us. Before this attack, Bi Er knew that a pure defense was far too passive, and did not hide his strength, letting out a faint golden radiance from his body. He had his teammates form a defensive line. Holding his knight swords high, he loudly shouted, "Spatial Ten Tear Slash!" He hadn't slashed towards me,

but rather at my magic in the sky. The air itself had seemed to have ripped apart, showing ten cracks in the air. The light elements I dispatched had been completely absorbed within those cracks. It seemed he was also a radiant knight. Xiuda truly produces many talented people.

In the audience, Teacher Wen's complexion had a huge change. He understood what this signified.

This gave me a fright. His Mysterious Slash and my Dimensional Decapitator were very similar except his was much more powerful. I couldn't hesitate anymore. I hurriedly wielded my magic staff's explosive power and turned it into a sword of light before slashing at the opponent. This was my ultimate attack. The previous spell was merely used to confuse the opponent. I didn't know how powerful it would be either. I used this nameless technique with all my strength, consuming nearly all of my magic power as well as my physical strength. Half kneeling, I thought to myself, 'It's all up to Dong Ri now.'

Bi Er shouted, "Not good. Be careful everyone." At the same time, he moved to the front of of his battle squad while holding his knight's sword horizontally as it emitted a golden light. "Friction Sword Slash." If he had time to prepare, the outcome would have resulted in a draw. But he had just received a rank 7 spell from me so he didn't have enough time to react. He couldn't possibly match the ferociousness of my rank eight fusion attack spell. He will definitely suffer the worst from it.

An explosion was let out on the stage, filling the air with smoke. A part of the stage was destroyed. The intense vibrating power threw me towards toward the rear. Xiu Si held me, keeping me in place. At that moment, I had released my true killing blow. It was also the final winning strike.

Five faint lights and shadows appeared from behind me and Xiu Si and flew into the smoke. Immediately, groaning voices came from the smoke. My heart was overjoyed. We had won.

Not bad. The lights and shadows just now were something I ordered. Rather, it was Dong Ri that was always waiting for an opportunity. He had gathered all of his battle spirit and magic power into these five

arrows. With his elven eyesight in a situation where no one could see clearly, the arrows had become our ultimate attack.

Duke Bi Qi and Teacher Wen were both standing on the spectator's platform. The smoke gradually faded away. Bi Er's companions were painfully lying on the floor, their left shoulders all pierced with a short arrow. Bi Er was using his knight sword to support his body. Similarly, his left shoulder was also pierced with a short arrow.

Dong Ri shouted, "Zhang Gong, we've won!"

Just as we were about to celebrate, Bi Er's voice resounded, "Although I admire your strategy and strength, you still can't win."

Bi Er slowly rose, the spectators exclaimed in surprise. He used his right hand to pull out the arrow shaft, not letting out any blood. It was clear that he used battle spirit to seal his acupuncture point.

He faintly said, "Actually, if this was an ordinary match I would have already admit defeat. Because you started of leniently, apart from me, no one else would have been able to resist those magic arrows." He emphasized those last two words.

## Chapter 28: The Competition's End

He coldly looked at me and asked, "Zhang Gong. Am I correct? "

Shakily, I stood up from Xiu Si's embrace. After swaying a second, Xiu Si immediately supported me. I wiped the dried blood from the corner of my mouth and answered with a bitter smile, "You're right. But nevertheless I still hadn't achieved my expected result, otherwise you'd be on the floor."

Bi Er smiled saying, "To tell the truth, I really admire you, because the day before yesterday, you arduously prevailed over the Prince's team. Of course, I believed that today it would be impossible for you to have any strength left to resist. I certainly didn't expect that we would actually suffer a loss of four men. If I weren't fighting for my father's honor, I certainly wouldn't still be competing with you."

I felt that his current words were a mockery. I waved my hand and coldly said, "Stop talking. These words have no use. Did you believe that we would lose the will to fight? Are you certain you will win? Then come. We will not concede. Beat me until I can no longer stand." Xiu Si and Dong Ri supported me from my left and right side.

I whispered in a voice only they could hear, "I can no longer fight. You two go. You must defeat him." Dong Ri loosed his bowstring as fast as lightning, each draw showing an afterimage of an arrow flying straight toward Bi Er.

Bi Er smiled dimly and said, "Still have tricks up your sleeve?" His hand was not idle, quickly intercepting arrows flying towards him with his knight sword. The elf arrows' powerful impacts forced Bi Er to step back. He couldn't help but praise it, "Such great arrow technique, you are the best archer I've ever seen. I am unable to avoid your arrows at all. If there is an opportunity I will surely have you join my second [Earth Dragon] Corps.

Coming from an enemy, Dong Ri naturally believed Bi Er was mocking him. Putting away his bow, Dong Ri brandished a knight's longsword and charged at Bi Er. I immediately said, "Xiu Si, go with him. He can't go

alone."

Xiu Si helped me sit on the ground, and also joined the battle. Although Xiu Si was inferior to Bi Er by only one rank, in a true fight, the difference was even greater. Bi Er effortlessly dealt with their combined attack and simultaneously said, "Zhang Gong, why aren't you summoning the magic beast you used the other day? That is the only way you can win."

I bitterly smiled. If I could summon Xiao Jin, would you still be so provocative? Currently, the magic power within my body had been completely exhausted. What could I use to deal with him?

Seeing I did not reply Bi Er naturally guessed that I was unable to summon Xiao Jin and strengthened his assault. Just as he was about to finish Xiu Si and Dong Ri, I hurriedly said, "Xiu Si hold him back, Dong Ri shoot arrows!"

Hearing my words, Dong Ri withdrew from the fray and readied his bow, letting loose an arrow. He couldn't have given Bi Er a greater headache. Bi Er loudly yelled, "Profound Thunder Leopard sword technique - Furious Leopard's Violent Thunder!" The knight's sword in his hand turned into a barrage of arrows and casted them towards Dong Ri and Xiu Si. Dong Ri's arrows were shattered the Bi Er's sword barrage. Xiu Si blocked off a majority of its power. The two were sent flying simultaneously by the tyrannical force of the blow. A rain of blood scattered, filling the sky.

At the seats for distinguished guests, Teacher Wen and Dike Bi Qi were still standing.

When I saw Xiu Si and Dong Ri again, they were lying on the floor next to me, covered all over with cuts and bruises. Dong Ri had already lost consciousness. Xiu Si wasn't completely lucid. His armor was smashed and scattered. The knight sword was barely in his grasp.

It's over. It's all over. Are we truly unable to defeat Bi Er?

Bi Er advanced two steps and said with an apologetic voice, "Forgive me. I hadn't meant to use such a great maneuver. As Dong Ri's arrows are truly difficult to deal with, I had no choice but to use that technique. You should now concede."

The only person that could currently move was me. I cannot lose. Never in my entire life had I thirsted more for victory. In the face of such a difficult victory, I had unexpectedly stood up. Looking coldly at Bi Er, I tremblingly lifted my magic staff and began chanting, "Oh Mighty God of Creation, I humbly request your assistance. Use your endless power and open my life's origin." Just as I said this, a tall shadow of a man appeared behind me and used his palm to chopped at my neck. I groaned and fainted onto the ground.

It was Teacher Wen that appeared at that crucial moment. He emotionally held me as I was fainting, murmuring, "Foolish child, how are you so stupid? How could you possible use life magic? If I were a step slower, I would have eternally been unable to forgive myself." Tears flowed from the corners of Teacher Wen's eyes. Truly, I had wanted to use life magic to arouse my latent life energy. However, the damage would have been at least the loss of half of my life's energy. Even so I had wanted to pay the cost of my life. It was fortunate that Teacher Wen had heard my incantation in time to stop me.

The audience observing the fight were in a tremendous uproar. A great many people recognized Li Ke Wen. They all loudly shouted, "Foul! Foul!"

The referee walked over and respectfully asked, "Honored Principal, What are you...?"

Teacher Wen held me and stood up. He waved his hand, saying, "I conceded on behalf of the Brilliance Team." He turned his head toward Bi Er and said, "I will go to your father and acknowledge my error." Bi Er had wanted to say something, but seeing Wen's remorseful complexion he had refrained from saying anything.

The competition ended with our crushing defeat.

I regained consciousness .Where is this? Such an unfamiliar place. I turned my sore neck and looked around. It was a very large room. Apart from mine there were four more beds, each with a member of the Brilliant Battle Squad lying in them. Gao De and Xing Ao were chatting. As for Dong Ri and Xiu Si, I didn't know whether they were sleeping or

still knocked out.

I painfully groaned, Xing Ao said, "Ah, Zhang Gong is awake! Boss Zhang Gong, how are you feeling?" Huh? When have I become your boss?

I weakly said, "I'm not dead yet. How did we get here? What happened in our last match?"

Xing Ao sighed and started talking about what happened after we lost consciousness.

It turned out that after the competition had concluded, King Xiuda had heard of our tenacious spirit and had us specially recover inside the Imperial Palace under the treatment of imperial physicians. Something else that amazed me was that Duke Bi Qi hadn't pressed Teacher Wen for an apology. He had only said that the matter was over.

Hearing that Teacher Wen hadn't been humiliated, I let out a long sigh and said with regret, "This is all because I failed accomplish what was expected of me. It seems the path I must walk is still quite long."

Xing Ao chuckled and sincerely said, "That's enough, Zhang Gong. Right now, I am dead set on serving you. With our strength we actually managed to beat the Prince's Squad. That was something that already surprised me, but even more so you three had managed to almost defeat the Wind Dragon Squad. I heard from Teacher Wen that had he not stopped you, you would have used life magic. You are truly too competitive. If it weren't for you, I fear our combined strength would have been far too lacking. When we prevailed over the Prince's squad, Gao De and I, even Boss Xiu Si had decided that we must to follow and accompany you on your adventures. We would follow no other person but you."

## Chapter 29: A Journey's Preparation

Xing Ao's words gave me a burst of warmth. Smiling, I said, "Be at ease. We're all part of the same battle squad, so I'll never forget any of you. Dong Ri and Xiu Si, what's the situation?"

"Although the injuries were very severe, they weren't life threatening. So we'll be fine after some rest. Enough talk. You should go rest now and I'll call you once it's time to eat."

"Alright, I'm really struggling to keep my eyes open, so I'll sleep first." All of the problems have been resolved. While not perfect, it was still satisfactory. Feeling relaxed and at ease, I quickly entered the land of dreams.

After an unknown amount of time passed, I smelled a fragrant scent. The alluring scent which woke me from my dreams. I opened my eyes in a dazed manner. Wa! Everyone is already eating right now. I feebly asked, "Ah, is there any for me? I'm so hungry."

Teacher Wen was also present in the room. After seeing that I had awoken, he smiled and said, "You awoke just as I was about to call you. You truly are too gluttonous. Get up and eat then." A maid helped me into a half sitting, half lying position before putting a small table over the bed. She brought over a bowl of thick soup and a few pastries.

I shamefully said, "I'm sorry Teacher Wen, I didn't accomplish the mission."

Teacher Wen lightly shook his head saying, "Child, you have already done extraordinarily well. However, in the future you can't rashly use your Life Magic, otherwise I wouldn't be able to face Lao Yun. Bi Qi isn't that unreasonable either. If it had been a fair match, we definitely would have won. In fact, losing might not necessarily be a bad thing for you. Your defeat has let you all learn where you are lacking. So in the future you must diligently practice. Lets eat now." His last few words were directed at everyone.

I was already unable to speak anymore due to the excessive amount of

drool in my mouth. The pale yellow soup's aroma assaulted my nostrils as I drank. Wa! So tasty! I couldn't help but ask, "What soup is this? It's so delicious!"

Xiu Si answered, "This a secret recipe of the Royal Court called the Immortal Soup. It was made using numerous kinds of wild animals, mushrooms, ancient mountain ginseng, reishi mushrooms, young deer antlers, fleece-flower root and many other precious high grade medicinal ingredients and stewed for a long time. It's extremely expensive! But this time it's for you. Haha."

My face blushed red as I mumbled to myself, "How can you say it's only for me? Aren't you all drinking it too?" Everyone burst into laughter from amusement. I couldn't help but laugh as well, and only stopped after it began hurting. Like this thick soup, our companionship was covering the room. After going through a trial of life and death together, our relationship has grown much closer.

Like a tornado, I quickly finished my food while everyone else was still eating. I looked around and saw that Dong Ri was the slowest eater of them all. I asked him, "Are your pastries tasty?"

Dong Ri laughed when he saw my gluttonous expression and said, "Here." I accurately caught the pastry he threw with my mouth. I turned around and said to Xiu Si, "Wow! Xiu Si your soup is so different from mine. What kind of flavor does it have?" Nobody could bear it after hearing my words. Gao De had pastry crumbs falling from his mouth. Sorrowfully, I said, "Don't let your food go to waste if you're not eating it."

In the end, Teacher Wen had to break up our circle. "Ah, Zhang Gong. If you want to kill them then you can continue speaking. Their wounds will open up at this rate. You should just eat a bit less since your body is already so weak. Eating too much will actually be bad for you."

After hearing Teacher Wen's words, I could only lie down in dissatisfaction. I've never eaten such good food before. I'll definitely eat a lot more during the next meal. When no one was paying attention, I stealthily told the maid to have the chef prepare more food for me next

time.

Everyday we had a great nourishing meal and soon the majority of everyone's injuries were healed. After 10 or so days, we had basically fully recovered. However, I really didn't want to recover so quickly. I still hadn't eaten enough of the Royal Palace's gourmet food!

Today Teacher Wen brought us to see the king after seeing that we had nearly fully recovered. I thought it would be like this. We couldn't possibly have eaten such good foods for free. Obviously, we had to pay our respects to him.

I felt that the royal palace was very similar to a maze. In just a few minutes I had already become confused. The others weren't faring any better either.

We arrived in front of an extremely grand and magnificent building. I heard from Teacher Wen that this was the King of Xiuda's reception hall. After everyone entered, Teacher Wen instructed us all to kneel down. We followed him and shouted out 'Long Live the King! Long Live the King! Long Live the King!' After finish shouting this, I stealthily lifted my head and stole a glance.

This is the King of Xiuda? Sitting on the royal throne was a gorgeously dressed man that looked to be in his 70's. He was sitting upright with lights glittering in his eyes.

"No need to be so polite. You may all rise."

Xiuda's King clearly recognized our worth as he asked us if we wished to take a position as government officials. No one uttered a word for a long time. I discovered that they were all looking at me. Ah, what are you all doing looking at me? I'm not even a citizen of Xiuda, yet I'm still forced to wear the crown of their boss on my head! You should decide for yourselves. It's only that we are still young and the tournament has shown us how inadequate our skills are. We still had much to learn. Their future martial skills will definitely be of service to the kingdom. Seeing this, Teacher Wen secretly chuckled.

Fortunately, the King of Xiuda was really open minded. He didn't pose

any difficulties for us at all. He only said a few words of encouragement before letting us take our leave.

We finally returned to Teacher Wen's small wooden cabin. Although there weren't any delicious foods left, I still felt good here due to all of the freedom here.

After returning, the five of us were inseparable. Everyday we would train both our bodies and our martial skills together. I taught them some of the basics of light magic while also learning a lot from them and Teacher Wen. Time quickly passed by and unknowingly, three months passed by.

Although I didn't want to separate from my close comrades, I still had to go accomplish my mission. I found Teacher Wen and told him, "Teacher, thank you for instructing and taking care of me these past few days. I think it's time for me to depart now and accomplish the mission entrusted to me by Teacher Di."

Teacher Wen patted my shoulders and said with a sigh, "Truthfully, I don't want to part with you. Right now you're just like my own student."

Smiling, I said, "I have always been your student. I will still return in the future and visit all of you."

Teacher Wen sighed and said, "Fine then. Go talk with everyone else and pack up. You can leave tomorrow." I nodded before heading toward the courtyard. Unexpectedly, they weren't sad at all after I told them that I had to leave to finish the mission Teacher Di entrusted to me. This made me a bit depressed. I returned to my room to pack up my things and prepared to set off on my journey the next day.

## Chapter 30: Visiting Shan Yun

After I returned to my room, I sat on the bed, thinking about all that happened during my time in Xiuda. Not only did I meet Big Brother Zhan Hu there, but my magic power had also reached a new level. I also learned a few simple martial skills. My Ascending Dragon's Judgement had nearly reached the realm of purification. I should roughly have a knight's strength. Everyone was amazed at the rate of my battle spirit advancement . Only I knew that my battle spirit and powerful spirit power were inseparable.

Now I will depart. Oh, that's right... speaking of Big Brother Zhan Hu, I still hadn't looked for his father on his behalf. I'll take a trip to the Prince's Mansion.

I casually heard that the Prince's Mansion was in the southeast of Xiuda city. What name would I have to use so that the Prince would see me? As I was thinking of this, I recalled someone, Shan Yun Xiuda. He's Big Brother Zhan Hu's elder brother and we had exchanged hands before. Requesting to see him should be fine. I'll see how the situation is first and whether or not I can see the Prince.

I arrived at the Prince's Mansion gate and asked for a servant to help me request an audience with the young Prince Shan Yun. Not a formal meeting, but to personally meet with Shan Yun. Seeing my happy appearance, Shan Yun had also smiled, "Ah, Zhang Gong it's you! A rare visitor, indeed. Come quickly. Let's go in and have a chat."

I courteously said, "This is truly embarrassing. I didn't mean to bother you."

"Don't mention it. In all my life, those I had admired the most were the strong. Only those stronger than me can accompany me and be my friend. Regardless of what you think, I already regard you as my friend. Haha." He was truly forthright. Hearing his words, I was secretly happy.

Smiling, I said, "I am also very happy to have you as my friend. The match the other day was because of good luck, we won by a fluke. Had

you fused with your magic beast at the start, I fear we would have been finished.” While we were talking, we entered the Prince’s Mansion. It was very large. The mansion’s architecture was extremely grand, encasing the courtyard. Although it wasn’t as large as the Imperial Palace, it can also be said to be a small maze.

Shan Yun said, “About that, your magical beast is very formidable too. What kind of magical beast is it?”

Xiao Jin was currently still lying dormant inside my body. I scratched my head, and embarrassingly said, “It’s a snake type magic beast. It grew relatively big, that’s all. Although its might is not small, it spends far too much of my magic power. After that match, it fell dormant, absorbing my magic power. In fact, on that day had you persevered a moment longer, it would no longer have had any power. That’s why I said winning was just as result of luck.”

Shan Yun brought me to his room then we chatted about all sorts of things for a bit. From our chat, I could tell that Shan Yun and big brother Zhan Hu had very similiar natures.

Clenching my teeth, I resolved myself.

“Big brother Shan Yun, I have a matter to discuss with you. Don’t you have a younger brother?”

Hearing my words, Shan Yun excitedly asked me, “Do you have news of Jing Yun?”

“Wa! Settle down a bit. I can’t endure the strength of a Radiant Knight.” Embarrassed, Shan Yun released his hands.

I continued speaking, “Actually, I came to Xiuda City as his replacement to tell you all that he is well. I’m also here to see how his home is for him.”

Shan Yun emotionally said, “Then why didn’t he come himself? Where is he right now?”

I humbly shook my head and said, “I can only tell you that he is well right now. I promised him I wouldn’t tell anyone about where he is right

now. He still hasn't settled his previous matter. Wait until I help him settle it, then he will definitely return."

Shan Yun said with a sigh, "Ah, it's all because of his Earth Dragon Xiao Zhan. Jing Yun truly is too foolish. At that time we weren't any good either. We didn't show enough care for him to the extent that he left a message and ran away. Actually, father didn't blame him at all. Who could possibly never make a mistake? Jing Yun was the most gifted of us three brothers, but it's sad that he's now like this. Since you promised to not reveal his whereabouts, I won't force you. When you see him you must tell him to hurry home and that everyone misses him."

I nodded and said, "I'm relieved then. I'll go back and explain this to big brother Zhan Hu. I forgot to tell you, me and him have already become sworn brothers. You're my big brother's elder brother so you're also my elder brother. Haha! Wait until big brother Zhan Hu reaches the level of Radiant Knight, then he will definitely return. That day isn't too far off either. His Highness the Prince, how is he? Is his body healthy?"

Shan Yun said, "Father's body is outstandingly robust. It's just that he's aged a lot. Although he hasn't said it, I know that he really misses Jing Yun."

I said, "That's right! Big brother Shan Yun, don't tell the Prince about Big Brother Zhang Hu yet. Give me one years time after I depart from here, I will definitely help you bring back big brother Zhan Hu."

"Alright. You've convinced me. I'm extremely grateful to you that you worried so much about our family's matters. Don't hesitate to ask if you need anything in the future. I will support you with all my strength. This is the token of my second legion. Within Xiuda it has a lot of influence. Hold on to it and use it properly in the future."

I also dropped formalities and extended my arm toward him, "Right, Big Brother Shan Yun, I will be leaving first. I am leaving tomorrow. I still have to tell everyone else.

Shan Yun accompanied me to the gates then I returned to the academy on the same road from which I came.

The wooden room had one more person, Hong Xue Hua Lun. Last time, it was because of her that we were stirred to compete. Here she comes again. Hopefully she won't cause any trouble this time.

Not waiting for me to say anything, she called out to me first, "Zhang Gong, you returned. I heard you are leaving tomorrow. I am truly sorry for what happened previously."

Aside her, Teacher Wen smiled and said, "Today you've already apologized many times. You aren't to blame for this."

I indifferently replied, "Hello Miss Hua Lun. Dong Ri is my good brother. You ought to know his temperament, so if you truly like him, then you must properly take care of him in the future. I don't want my brother to suffer any grievances. I'll be going in to rest then. I still have to set off tomorrow."

My playful words caused Dong Ri and Hong Xue blush a deep red. Even the taciturn Xiu Si smiled, saying, "Zhang Gong's words are truly straightforward, I'm impressed. Haha." Even Xing Ao and Gao De were loudly jeering.

Hong Xue said with a red face, "There's no one else here so you're all bullying me." Although her mouth said these words, my profound words have already been printed within her heart. Hong Xue secretly resolved herself that from now on, she must make Dong Ri accept her and quickly make him stop feeling inferior. She will fearlessly confront the future.

However, Dong Ri was thinking of something entirely different and that was to escape.

## Chapter 31: Traveling Together

At dawn, I finished packing my baggage and arrived at Teacher Wen's room to bid him farewell. Teacher Wen handed a letter to me, saying, "This is for Lao Lun and everyone there. Be careful on your journey. Regardless of whether or not you finish your mission, you should return a bit earlier. You don't have to come here. Going out for such a long time, your family must be very worried. Remember to stay safe."

My eyes grew hot as I recalled all these past days. I held Teacher Wen's hand, saying, "Teacher Wen, I will definitely come back to see you. Take care of your health. I'm going now." Teacher Wen gave me a sly smile and said nothing else.

I did not see Dong Ri and the rest. Forget it, I won't wait for them. I put my things into my dimensional pocket and wore my clothes. It's time to leave this place. I spent about a year here and am reluctant to leave.

While I walked, I recalled all of the friends I made here. My heart felt a sense of loss. I shook my head and said to myself, "Don't think about it anymore. Everyone has their own path. Because when there are meetings, there are departures. I'll still see them in the future". What!? That sign in front of me seems awfully familiar. I approached it and took a look. It's the Mercenary Guild. I recalled my first mission and still hadn't known whether or not I had failed it. I couldn't help but smile bitterly. Oh, that's right. I've been here for such a long time and I still hadn't sought out Long Meng. Because I've been so busy, I had quickly forgotten about him. How embarrassing... I'll go in and try my luck. If we meet, it'll be because of fate's will.

Entering the Mercenary Guild's gate, I noticed it was much larger than the past guild buildings I've been to. It seems the city was of a different magnitude, it even influenced many industries. I looked in all directions. My luck couldn't possibly be this good. In the middle of this noisy crowd, I saw a familiar, tall figure.

I shouted with a loud voice, "Long Meng!"

That tall figure trembled and turned his head. Seeing me, he shouted with pleasant surprise, "Zhang Gong, it's you! You came. For such a long period of time, where did you go off to? I believed you had fallen for those bandit's trap." After saying this, he ran over to me and tightly grabbed both my arms.

I softly sighed and pretended to be depressed, saying, "I didn't come across a trap, I only hadn't been outside for a long time . That's why I hadn't come until now. I am truly sorry."

Long Meng laughed straightforwardly and said, "It's no problem. It's fine as long as you came. The amount of missions I've completed these past days were no small amount. I'm already a D rank mercenary. What are you doing now? We were looking for a place to go drink a cup."

"I can't, I came here to meet with you. I have to go and complete the assignment my teacher had given me. Since I can't go now, next time if matters aren't urgent, I'll definitely accompany you ."

Long Meng pressingly said with a loud voice, "That won't do. It's difficult to see each other. How could I let you leave so quickly? I want to go with you. You are the person I had admired the most in my life. From now on, I won't leave you." Please, no. I'm not some unmarried young woman. Is my sex appeal really that great?

I thought about it and then I brought him aside to the corner. His voice was too loud. I didn't want to attract a crowd. I whispered to him, "Long Meng. You should know by now that our strengths differ greatly . If I bring you along this time, you aren't going to be of help. It could even put you in great danger."

"I'm not afraid of danger, so bring me along alright. I beg of you, I'll even listen to whatever you say. Is this not enough?" He really is a passionate person. Ah, what's to be done? That's right, there's still that method. I sinisterly smiled and said, "Then how about this, I'll introduce you to a great teacher and you'll learn martial skills from him. After you've had some accomplishments, then you can come with me."

Long Meng doubtfully asked, "A great teacher? That's fine. I've always

wanted a master to worship. But my martial skill is too mediocre to even have a master look at me. Is there truly a good teacher?"

I didn't answer him, instead I borrowed a pen from the front desk and wrote a letter. I handed it over to him and explained, "Hold onto this. Go to the Knight's Academy and look for Principal Li Ke Wen. Hand this letter to him and he will make the arrangements. If the guards do not let you in, just use my name and it'll be fine."

Long Meng took the letter and murmured, "Knight Academy. That's the martial heaven I have always yearned to study at. Can I really? I truly thank you Zhang Gong. Then when will you come find me?"

This was a difficult question for me. I didn't know when I would return either. After muttering to myself for a bit, I told him, "I'll come find you in three years. You must diligently practice." Anyways, when the time comes, I can go visit Teacher Wen too. Haha! How could I have possibly known after returning three years later, I had already experienced many great changes.

Long Meng reluctantly parted from me as I walked toward the city gate.

I walked with my head lowered. Suddenly, I felt a formidable grandeur blocking my path. I attentively retreated a few steps back. As I raised my head, I was shocked.

A row of figures was standing in front of me. Not a single one of them was lacking. It was Xiu Si, Dong Ri, Xing Ao and Gao De. It seems they have come to send me off. "You've all come, and here I was thinking you weren't going to see me off." Naturally, I was exceptionally happy, but I was left staring at them slack-jawed once I heard their words.

Xiu Si said, "How are you so slow? We already waited half a day for you. Let's go. Lead us, Captain." He still wore a sinister smile after he finished talking.

"What? What is this about us setting off? You guys, it couldn't be....?"

After glancing at each other, they all simultaneously began grinning and said in unison, "We want to go with you. Haha!"

After hearing them utter these words in unison, I still clearly didn't fully understand. I just mechanically said, "What has Teacher Wen done now? He consented to this?"

Xing Ao said smiling, "Of course he agreed. Otherwise we wouldn't be here. Let's go. Captain, ah no, everyone unanimously decided to have our Brilliant Battle Squad become the Zhang Gong's Bro Harem Brilliant Mercenary Company. It is better to travel like this. When we run out of money, we can make some spending money. You are the commander. Xiu Si is the vice commander."

It was only then that I understood the meaning behind Teacher Wen's furtive smile when I was leaving. It looks like that old man wants his disciples to go on a journey with me. Pretty good. With this many people our safety will increase by a lot. Furthermore, they all possess formidable strength.

Sighing, I said, "Then there's truly nothing to be done about it then. Lets go then everyone." They all let out a cheer since they originally thought I wouldn't be willing to take them along with me. This time they're all very satisfied.

Just like this, we cheerfully set foot onto the road of our true journey.

## Chapter 32: Arriving at Dalu

I lead them straight towards the border of Xiuda and Aixia. At the beginning they thought I had walked in the opposite direction. It was only after I explained that I had to go find someone that they understood

I promised Big Brother Zhan Hu that after my business in Xiuda was over, I would first find him and tell him about the circumstances of his family. Although we had to travel a farther distance, they didn't say anything.

On the journey, I felt that they only came to sightsee. Although Xing Ao and Gao De were each nearly thirty years old, both acted like children. And whenever Dong Ri found something new, he immediately talked about it with others. Likewise the always earnest Xiu Si had relaxed very much.

After an unceasing trudge, we finally arrived at our destination. Just as we entered the mountain, we encountered some trouble. Twenty or so people jumped down from the trees and surrounded us. Their boss yelled, "Halt! Is this somewhere you guys should be going ? Carefully hand over your money and afterwards turn back. Otherwise you can't blame uncle for killing you."

It seems that we've run into Big Brother's subordinates. I walked in front to take a look. Isn't this the guy that was at Big Brother's side from last time? I didn't know if he still recognized me. Without waiting for me to say anything, he loudly said, "Ah! Is that Second Boss?"

Shocked I violently fell and said, "When did I become the Second Boss?"

That bandit said, "Ah, It really is you, Second Boss." Calling me this, when I looked at everyone, they suspiciously glanced at me; I quickly grew faint. Please don't think of me as some bandit leader.

"Don't call me the Second Boss. Is big brother Zhan Hu well?"

"You're the sworn brother of our Boss , so of course you're the Second Boss. The Boss talks about you often daily. You've returned now so hurry up and go. Brothers, open up a path for the Second Boss."

What happened afterwards is unclear. We just followed the twenty or so people into the mountain while I explained to everyone the events through which I came to know Zhan Hu. They all wanted to quickly meet this Heaven Knight who could match my martial arts.

Just as we arrived into the village, Zhan Hu came out and welcomed us. It seems that his scouts reported truly fast. I quickly rushed up and stopped to embrace him. I emotionally said, "Big Brother, I've returned."

"Good, good, good. It's good that you've returned. Go. We'll talk at home."

After returning to Zhan Hu's thatched cottage, I introduced everyone to him. Big brother was extremely happy to meet others from his hometown so he brought out a scrumptious feast in our honour.

At the wine table, seeing Big Brother's impatient expression, I knew what he wanted to ask. I smiled and said, "Big brother, your house is in good condition. After we finished eating, we'll talk in detail." Zhan Hu immediately calmed down.

During this meal, everyone was in very high spirits. Everyone called Zhan Hu, Big Brother. Today Zhan Hu intentionally drank less. I also only tasted it.

Night time. Everyone had already entered into the land of pleasant dreams. Zhan Hu and I went to a small hill. On top of the hill I began explaining the events that happened in the short period of time I had been away. He was extraordinarily happy when he heard that his second brother already reached the rank of a Radiant Knight and he was very anxious when he heard I received a serious injury.

"Big Brother, Big Brother Shan Yun said they really miss you. All along they haven't blamed you. Will you return home earlier? He promised for the time being that he won't speak of you to His Majesty the Prince. I feel like you should return. It has already been many years.

Zhan Hu sighed and said, "I really should go back and take a look. Father is so old now. This unfilial son mustn't let that old man grieve any longer. Once you've obtained the Holy Sword, I'll go back."

"Ah? Big Brother, you want to go too? You don't need to. You should immediately return to Xiuda."

"Foolish brat, is the Holy Sword really that easy to obtain? You are certain to come across danger after danger. If I don't accompany you, how would I feel at ease? You don't need to urge me, as I intend to."

"Big brother....." I emotionally embraced his thick and broad shoulders speechlessly.

When we departed the next day, we had a new member among our ranks. Everybody held Zhan Hu in extremely high esteem since he was my big brother. Thus, we set off on a long journey of learning. Originally it was supposed to be a one man journey, but now it has turned into a journey of six people. I don't know if this would go against Teacher Di's intention but everybody was too enthusiastic for me to refuse them. I had already tried to persuade Big Brother to stay and lead his village. However, his answer was too good. He said that in these last few years the village had saved up not a small amount of money so he would tell them to not go out "hunting" while he was gone. What else could I say to him?

Like that, we head straight to the Kena province of the Dalu Kingdom. This was the only clue that Teacher Di had given me. The route was not short at all. The Kingdom of Dalu was on the other side of Xiuda. In other words, we have to pass through the entire Kingdom of Xiuda. When we set out, everyone picked a fine horse from Zhan Hu's bandit village.

Apart from me, they were all knights, each capable of expertly controlling a horse. I have never rode on a horse before, yet they gave me the tallest, strongest horse. Just as we had started, without even traveling far, my whole body ached. Do I use battle spirit to protect my body? I could no longer stand it and decided this time to learn how to ride a horse. Following everyone's continuous guidance, I can now barely keep up and I no longer feel tired. I originally thought of talking about letting me use teleportation magic to follow them, but everyone unanimously disagreed. That is why I had no choice but to suffer through this bitter hardship.

After nearly two months of trudging along, we finally arrived at the border of the Dalu Kingdom. I looked at the map. This province was still 400 kilometers away. In front of us should be the Lunwa city.

I faced everyone and said, “Once we’ve entered the city ahead of us we’ll rest properly for two days. This short period of madly rushing forward has nearly exhausted me to death.”

Xing Ao replied with a smile, “Ah, the magnificent magister is so exhausted. What a pity that you don’t know wind magic, otherwise you could just fly.”

Xing Ao’s words reminded me of something. As we all continued walking towards Lunwa city, I asked Big Brother Zhan Hu, “I heard from my teacher once that once your martial skill reaches a certain level, you’ll be able to use your battle spirit to fly. Is that true?”

Zhan Hu replied to me in astonishment, “I didn’t expect you to even know this. It’s possible to fly using battle spirit, but you need to have the strength of at least a Heaven Knight. This is also the origin of the name Heaven Knight.”

I excitedly asked, “Then you and Xiu Si can fly?”

Xiu Si interrupted from the side saying, “That’s right. But I can only fly about five kilometers before my battle spirit is exhausted. Big Brother Zhan Hu should be able to fly a bit longer.”

“It’s not that much further.” Big Brother Zhan Hu modestly said.

I yearningly said, “I truly envy you. Ah! It really feels nice to fly in the sky.”

## Chapter 33: Resting at Lunwa

Smiling, Zhan Hu said, “What’s so good about it? We can’t fly like you mages, slow and lasting while admiring the scenery. Using battle spirit to fly consumes it quickly. That’s why we rush forward with all our might. We can’t appreciate the feeling of flying at all.”

“In any case, being able to fly is great. I don’t know when my martial skill will reach such a level.”

Dong Ri said, “Enough, you. You’re already frightening enough. You aren’t even twenty years old yet, and you’ve already become a magister. You still want to become a sky knight? You’re asking for too much.”

Dong Ri’s words were approved by everyone. Even Zhan Hu said that I shouldn’t reach too far and concentrate on learning magic. Although I was the strongest in the company, I was youngest apart from Dong Ri. What could I say to them? I could only obediently let the matter of flying go.

Lunwa City was the first city we arrived at in the Dalu Kingdom. It truly deserves to be called a kingdom of commerce. Within this border town, trade was flourishing greatly. The main street was bustling with noise and excitement. It seemed that everyone was immersed in the pleasures of buying and selling.

We first looked for a relatively good hotel to settle in. In any case, we weren’t lacking money; I hadn’t even made a dent in the thousand diamond coins that Teacher Di had given me when I left home. Not to mention the sizable sum that Big Brother Zhan Hu brought along. After eating dinner, we all gathered together to discuss our future course of action.

I spread out the map on the table. Pointing at the area representing Dalu, I said, “Everyone look. Right now we are here. Four hundred kilometers south is where the Kena province is. Teacher Di said that the holy sword was somewhere in a valley in the Kena province. We will have to search through these forests. Does anyone have any questions?”

Zha Hu said, "This map of yours is too general. I feel like it would be best to buy a map of the Kena province. We should mark the places where it could be and search them one by one. How about it?" Everyone immediately approved of Zhan Hu's ideas.

Xiu Si said, "Right now, this is all we can do. Our clues are too few. We can only search by throwing a net and thoroughly search every bit. No matter what we can't leave out any suspicious areas."

Dong Ri said, "Currently with our strength, we should be able to deal with any danger. What we should be most worried about is not finding the place."

I let out a breath and said, "Alright! Let's go Dong Ri. First we'll find buy a map of Kena province and then we'll discuss this further. Everyone else should rest first. After we come back, let's go eat."

Dong Ri and I arrived at the bustling main street. A few casual questions led us to a small map store. I looked everywhere inside and saw maps of every place. The shopkeeper walked by and asked, "Sirs, where would you like a map of? The maps at this store are the most complete. We basically have maps of the whole continent, even the West Continent is no exception."

I said surprised, "Oh! You even have maps of the West Continent? Could you let me look at them?" The magic race and beast clans were a mystery to me. That is why I wanted to see if there was a difference in the terrain of the east continent.

The shopkeeper brought over a small cylinder sealed on both sides. Opening a side revealing a map made from sheepskin rolled inside. It appeared a bit yellow. It should be quite a few decades old.

After handing over the map to me, he said, "Sir, this was passed down from my ancestry. This is a map of the West Continent from two hundred years ago. Currently, the West Continent should have changed to some extent, but its approximate locations should still be correct."

I took the map. It was drawn meticulously. There were many small regions on it. On the middle-left of the map I found the magic race's

capital, Sadan City. I couldn't help but recall the stunningly beautiful woman of the magic race that I came across. Could she be there now? Thinking of her stunningly beautiful appearance, I could not help but stupidly space out.

"Zhang Gong. Zhang Gong, what are you doing? What are you looking for on the map of the West Continent? Quickly finish our business here." Dong Ri reminded me from the side.

I was roused from my fantasy, "Ah? What did you say? Oh, I know. Shopkeeper, Could you bring us a map of the Kena province? I also want this map of the West Continent. How much will it cost altogether?"

The shopkeeper said, "A map of the Kena province is two copper coins. This map of the West Continent will cost you two diamond coins."

Dong Ri said loudly, "Two diamond coins? You may as well rob us. Zhang Gong, give that map back to him."

I held out my hand to block Dong Ri. From my chest pocket, I took out my amethyst card and handed it over to the shopkeeper. With a look of the amethyst card, the shopkeeper knew that we weren't any ordinary people. With a smile reaching across his face, he said, "Truly, this humble man had eyes but could not recognize Mt Tai. I will gift the map of the Kena province to you, but for this West Continent map..."

I impatiently waved my hand and said, "Its price is its price. Hurry up!" Seeing that I truly wanted to buy this, Dong Ri said no more. After the shopkeeper finished the payment with the amethyst card, he respectfully returned it to me. I placed the map of the West Continent in my dimensional pocket. With the map of the Kena province in hand, Dong Ri and I returned to the inn.

While walking, I asked Dong Ri, "When you left, you didn't tell that little sister, Hong Xue, did you? Haha."

With a bitter smile, Dong Ri said, "Don't make fun of me about that. When I came, I didn't tell her. What is the status of her house? And what is my status? It's not possible for us.

"That's enough already. You're saying it again. We've told you how many times? Don't feel so inferior. You are no different from other people. Just say whether or not you like Hong Xue!"

Dong Ri's face grew red and evasively said, "It could happen."

"Hehe, that's what you call liking her. I see Hong Xue also really likes you. What could be happier than a harmonious couple. Go after her already. Teacher Wen will surely act as your host. This time, you left without saying anything. Hong Xue will feel sad not knowing. When we go back you'll have to go beg for forgiveness!"

[TL Note: Teacher Wen would stand in as Dong Ri's father when Dong Ri's asks for Hong Xue's hand in marriage.]

Embarrassed, Dong Ri said, "Let's talk of this when we return!"

On the way, Dong Ri said nothing more. It seems that he was thinking about little sister Hong Xue. I did not bother him further.

Returning to the hotel, Big Brother Zhan Hu saw my holding the map and said with a smile, "You bought it at last! Put it down, let's go eat first. We're about to starve. Let's continue discussing the map after we return."

We looked for a quiet table to sit at the inn's restaurant. We ordered an impressive meal and began to comfort our stomachs. In these many days, we did not have a single delicious meal. The meal was eaten in a frenzy and costed no less than forty gold coins. The food truly made our hearts ached!

## Chapter 34: Nature Elves

After we returned to room, I unfolded the newly bought map of the Kena province. Whoa, this Kena Province isn't small at all. There are eight cities along with many forests and valleys of all sizes.

Xing Ao exclaimed, "There are so many forests and valleys! How will we ever find it?"

Xiu Si was still calm. He thought about it and said, "Seeing the map as it is, we should split each valley into pieces and search them one by one. We should start this as soon as possible." As he said this, he pointed at the southmost forest of Kena.

Two days later, our party of six arrived at the edge of the Kena province's Long Jing Forest. Finally, we started our true adventure. Because we were going through forests and valleys, we rode to the closest town by horse and prepared a sufficient amount of food, water, and a few other essential goods for the wilderness. After we advanced to the Long Jing Forest, we found the food to be too lacking. When we were hungry, we went hunting.

We did not come across any dangers on our journey. We only encountered the occasional small animal, keeping us company. After the Nth time I took out the map, I said to Zhan Hu, "Big Brother, look. We are currently here. If we continue forward, we'll enter the depths of the Long Jing Forest."

Zhan Hu nodded. Suddenly he felt something amiss and turned his head, calling out to everyone, "Everyone, careful! There may be dangers ahead of us." As he said this, he took out his knight's sword.

I had also felt a formidable force lingering nearby; I did not know whether it was friend or foe. "Oh Great Light Elements, I request of you to transform into a divine radiance, expel all evil." This is large area light exorcism spell. A dazzling radiance emitted from my body, enveloping an entire hundred meter radius.

A cold and gloomy voice came from the depths of the forest, "Ignorant

humans, who allowed you to come here and sully my sacred, pure lands. If you do not immediately withdraw, you shall forever remain here. This is your final warning.”

Next to me, it was as if Dong Ri was suddenly hit by evil and became distracted. Then he walked to the very front of the group and deeply bowed his body to the depths of the forest. “Excuse me, are those in front of us, elves?”

As we saw Dong Ri act as such, we did not stop him and only calmly looked at how he would progress.

That gloomy and cold voice returned, “Don’t believe you are extraordinary because you know of our identity. If you do not withdraw, I will launch an assault.”

Dong Ri hastily said, “Wait a moment, I am also an elf.” After hearing Dong Ri’s words, they did not answer. After a moment, a faint silhouette floated out. Its speed was incomparably fast. It gradually floated toward us. It was a very old elf. Not only that but it also seems that he should be an ancient race of forest elves because he had wings. Currently, many elves and half elves no longer had wings.

He came close to us and looked at Dong Ri up and down, saying with disdain, “Your kind can be considered elves? You are merely a human assimilated half-elf. For what purpose have you brought this many humans to this elf forest?”

Standing on the side, I found those words unacceptable and interrupted, “What’s wrong with a half elf? Everyone has life. What is there that is noble or lowly? Old man, did you purchase this forest? Why do you not let us enter? Unless you have a secret.”

Hearing my words, the old elf was enraged. With a wave of his hand, he sent a faint green energy towards me. I was taken aback. Could this be an elf’s natural power? This kind of extraordinary power lies between martial skill and magic. Only pure elves could use it.

I immediately waved my hand, bringing a white energy to face his attack. The formidable power had unexpectedly shocked my body,

causing me to sway. This was truly ferocious. I reckon this old elf has at the very least, a magister's strength. To think we would come across such a difficult elf.

Seeing me resist his attack, he was very surprised and said, "You aren't so arrogant after all. It turns out you have a bit of skill." In his mind he thought to himself, if the people of this party are all this powerful, then this will be truly hard to handle.

Xiu Si, who had not said a word all this time, walked over and said to the old elf, "Respected Senior, Greetings. We are the Brilliant Mercenary Company. We came here with no evil intentions. We were only entrusted with a task to find a certain item. May I ask what is this place?"

Xiu Si words gave this stubborn elder a way out of embarrassment. With slight embarrassment, he said, "This boy is quite courteous. This place is the outskirts of our elf forest. What are you looking for?"

Xiu Si looked at me and I nodded back to him. Xiu Si continued, "It is as such. We are looking for the holy sword. Could you give us directions to a clearer path?"

After hearing our words, the old elf laughed heartily. After a while, he stopped and said, "You want to find the holy sword by yourselves? After all these years, with the innumerable thousands that searched for it, not one had succeeded."

Hearing that the old elf had unexpectedly know of the holy sword, I hastily asked, "Then do you know where the holy sword is?"

The old elf proudly raised his head and said, "Naturally, I know this. If you want me to tell you, that is possible. But first you must help me with a certain matter. After you've finished this, I will tell you."

"Alright, tell us. We'll give it a try." With the appearance of such an opportunity, we absolutely could not let this go.

Xiu Si unexpectedly said, "Wait a moment. Do you have proof that you truly know the whereabouts of the holy sword? If we complete your task, what's to be done if you don't fulfill your promise?"

The old elf's jaw dropped and said, "You believe everyone is untrustworthy as you humans? Us elves are always true to our word. I swear on my identity as an Elder of the Nature Elves that so long as the humans before me repel the Dark Elves' assault, I will tell them the location of the holy sword. If I break my oath, may the Heaven's punishment destroy me." Following his word, his body let out an awe-inspiring grandeur.

Seeing that he hadn't lied, I said, "Good. We agree. But what is this matter about Dark Elves ?"

The old elf looked at me and said, "Dark elves have always been our Nature Elves' mortal enemy. Originally, our strengths were matched. However, recently, without knowing why, this balance was broken. The Dark Elves power had suddenly increased greatly. Almost all of the Dark Elves' powers had greatly increased from before. They beat us back, forcing us to retreat step by step. If this continues, we could face the danger of extermination. I am one of the Nature Elves' elders. I had originally came out hoping to find an old friend of mine and ask for help. I hadn't expected to come across you."

## Chapter 35: Elven Dispute

With this said, the elderly elf displayed a human side of him. It appears that he is not incapable of accepting humans. He continued saying, "If it is possible, let us talk as we walk." Saying this, he lightly flapped his elf wings forward, leading the way."

I curiously asked, "How are you certain that we aren't villains? Is it not possible that instead we would help the Dark Elves get rid of you?"

The elderly elf laughed and said, "You are truly a child. Do you know how old I am this year? This year I am 1,446 years old. Those of the elven race are all long lived. I've seen a great deal. If I'm not mistaken, what you just used a moment ago should be light magic. In addition, you should at the very least be at the level of a magister. Those that can use light magic are all of pure and virtuous character. That is the reason why I let you help us."

Dong Ri suddenly interrupted, saying, "Do you know which type of elf I am?" It seemed he wanted to ask about his own life.

The elderly elf smiled and said, "Of course I know. If we're talking about in general, elves can be divided into two main types. One type is us, nature elves. You are of this type. The other is our enemy, the dark elves. With regards to the number of dark elves on the entire continent, we are the unconditional majority. However with regards to strength, we can only compare the quantity of pure blooded elves. This is because only pure blood elves have the ability to bring out their true fighting strength. For example, you are incapable of using the power of nature."

Dong Ri somewhat disappointed, said, "Then you don't know where I specifically came from?"

The elderly elf helplessly said, "There are too many nature elves in this world. If you were a pure elf, I would be able to check. But presently, I'm afraid..."

Seeing Dong Ri's disappointed appearance, I immediately broke off from this topic and asked, "How many pure blooded elves does each of the two

races have? What about fighting strength?"

"Right now the population of pure blooded elves has been greatly thinned out due to many years of campaigning. Each side has about a thousand pure bloods. The Dark Elves already attacked our village this morning. The forest this village is located in is actually the most suitable place on this whole continent for elves to reside in. It's because of this that the Dark Elves are trying to destroy us."

With a nod, I said, "Why can't everybody just live together in harmony? With such a large forest, what's there to be afraid of 2,000 people? It's only if you are willing that the rivers of blood will flow."

The elderly elf sighed and said, "If everyone thought like you did, the world would have no conflict. I find myself liking you more and more, boy."

"In that case, I don't dislike you either, old man, haha." We laughed heartily together.

Xiu Si said, "Senior, how much further until we reach the village? Let's hurry a bit and avoid needless injuries."

The elderly elf said, "Alright. Follow me closely." He turned into a faint shadow and flew onward.

Big Brother Zhan Hu followed him up, carrying Xing Ao on his left hand and Dong Ri on his right. Xiu Si followed closely, carrying Ao De. I ended up leisurely using short distance teleportation to follow them, neither slowly nor closely.

Not knowing how far we traveled, the elderly elf stopped and waited for us to come before him. He gave everyone a favorable smile and slowly walked onward.

"In front of us is the village's rear. Let's go in and see how it is."

Turning at a small hill, an elf village reflected into our eyes. What a large village. It's even larger than Zhan Hu's bandit village. Busy admiring the scenery, we followed the elderly elf into the village. Everyone seemed to be very busy.

The elderly elf stopped an adult elf and asked, "Shan Nian, what's the situation?"

The fully grown elf named Shan Nian replied, "Third Elder, you've returned. Please go over at once. The Dark Elves' King is currently engaging with ours. It is practically a melee."

The elderly elf called out to us to advance towards another side of the village. I noticed that all of the elves here have two wings. Their capabilities are much greater than that of outside elves. The majority of the elves had swords as their weapon of choice.

After arriving in front of two battle formations, the battlefield was truly bleak with a dark sky and a black earth. I noticed that there wasn't much of a difference between the Dark Elves and the Nature Elves. Nature Elves had green hair, blue eyes, and green wings, while Dark Elves had black hair, violet eyes, and black wings. This was the only difference, everything was basically the same between them. They both had similar appearances.

I looked towards the field and saw two adult elves engaged in fierce combat. From their fluctuations of energy, I could tell that they were the kings of each side. On the Nature Elves' side, there were three elves about the same age as the elderly elf who were anxiously watching this battle.

The elderly elf walked to their side and asked, "What's the situation?"

A different elderly elf replied, "Third Elder, you've returned. We don't have any reinforcements left and we've already battled 10 times. Unexpectedly, it has been one-sided the entire time. If our king loses again, I fear they will rush forward and beat us all." (For the sake of convenient address, the following will be called the Great Elder, Second Elder, Third Elder and the Fourth Elder. The one who brought us over was the Third Elder.)

Sighing, the Third Elder said, "How did it become like this? Is the difference really that great? Don't tell me.... is this the day our kind is destroyed?"

I went up to him and comfortingly said, "Don't worry! We'll definitely

help you.” The Third Elder appreciatively nodded at me and introduced me to the other three elders.

At this moment of intense battle, the Nature Elf King grasped his sword in both hands and shouted, “Venerated nature spirits, heed my call, become a destroying power and annihilate the evil before you — Nature’s Punishment!” Following this, he slashed with his sword and a wave of green energy that hid the sky and covered the earth flew towards the Dark Elf King.

In a single breath, the Dark Elf King disdainfully said, “It’s been so many years yet we’re still going through this routine. You won’t do anything else so I’ll let you see my ultimate technique. Endless evil, endless resentment, become the endless darkness and devour everything — Endless Devourer.” An ash black smog started pouring out of the Dark Elf King’s body, covering a large area and charged towards the Nature Elf King with a mournful cry. The two energies opposed each other in the sky. The energy emitted by the Nature Elf King was compressed little by little and forced back. It was clearly falling back and it would soon be unable to hold on any longer.

## Chapter 36: Repelling the Enemy

What is this magic? Could this be the Dark Elves' distinctive skill? From the Elder's surprised expressions, I could tell that they've never seen this spell before. It was more or less the same as the magic used by that Bamboo Pole I met from the magic race. Yet it seemed quite different. I don't know how.

The Third Elder murmured, "This isn't the power of a Dark Elf. Where did this evil power come from?"

Right at this moment, the Nature Elves' King was no longer able to endure and fell, having succumbed to the power of the formidable evil devourer. The four Nature Elves' Elders used their power of nature to catch their king.

The dark power still relentlessly pursued him. It's time for me to lend a hand. "Oh Great Light elements, I request of you to allow me to borrow your formidable strength. Let the infinite light of the earth shine, Brilliant Empire!" This is a spell I am quite familiar with, I slowly floated from the floor and met the evil power head on. My whole body emitting blinding white light, I raised my head. A third of my magic power came out of the gold dan within my upper dantian and covered my body. I gathered together the energy of the light elements into a pillar of light approximately two meters wide and sent it straight forward.

My pillar of light and his Endless Devourer collided into each other. The mist of black ash let out a mournful blood-curdling screech. Perhaps because of the great amount of energy it had just used, it dispersed upon clashing with my Brilliant Empire. The Dark Elf King immediately brandished his longsword to resist the remaining energy of my Brilliant Empire.

"Who are you to dare interfere in a matter between us elves?"

I faintly smiled, "Hello Dark Elf King. Your question is quite foolish. I am obviously a human. As to why I interfered, it is only natural I have a reason. In such a large elven forest, why can't everyone get along? Killing

each other only causes more hurt feelings.”

The Dark Elf King body let out an evil, icy air and sinisterly said, “What do you understand? This subspecies of elves also deserve to live in this forest? Only us Dark Elves are the elves’ genuine rightful rulers. Tactfully depart at once or else you shall meet a tragic end.”

Why do the elves care this much about their racial origins? Is there difference between this and the struggle between commoners and nobles? I shook my head and sighed, saying, “You are truly obsessed and do not understand. You believe that by using power that is not your own, you can take over the elven forest?”

The dark elf king said with great alarm, “How do you know that I use power that isn’t mine?” Haha, I guessed correctly. I calmly replied to him, “Dark elves should be using dark magic. But that magic you just used was not dark magic. I will give you an opportunity to quickly leave or else you will suffer the inescapable fate of clan extermination.”

After I said what I felt, the Dark Elf King felt my words were timid. I covered my body in light elements and chanted, “Oh Great Light Elements, my friends, bestow me your pure strength, expel all resentment, let the spring winds warm and illuminate the Earth, World Illumination.” This was the most powerful spell I could currently use, a rank eight support spell. Not only that but the highest ranked support spell. It can expel all anomalies from a large area and has devastating firepower against dark magic.

Following my chat, I slowly floated off the floor. My body emitted a pure and holy white radiance. With the continuous magic power flowing out of my body, the white brilliance gradually became a dazzling golden light. While the gold light quickly saturated the white light, it burst forth vertically towards the sky. A golden ray of light of about a diameter of a meter rushed toward the direction of the sun.

The Dark Elf King was starting to become scared, but when saw that he had not suffered an attack. He said with disdain, “Was that just to scare? All Dark Elf Soldiers, prepare to attack!” All of the dark elves unfolded a

pair of black wings and raised their black longswords. It was during this bloody prelude that something unexpected had happened.

The sky suddenly changed color. It was no longer blue, but golden. Golden rays of light illuminated the Earth, giving people a feeling of warmth. All of the Nature Elves, even the Nature Elf King, all felt the beauty of the light. The wounded soldiers gradually recovered their strength and the light dispelled their corruption.

But it had an opposite effect for the Dark Elves. Under the illumination of the light, their bodies experienced extreme pain. Even those stronger were unable to bear it. Those weaker had already begun to drop to the floor. The Dark Elf King cried out in alarm, "What did you do? What did you do to my clansmen?" Brandishing his longsword, he threw himself towards me.

I lifted my hand and sent out a ray of light, forcing him back. I gently said, "This is light magic, specialized to expel evil. Stop, Dark Elf King. Could it be that you don't care and wish to see your clansmen suffer in such a way? Could it be you want the Dark Elves to now be exterminated?"

Although the Dark Elf King's power was profound, he still felt unwell. He couldn't even produce a half of his might. He hesitated and knew that today, he would not be able to annex the Nature Elves. He hatefully said, "Fine. Withdraw your magic. We will leave."

I faintly smiled and withdrew my magic power. I secretly let out a sigh of relief. Actually, the current burden was far too great. In supporting such a large area advanced spell I had quickly reached my limit. Having them quickly retreat was certainly good.

The Dark Elf King gazed at me with great enmity and said, "I will remember this day well. I surely won't let you get away with this. Withdraw!"

The energy I used to support the spell scattered and floated down to the ground. The Nature Elves let out an earthshaking cheer. The Third Elder came over and gripped my hand and said, "We are truly grateful to you.

Were if not for your assistance, we may have not survived this crisis.”

My body instantly swayed and Dong Ri immediately came over to supported me. I bitterly smiled and said, “Had they not retreated, I’m afraid we would have had to stake it all. I am nearly exhausted from supporting such a large spell. Lucky, so lucky.”

The Nature Elves crowded around us six and returned to the village. The Third Elder started to frown and worry again. I asked him, “What’s wrong? The Dark Elf King retreated. Why are you still so worried?”

The Third Elder said, “Although they retreated, a moment ago, our king received a grave injury while fighting. None of our medical treatments have any effect. How could I not worry?”

I looked at the magic power within me. I should still have enough to use Spiritual Restoration without problem. A good person is almost dead. “Let’s go, I’ll go with you to take a look.”

## Chapter 37: Spirit of Hospitality

The Third Elder and I went to the Nature Elf King's bedroom. Not in the mood for admiring the room's splendor, I tensely walked forward to his bed. All I saw was the pained expression of the Nature Elf King as he constantly moaned and groaned. A faint black gas was leaking out of his face. It seems that his pure nature power and the evil power were currently struggling against each other. I'll help him out then.

"Oh Great Light Elements, as your friend, I request you to dispel this evil using your endless strength and save the person before you." This is the strengthened version of my Spiritual Restoration. Not only was it very effective at recovery, it was also very effective for removing abnormal states. A pure white light was emitted from my hands, covering the whole body of the Nature Elf King. In the wake of the white light, the black gas gradually faded causing him to become more and more peaceful.

After letting out a breath of relief, I faced the Third Elder and said, "I'm finished. There shouldn't be anymore problems now. It's just that that His Majesty the Nature Elf King has exhausted his mental strength while I have basically completely healed his body. He only needs to rest now, so we should all leave now."

Emotionally, the Third Elder grabbed my hands but I stopped speaking and instead dragged him out of the room.

"I truly can't express how grateful I am. I don't know how to repay you for this favor you have done for us Nature Elves."

"It's fine. Just quickly give us some delicious foods and drinks then arrange a place for us afterwards and you can consider the favor repaid. I'm about to die from exhaustion, so stop holding onto me like an old woman. Let's go." Saying so, I dragged him back to everyone.

After the Nature Elves found out i cured their king, they all began to cheer happily. I couldn't bother with this so I found a comfortable chair, closed my eyes and began resting. Naturally I told Dong Ri that he definitely has to tell me when it's time to eat.

So fragrant, very fragrant. What is that smell? My nose had awakened my eyes. Hazily, I saw a big table filled with food. I shook my dazed head a few times and began moving my aching muscles and bones.

"What delicious foods are these, that smell is so savory! You guys truly aren't acting as brothers! You didn't even tell me!"

In response, Zhan Hu burst into laughter and said, "Look. It happened just like I said! As long as there are delicious foods, Zhang Gong doesn't even need to be told. Ah, his nose isn't any worse than his magic." Zhan Hu's words caused the whole room to roar in laughter.

Embarrassed, I arrived at the seat left for me at the table. It seems that the Nature Elves really are courteous. Without any formalities, I simply sat down and said, "So what if my nose is good? It's only good for finding delicious food. Ah. All of the Elders are here. No need to be formal. Go ahead and eat everybody; no need to wait for me." I grabbed an unfamiliar violet fruit and ate it. Ah, it's so sweet! It's fragrant and sweet juices immediately permeated throughout my body. Simply too splendid.

Sitting beside, Dong Ri nudged me. He was indicating that I should act a bit more elegant. I'll just ignore him. My stomach is already hungry, so how could I still bother with something like that? It's not like this is a marriage interview.

The Great Elder began speaking, "Everybody, hurry up and eat. No need for formalities." It was only after his words that everybody finally began moving.

The elven banquet had a focus on fruit. The fragrant aroma was actually the various fruits they brewed and fermented, making drinks that were simply too tasty. Mellow and rich fragrant wines were mixed together with all kinds of balmy fruits. After it entered my stomach, a warm current would spread throughout my body from the wine. It was exceptionally comfortable and was very effective at relaxing my fatigued body. Big Brother Zhan Hu simply loved the wine so much that he couldn't part with it. Each drink he took caused the elders to feel a pain in their hearts. I heard from the elders that this fruit wine was very hard to

make and they only took it out for the most respected of guests. The wine had some effect of maintaining one's youthful appearance. When the wine first entered the mouth, there wasn't much of an impact, but after a bit, there would be an powerful impact. The elders all continuously urged us to drink a bit less. They really are stingy. Apart from Dong Ri, we were all becoming drunkards. We were still polite though. I originally wanted to inquire about the Holy Sword, but after a while I couldn't manage to do it. Forget about it. I'll ask about it tomorrow. Right now I should just replenish my strength. Haha!

While stroking my round stomach filled with food, an elf lead me to my room. To speak the truth, I was very tired. My spiritual strength has already been exhausted. After laying down on the bed, there I began feeling dizzy. It seems that the fruit wine really does have a powerful aftereffect! I examined the state of my magic power and discovered that it's actually quite good. I still have about 30% of it left. WIth this I'll be able to recover back to 80% tomorrow. While in a daze, I entered the land of dreams.

Dawn. I was extremely excited because Xiao Jin had finally awakened from the deep sleep he has been in since the incident at the tournament. Through our spirit connection, I knew that his magic consumption was very great last time so he had to lay dormant for a while to recover. Now he was basically fully recovered. Xiao Jin is my most powerful assistant but in a certain sense, Xiao Jin could still be considered very weak. If he didn't have the support of my magic power, he would only be able to endure 3-5 minutes of attacks. It really is too short. If we encountered a powerful opponent he wouldn't have much of an effect. I didn't have a good way to increase his strength either. Forget about it. For the time being I won't bother with that. Now that I am a magister I generally didn't need his help. My own magic power was also about the same; it had recovered to about 80%.

I let a royal guard elf bring me to find the Third Elder. We'll have to depart after asking him about the location of the Holy Sword.

The royal guard returned and told me, "The elder invites you and your

friends to go discuss your matter in the reception hall. I'll lead the way." Following the royal guard, we arrived at a very large building.+

The Third Elder welcomed me outside saying, "Zhan Gong, you've arrived. I've already told the royal guard to go get your friends so they should be arriving soon."

I politely replied, "Hello elder. Thank you for yesterday's hospitality. How is His Majesty the Nature Elf King?"+

"Luckily you were there to treat him. Right now His Majesty has already recovered greatly. He's waiting for you inside the building."

"Then we should quickly enter." Following the Third Elder, I entered the room. This room is so gorgeous! The floor was made of an unfamiliar stone with 12 pillars surrounding the center. On the roof there was an engraving and in the middle of the room was an extremely large oval table. Arranged around the table were roughly 30 to 40 chairs. On top of the table there were many different fruits displayed. It seems like they had already prepared for this. The Nature Elf King was seated at the head seat.

After seeing me, the Nature Elf King immediately stood up and said, "Magister Wei, you've arrived. Please take a seat." The strength I had revealed yesterday could be seen by anyone with eyes so I didn't find it strange at all that they knew I was a magister. However, this was the first time anyone had addressed me like this. I wasn't used to it at all. He had me sit to the seat right beside him on his left.

"It's fine if you just call me Zhang Gong Your Majesty."

The Nature Elf King didn't take a sit down with me, rather he deeply bowed to me. "I must first thank this powerful Magister's kindness for the aid you have given to my people as well as for saving my life." As he walked towards me, I sprang up straight just before I sat down and said, "By all means, you don't have to mention it. Aiding you all is what we ought to have done. We also need some aid from you all so it's just everyone mutually benefitting. That's all. No need to thank me. Besides, I'm a person who likes peace. So I'm very happy with being able to repel

the Dark Elves assault without causing any deaths”

## Chapter 38: Guidance to the Next Path

"No matter how you say it, without your assistance, we would have suffered a genocide. We still have to thank you." I thought to myself, "This Elf King is far too polite; this is truly enough to tire me."

Suddenly, I thought of a bright idea. I whispered in voice only he could hear into his ear, "If you truly want to thank me, then when I leave, you can send me off with all kinds of fruit wines. That will be enough."

Hearing my words, the Nature Elf King complexion changed, and whispered to me equally as quiet, "Magister Wei, yesterday your group drank half a year's worth of wine. I can only give you little more."

"If it is difficult, then forget about it."

The Elf King smiled bitterly and said, "Do you know how much money we could make if we sell our elven made wines to human nations? A small bottle can be sold for 10,000 diamond coins or higher. When you leave, I will give you a few bottles. Be sure to tell those countless elves wanting to be your friends that I have already gifted you, otherwise they'll all want me to..."

I sent an understanding glance toward him and smiled.

"What made you two so happy?" Zhan Hu and everyone walked in a line and sat one by one to the right of me.

I guiltily said, "Big Brother, you all came. Just now, I was telling his Majesty a joke."

The Elf King said, "Third Elder, since everyone is present, tell them all we know about the Holy Sword."

The Third Elder agreed and said, "First, I, on behalf of the entire Nature Elven race, express sincere respect toward all of you. Thank you for assistance in allowing my race to survive through this crisis."

Zhan Hu laughed with a smile and said, "Please don't thank us. If such a time ever comes again, all you would need is to give us a few more bottles of your hundred fruit wines." Others one by one expressed their

agreement. Even Dong Ri, who did not particularly like drinking, nodded. Sure enough, I gave the Elf King the correct answer.

I had to cheat everyone this time for my delicious fruit wine. “Let it go. Big Brother, yesterday we drank a whole year produced of wine. They don’t have any more in stock.” The Elf King and I looked at each other with a mutual understanding.

Zhan Hu disappointedly licked his lips and continued, “Had I known yesterday, I would have drank a bit less.”

I signaled Third Elder to continue. He continued, “The Holy Sword, it is said to be the remaining weapon of the king of all gods long ago. It has the might to destroy the heavens and exterminate the earth. According to the ancient legends of my race, it should be within the Forest of Gods.”

“The Forest of Gods? I’ve never heard of it before.” I doubtedly asked.

“Right. That is how it should be. Since ancient times, Us Nature Elves have been named Emissaries of the Gods. That is why only we know of this secret. Actually, we’ve seen many treasure hunters like yours. However, those who searched in the Forest of Gods are few. Even if you find the Forest of Gods, you would not be able to pass the boundary created by the gods. In all this time, not one had found the Holy Sword. You are the first group in three hundred years to hunt treasure here.”

“Boundary? We can’t enter, even with our power?” The power of us six is enough to handle a small army.

“Your group’s power is truly strong. When I was young, I have seen power not inferior to that of your group of humans, but they were not able to enter. It is said that to pass through this boundary, not only do you need strength, but you also need to receive the acknowledgement of the gods. This is all we know. As to how to enter the Forest of Gods, even we do not know this. However, it should not be too dangerous. You’ll be able to drive away what comes.

I originally believed that because of our strength that completing this mission shouldn’t be hard, but I hadn’t expect this to be so complicated. I bitterly smiled and said, “Thank you for telling us this. So where is this

Forest of Gods? We will go and try our luck.”

The Third Elder smiled and said, “Zhang Gong, don’t worry. I feel that you are the kind of person that gives others an unusual feeling of intimacy. Although the time we’ve known each other was not long, I am unable to not see you as a friend. The Gods should be fond of kindhearted people. In addition, you can also use light magic. Therefore the chances of the gods accepting you are quite high.”

Hearing the Third Elder’s Words, Xiu Si continued, saying, “That’s right. Xing Ao, Gao De and I all feel this way. At the start, we were not particularly convinced of him. However, the longer we were together, the more reliable he became. Unconsciously, he already became our friend.”

I looked at everyone. It really seems to be this way. I have no absolute enemies and people I spend little time with have exceptional confidence in me. Originally, I had believed this was because I was really handsome. But it turns out it was only because of my affinity with others. I was truly disappointed.

“That’s enough. Everyone stop praising me. Third Elder please talk about the location of Forest of Gods.”

The Third Elder chuckled, “Actually, you are already in the Forest of Gods.”

His words rendered us speechless. He continued on, “We’re only at its exterior. Where we are in the Elves’ Forest is the Forest of the Gods exterior. Head deeper in and it will be the Forest of Gods.”

Zhan Hu smiled and said, “Zhang Gong, our luck is so great. After a small detour, we’ll have to travel no further. Elder, we’ll have to inconvenience you to bring us there.”

Third Elder pondered, then said, “A rule of our elven ancestors is troublingly to never approach a hundred kilometers of the Forest of Gods. I can only tell you its approximate location. If you walk in the direction I told you, you should be able to find it.”

“That is also fine. Then we will now set off.”

Just as I stood up to leave, I saw the Elf King wear a troubling expression. It seemed he wanted to say something. "Your Majesty, do you want to say something else?"

The Elf King gave an embarrassed smile and said, "That's right. Although this time the Dark Elves retreated, I still fear..."

I suddenly realized they still feared another attack. This was a true problem. I scratched my head. Ah that's right, it was like that. I took a book out of my dimensional pocket and handed it over to the Elf King and said, "This is a book of light elementary and intermediate spells I wrote myself. There are many small spells I created inside. Have your elven soldiers learn them well. With their elven innate magic, they should be able to grasp it quickly. This way you do not have to fear them."

The Elf King took the book and looked through it, saying, "This doesn't seem right. These are magic illustrations."

"Ah! I'm sorry, I gave the wrong one." I immediately switched books. Oh that's right, I still hadn't studied this book's magic. I should look at it when I have the time.

(Actually, the magic within is a subject of extraordinarily profound knowledge. When the Child of Light comes across his greatest difficulty, he discovered what a mistake it was to not learn that magic earlier.)

# Chapter 39: The Forest of Gods

Dusk, outside of the Forest of Gods.

“Peng!” With that sound, a halo of light burst forth and filled the sky.

Seven days ago, the Third Elder smoothly guided us to God’s Barrier. During this week, we lost count of the many methods we had used to attempt to break through this barrier. We used magical attacks, battle spirit attacks, combined attacks and penetrating attacks (all on the same place) and still we failed.

“I don’t have anymore strength. It seems like we don’t have any hopes of doing it today either.” After firing off two rank 8 spells, I sat down beside Zhan Hu in exhaustion.

Xiu Si wrinkled his eyebrows and said, “Could it be that this is truly a barrier created by the Gods? Even with all of our attacks, we were unable to harm it in the slightest. It truly is too frightening.”

Xing Ao furiously replied, “I refuse to believe that! I’ll go try again.” As he said this, he concentrated his battle spirit into his knight’s sword and released a powerful slash. “Peng!” Needless to say, the barrier rebounded again.

This barrier was transparent and whenever it faced an attack, it would release seven brilliant colors of light. We didn’t know how much strength it had. I estimated that a forbidden spell wouldn’t be able to penetrate it.

I muttered, “Don’t tell me we truly have to give up? What face would I have left if I have to tell Teacher Di that I left this mountain of treasure empty handed?”

Dong Ri walked to my side and consoled me, “Don’t think too hard about it. A sincere heart is most effective. Let’s just rest for today and continue tomorrow.”

Dong Ri’s words moved me and I eagerly asked him, “What did you just say?”

Dong Ri stared at me blankly and said, “I said that we should rest first

and continue tomorrow! What's the matter?"

"That's not it. The part before it."

"Before that I told you not to think about it too hard. A sincere heart is most effective."

"Yes, yes ,yes! That's the part. A sincere heart is most effective. A sincere heart is most effective... Could it be that the method we are using is wrong?"

After hearing my words, Xiu Si's eyes also began to shine. "That's right! Could it be that we aren't supposed to attack it but rather appease it?

I thought about it and said, "Forget about it. We'll just leave it be for today. Everyone's already exhausted so we'll have a good rest first, and then we'll carefully study it tomorrow."

We laid down on a bed of spread tree leaves and looked at the sky's stars. How do we break through this indestructible barrier? Strength won't work. Softness of a sincere heart, what method of sincerity would work? These thoughts continued to flash through my mind, causing me to toss in bed, unable to sleep. Forget about it. I couldn't sleep anyway, so I'll meditate. I'll replenish my magic power as soon as possible and think about it tomorrow.

I gradually concentrated my mind on my Gold Dan. I felt fully relaxed and sensed the surrounding light elements. Much of the bright full moon's light gathered towards me. I thought to myself, 'Beloved friends, come. I need you.'

Following the arrival of the light elements, the Gold Dan gradually enriched itself. An unknown amount of time had past and my Gold Dan had already replenished its energy. This feeling of fullness is truly comfortable. I opened my eyes. The day had just dawned. Everyone was still dreaming. I walked by myself to the edge of the barrier and lightly stroked the indestructible barrier with my hand. I sighed to myself ten million times. After a year of effort, we finally reached here but to stop now was unbearable.

As I watched the lush forest on the other side of the barrier, my mind gradually became more and more tranquil. Ah, what a beautiful scene. At that moment, the barrier's energies suddenly fluctuated where I placed my hand. Could it be that....?

I probed the barrier while thinking of beauty and peace. Prudently, I began inserting some of my spiritual power. In response to my spiritual power, the barrier's energy began trembling again before it unexpectedly began to gradually accept my spiritual power.

A warm benevolent voice resounded from the bottom of my heart, giving me a fright. "Who dares to disturb my eternal rest." Could it be that that barrier is actually alive? I telepathically replied to the barrier, "Hello, I accidentally disturbed your peace. I came here in search of the Holy Sword."

"Holy Sword? Child, it has been a long time since anyone has come here. I advise you to stop your search for it here."

"Why?"

"Because I have sensed the goodness in your heart. I don't want to see you throw your life away."

"This is the mission that my teacher has entrusted to me. Regardless of how difficult it is, I must go complete it. I beseech of you, please allow me to enter."

It took half a day for him to give me a reply. "Grandpa Barrier, is it alright?"

"Fine then. It's very dangerous inside. There are three difficulties that you must pass. Each one is harder than the one before, so you must be careful. You and your friends can enter then. All of you must look after each other and in the case that you are unable to pass the ordeal, you must by all means not stay any longer and withdraw quickly. Don't sacrifice your own life in vain."

"Alright. Thank you Grandpa Barrier." It seems that addressing him this way made him really happy.

I didn't know how lucky I actually was. First of all, this barrier was setup by the God of Creation and unknown number of years ago. Any evil or violent powers were all stopped by it. After my accidental display of benevolence, I had unexpectedly awoken this un-named "Grandpa Barrier". Secondly, in my discussion with Grandpa Barrier, my resolute conviction allowed me to obtain his admiration. This was crucial to me winning over Grandpa Barrier. If I hadn't been able to obtain his permission, it would have been impossible for me to enter this barrier.

I returned to everyone's side and shouted, "Get up everybody! Quickly get up everybody!"

Pushing this and shaking that, everybody finally wobbled awake.

Xing Ao said with sleepy eyes, "What is it Zhang Gong? Let me sleep some more. It isn't even bright out yet."

"That's right. What are doing so early?"

Discontent voices resounded throughout the camp.

I smiled and suddenly said with a loud voice, "I found a way to enter the barrier."

Xiu Si was the first to recover after I startled everybody. "Really? We can really enter the barrier?"

"Yes. We're able to enter the barrier. Now hurry up and get up you lazy slobs. We're going now."

Dong Ri let out a happy squeal and leaped up. "Zhang Gong, how did you do it?"

I explained how I connected with the barrier and the events following that.

"Zhang Gong, we don't know how long this barrier has been here. I suppose that it was created by the gods. It seems that your luck is outrageously good. Let's go. Otherwise that elder will change his mind."

"Hehe. No need to pull. Let's go."

Everyone once again arrived in front of the barrier. After placing their

hands on it, everyone began transmitting respectful, peaceful and warm feelings. Suddenly, the barrier began disappearing from where their hands were.

We all looked at each other in dismay while simultaneously cheering. We all deeply bowed towards the place where the barrier was before, then afterwards we headed inwards with lightning speed.

# Chapter 40: Forest Giants

Finally we entered. Everyone had a feeling of clarity.

By dawn, we had already ventured about 3 to 4 kilometers into the Forest of Gods. “Everyone slow down. Grandpa Barrier said there were dangers here.” I urged everyone to be careful.

We were surrounded by trees that reached the sky. Was the holy sword really here?

“Everyone wait a moment. It seems there is danger.” I suddenly felt an air of danger. No, it should be said that Xiao Jin felt danger and then told me. Do we dare approach something that could even frighten Xiao Jin?

We unanimously agreed to look around but we didn’t find anything. However, the feeling of danger Xiao Jin passed on to me grew more intense.

Zhan Hu pointed at a meadow and suddenly said, “That’s abnormal. Take a careful look at the ground.”

Looking at where his finger pointed, the ground was covered in grass and there was nothing abnormal about it. However, observing it carefully, it almost seemed the short grass was slightly trembling. No, it really was slightly trembling!

The experienced Xiu Si lay flat on his stomach with his ear pressed against the ground.

I hastily asked, “How is it?”

Xiu Si waved his hand in the air wanting me to stop bothering him.

After a short moment, Xiu Si jumped up from the ground, and with a pale face said, “Not good, it seems there are unknown creatures approaching us from all directions. From the sounds, I can roughly determine there is still a distance of two kilometers between us. I fear their size is not small as their footsteps are quite heavy.”

Dong Ri frightfully said, “What are we going to do?”

Everyone was lost in thought.

Big Brother Zhan Hu resolutely said, “Let’s find an area relatively crowded with trees. We can’t let them attack us from all directions. It seems they’ve already surrounded us so all we can do now is hope for them to be weak.”

Zhan Hu’s proposal obtained everyone’s unanimous approval. We quickly found a small area tightly surrounded by trees.

Xiu Si suggested, “When they come, everyone should form a small circle and individually block the gaps. Zhang Gong, you should fire magic from the center.”

“Alright, Dong Ri’s skill is also different and will be in the center. Xing Ao and Xiu Si should form a group with Big Brother and Gao De in another. Everyone supports each other.”

As we finished planning, we could already hear the sound of those distinct footsteps. Our hearts were pounding. What were they?

Eventually we saw them. Everyone could not help but look at each other in dismay and swallow a breath of cold air.

Rows of closely packed giants walked toward us. They were not small in number. They looked as if they were carved out of a mold. They had a height of about two and half meters. Their whole bodies were made of stone. From the gap in the trees, they steadily approached us step by step. As they drew near we could hear them repeat, “Eliminate the intruders. Eliminate the intruders.”

No way! This is too frightening. What are those things? Stone Giants?

As they approached us, Zhan Hu let out a long whistle and we prepared to attack.

During this desperate moment, my mind was extraordinarily clear. “We cannot die like this, passively defending until the last man. We don’t know how many there are and there is no longer a path of retreat. We should rush towards the depths of the forest. Big Brother and Xiu Si should open up a path in front. Xing Ao and Gao De will guard our rear.

Dong Ri and I will support from the middle.”

The stone giants were already in front of us. I shouted at once, “Everyone, charge!”

Big Brother Zhang Hu took the lead. With longsword in hand, he used battle spirit to send out a white ray of light toward the giants in front. The giants lifted their arms in an attempt to resist his attack. Could they really block Big Brother, whose skill neared the level of a radiant knight? White light flashed. “Ka cha” the sound of snapping. The stone giants were split in two by Zhan Hu and fell to halves in concert.

Big Brother Zhan Hu’s bold and powerful strike greatly improved our morale. Xiu Si used a similar technique to break apart a giant.

“Light Elements, my friends, form a shield of light and resist the enemy’s invasion.” I immediately exert a shield of light for everyone and in passing I used light elements to send a blade of energy to dispose of a giant behind us.

Like that, we sank into a hard battle. I was the most busy. There were still quite a lot ahead of us. Big Brother and Xiu Si’s powerful battle spirit rapidly disposed of seven to eight of the stone giants. However, our rear and sides were much more dangerous. After all as Gao De and Xing Ao skills were a bit lacking, it was difficult to support the rear defense.

This won’t do. At this speed, it is simply impossible to rush through this army of giants.

I called out within my mind, “Xiao Jin, help.”

Without warning, Xiao Jin’s majestic figure appeared in front of everyone. His appearance immediately dwarfed the tall image of the giants.

Xiao Jin let out a sky shaking dragon’s roar and spout out white dragon’s breath from his large mouth. He immediately cleared a passage of about five meters wide.

I violently bellowed, “Xiao Jin opened up a path! Everyone break through their rear!”

Xiao Jin's formidable physical attacks had great effect. With only the sweeps of his tail and swipes of his claws, the surrounding stone giants were completely overpowered. Naturally at the same time, I could feel Xiao Jin's magic power quickly deplete. Everyone defended me at the center while following Xiao Jin's lightning fast forward charge. I continuously sent magic power through the connection between Xiao Jin and me.

Had Xiao Jin already completely matured, we would have been able to mount his back and fly away. It was a pity that currently, he could only carry the weight of two people at most. Even if Xiu Si and Zhan Hu could persist by flying out, there would be two graves left behind. This was something that none of us could accept. Also, it wouldn't necessarily succeed. Therefore, no one had bothered to suggest as such.

The seconds and minutes passed as one after another, Stone Giants were smashed by our formidable strength. Our deadly rush had already traveled at least a kilometer. However, the surrounding stone giants did not appear to have lessened one bit. Although the strength of my magic power had increased by a bit, the burden of Xiao Jin's requirements over this long length of time had gradually exhausted me. Xiao Jin was currently riddled with wounds. His movements were already no longer as vigorous and lively as the beginning. Panting roughly for air, he could only barely struggle to maintain the front line. The others were also in dire condition. Big Brother Zhan Hu's sword had snapped and he was at present painfully supporting himself with a branch. Apart from me, everyone had all suffered heavy wounds.

To continue in this fashion, would have everyone leave a grave behind.

"Dong Ri, Gao De, Xing Ao, all of you mount Xiao Jin, use your spirit to lighten your body. Big Brother and Xiu Si, fly up. I'll endure for a time. All of you, quickly go!"

Zhan Hu used all of his might to chop down a stone giant and madly roared, "Out of the question! I definitely cannot leave you alone without a care."

I furiously said, “Quickly, leave! Don’t tell me you want this place to be our grave?”

## Chapter 41: Fortunate Passage

I gathered what little magic power I had left and began to chant, “Oh Light Elements, my great friends, I request of you, use your power to become an endless radiance and transform into little stars, annihilate the enemies before you.” This was my strongest large scale attack spell, rank 8 light magic, Bright Stars’ Shine.

Although it was daytime, I could still see specks of white light gathering toward me. It surrounded my body, turning into a ball of golden light; I slowly floated from the ground. When I floated about five meters off the ground, the ball of light suddenly burst and released golden starlight amongst the wide expanse. The stone giants within a hundred meters were completely enveloped by the starlight. As it passed through their solid bodies, open cavities were left behind. The stone giants within 100 meters were completely annihilated. This had created a brief moment of safety.

While I was in the air, I spat out a mouthful of blood from my excessive use of magic power and dropped down. A golden light flashed and Xiao Jin caught me on his back.

A hundred meters away, I saw the stone giants slowly approaching. I shouted through clenched teeth, “Xiao Jin, use the last of your power and bring everyone away, quickly!”

Xiao Jin let out a sound of lament, clearly unwilling to leave me.

Everyone had already come over and crowded around. Everyone was injured, we bitterly smiled at one another.

I urgently said, “Quickly leave! Otherwise it’ll be too late.”

Zhan Hu smiled, saying, “Foolish Little Brother, do you think we still have the strength to fly out? I’m afraid your magic beast is also unable to carry anyone. Look at his wing.”

Sure enough, Xiao Jin’s left wing had a large wound. It seems he could not fly.

Distressed, I said, “Don’t tell me everyone wants this place to be their grave? Blame me. Blame me for having you follow me. Blame me for not listening to Grandpa Barrier’s words and having everyone be buried with me. I am unworthy of you. If I had you leave at the beginning perhaps you still would have been able to escape.” Remorseful tears flowed down my cheeks.

Xing Ao scolded, “Enough. Zhang Gong, we are all good brothers. Although we could live together, is dying together so bad? We’ll just organize another Brilliant Battle Squadron in the afterlife and sweep across the world of ghosts.” With this said, he tightly grasped my hand.

Xiu Si said, “Xing Ao is correct. We are forever brothers. Besides, you did nothing wrong.”

Xiao Jin lowered his body and licked me with his tongue. Closing his eyes, he snuggled against me. It is clear that he wanted to die together with me.

Everyone joined hands together. A strong sense of companionship filled our hearts. We saw the stone giants have already reached 50 meters of us, all of them announcing the declaration of certain death. At this time, resistance was already meaningless. Nobody spoke a word more and waited together for death to arrive.

The giants gradually grew closer.

40 meters... 30 meters... 20 meters... 10 meters... 5 meters...

We glanced at each other, then we closed our eyes.

Not a minute had passed. Baffled, I thought, ‘How am I still not dead? I am not afraid of death. The others were trembling as they waited for death.’

Unable to bear the impatience, I opened my eyes. I was stunned by the scene before me.

It was the same as if we had just entered the Forest of Gods. How dense. How beautiful. The environment was filled with ancient trees that reached the sky. However, the bloodthirsty giants disappeared without a

sound. If everyone no longer had the same injuries as before, perhaps I could then reason I was no longer alive.

Similarly, they could no longer wait and one by one everyone opened their eyes. They were all stunned by the scene before them.

After quite a while, we finally reacted. We simultaneously roared from the joy of escaping mortal danger.

I loudly yelled, “We aren’t dead! We aren’t dead!”

Xiao Jin turned into a gold light and returned to my body.

“What is going on? How did those giants disappear?”

“Could it be their time ended?”

“Regardless, nobody died. It is as such.”

We all sat on the floor and leaned against the large trees. With my mind cleared, I said, “The most important thing right now is to immediately recover our strength.”

Xiu Si took out the rations and water while I took out some medical supplies from my dimensional pocket. Everyone bound their wounds, ate their respective rations and dizzily lied down. We were extremely tired.

Not knowing how long we slept, we all woke up. Everyone’s strength recovered a bit. I also felt much more comfortable.

It was already late. We had finished eating our rations and sat around the open fire.

I broke the silence first, “It would be better to not advance. Let’s travel back.”

Zhan Hu said, “No way. We all traveled here with much difficulty. We absolutely cannot give up halfway.”

“However, I do not want anyone to continue accompanying me on my adventure. You should all go back. I’ll complete my mission by myself.”

Xiu Si angrily said, “Zhang Gong, who do you take us for? Are we really so fearful of death? Is there anyone here who here wishes to leave?”

Xing Ao loudly said, “Xiu Si words are right. We aren’t shirking cowards.”

I looked to the left and then to the right. To my surprise, no one was willing to leave. I sighed and stood up. Then I deeply bowed towards everyone. “Thank you all. You are my greatest brothers.” Emotional tears flowed down.

Dong Ri also stood and embraced my shoulders, “Zhang Gong, what are you doing? We are all brothers. Besides, we too want to witness the holy sword.”

Zhan Hu broke the heavy mood and changed the subject, saying, “We should plan our next move.”

Xiu Si said, “I feel that everyone should first recover from their injuries and reach their peak condition. Then we will continue onward. This way, it will be a bit safer.”

I nodded, “Right. I think so too. We still don’t know what other dangers lie ahead.”

Zhan Gu said, “I also agree. We should cut down the surrounding trees to make an encirclement. Then we’ll take turns keeping watch. Everyone else will go to sleep.”

After ten days of rest and organization, everyone had finally recovered to their peak condition. After my previous exertion, Xiao Jin seems to mature a bit. He could already absorb a bit of energy from the world. With this, he can accompany me in battles for a longer period of time. The gold sphere in my body felt more stable than before. It flashed a pure gold inside my body. My magic mimicry attacks (Spells in which I directly use magic power to transform it into my intended form without incantations are called magic mimicry attacks) were much easier to use than before. It seems I have improved. Teacher Di was right, only with continuous temperament could I obtain even greater progress.

## Chapter 42: Looking for the Holy Sword

Everyone changed to a different extent. Dong Ri's progress was especially fast. Many had assumed that his strength was the weakest. Everyone could give him pointers. I felt that during the fight for life or death with the stone giants, Dong Ri fully realized what he was lacking. He humbly asked everyone for their guidance. After only ten days of tireless diligence, he had felt as if he had shed his mortal body and exchanged his bones. His strength had already caught up to Gao De and Xing Ao.

Everyone packed up to continue the treasure hunt.

After three days passed without an incident, the Forest of Gods seemed to be endless.

I froze in my tracks as I felt a slight fluctuation in magic. "Everyone wait, there's a magic fluctuation nearby."

Taking out our weapons, I stood in the center with a wry smile, "It won't be the same as last time right?" Although everyone kept silent, I knew that fear still persisted in our hearts from the last encounter with the stone giants.

I didn't get an answer. With my eyes closed, I focused my Gold Dan and used it to search for the source of the magic fluctuation.

Everyone kept a tight formation as they followed me northwest.

The closer we got, the greater the intensity of the magic. It somehow gave off a feeling of peacefulness.

Walking along, we encounter a tall mountain.

With confidence I said, "It's definitely this mountain. Let's take a look."

Ancient trees towered around us. We cautiously approached the base of the mountain. Surprisingly, the base contained nothing but grass. Even the trees did not exist within 50 meters of the mountain.

Looking at it, it was just a normal mountain. There wasn't even a hermit's cave in it, yet I still felt that the fluctuation of magic came from

here.

I instructed everyone to encircle me as I sat down cross-legged. I focused my spirit, using it to seek out the source of the magical energy. It seems that the wave after wave of magical energy was being released from the heart of the mountain.

I stood up, with a frown I said, “The magical energy is definitely coming from the mountain, but there isn’t a single cave here.”

With a pat on my shoulder, Zhan Hu said “Let’s circle around the mountain, see if we find anything new.” Since no other options were available, I nodded.

We spent two days checking every possible area that might lead to an entrance, but we couldn’t even find a single crack.

In the end we arrived back to the meadows at the front of the mountain. Everyone’s spirits were worn out. I was anxious, but there didn’t seem to be a solution.

I paced back and forth on the grass. Suddenly I felt that the middle of the meadow was different from the edge. I briskly walked towards the edge of the meadow to confirm my gut feeling. The edge of the meadow was very soft, almost as if it was the same as the floor of a forest. However, the meadow had an area in the center about ten square meters that was very hard. Could it be...? I couldn’t help but feel a burst of enlightenment from within my heart.

“Everyone, I think I’ve found it.”

Hearing what I said, everyone rushed over. Xing Ao impatiently said, “What did you find Zhang Gong?”

“There’s nothing at first glance, but this area is especially hard. Something is definitely underneath.”

Everyone exchanged glances at what I had said before they took out their weapons and began clearing the knee-deep grass.

Soon the grass within a 10 meter radius was cleared. A magic hexagram

with strange patterns was now visible. It seems that the grass grew from the cracks of the patterns.

Since I was the only one who knew magic, everyone looked my way with expectant eyes. Smiling, I said, "If I'm not wrong, this is teleportation magic, but even I don't know where it teleports to."

Xiu Si said, "Then let's give it a try, maybe it will warp us to the Holy Sword ."

With an awkward smile I said, "I don't know how to use it. I learned light magic, but I haven't really learned much teleportation magic."

Gao De asked in shock, "Then what do want us to do? Are we supposed to leave this mountain of treasure empty handed?"

Smiling, I said, "Don't worry, even though I never used it, I still have a way of finding out how." With this said, I took out the book Teacher Di gave me from my dimensional pocket.

"Don't worry everyone. You should first take a rest. I'll go investigate."

Everyone looked at each other with a bitter smile. In a pessimistic tone, Big Brother Zhan Hu said, "It won't be possible to learn it in such short moment."

Scratching my head, I said, "There's not much we can do, might as well try something. With brother's creativeness, we will definitely succeed. Haha..."

Everybody went quiet. If it wasn't for this sliver of hope, I was afraid a fight was going to break out. With a forced laugh I started to look for information regarding the magic hexagram using the book.

Although I said that we might as well try something, this was the first time I seriously tried using the book. Even though I was quite lazy as a child, I was still able to understand it.

At the start, my goal was to decipher the magic from the book, but as I kept reading, I wasn't able to stop, it expanded my horizon of what I could do with magic. I was completely immersed in a sea of magic.

This book was densely packed with everything from the principles of magic spells to the applications in real combat. It was simply a priceless treasure. Not only was the language exceptionally concise, it had only needed a few sentences to introduce the principles of magic. All of the book was written in this way. Magic arrays, as the name implies, uses the battle arrays to set up various kinds of elements as its base. With a complex magic array, it was possible to have the elements resonate with nature and cast spells that were impossible to cast without them. Magic arrays normally include: barrier, teleportation, amplification, support, and unique magic. The higher the rank was of a magic array, the more that was demanded of the user as well as the complexity of the magic array.

# Chapter 43: The Secret Cave Adventure

No one disturbed me, while I had been exceptionally focused on my studies. Aside from eating and sleeping, I spent nearly ten hours everyday studying.

At last, after three days of arduous struggling, I had a basic understanding of the contents of the book. In other words, I had grasped the basics of magic arrays.

I comfortably stretched my body and said, “I’m finally finished. I’m so tired.” I stood up and began moving my body, after all, it had been three days since I had last exercised my body.

Everyone came over and crowded around. Zhan Hu asked, “How about it? Have you found a way through?”

“The book didn’t have any information about this specific magic array.” I said, embarrassed.

Everyone looked at each other in dismay. Xing Ao said, “Impossible. Then we really have stop here.”

“Don’t worry everyone. Although I can’t tell you the specifics of this magic array, I

reckon the use of this magic array should be similar enough. Let’s test it out.”

I made everyone disperse first before walking into the center of the magic array’s hexagram. After reading the book, I knew that a magic array requires a large amount of magic power from a magic source to activate. The most crucial point is that the mage must have enough mana to completely satisfy the needs of the magic array, otherwise the magic array won’t activate and would even bring harm to the mage. Fortunately, my magic as a magister should be sufficient.

“This magic array has long existed since ancient times. By using my magic as a medium, I’ll be able to open it.” The book had said that a magic array’s core was at its center. I collected light elements into my

right hand and, with an incantation, poured them into the core of the array. The array's core was like a bottomless pit, quickly swallowing my magic power. Dim golden rays of light rose from the huge magic array. I did my utmost to hasten the condensation of the surrounding light elements into my golden sphere, and unceasingly inserted it into the core. However, my magic power continued to weaken with the intensity of the insertion . The magic array's golden shape grew increasingly brilliant.

Right as the oil, which was fueling my lamp, was about to dry up, the magic array ceased absorbing my magic power. The moment I released a giant sigh of relief, an unprecedentedly dazzling radiance burst forth from the array. Seeing this, I knew that the magic array was about to activate so I shouted to the others, "Quickly! Everyone quickly enter the hexagram! The array is about to activate." I immediately began running towards one of the corners of the hexagram because I knew that only the six corners of the hexagram provided the greatest amount of protection against the magical array.

The group's shadows parted, flashing to the other five corners of the hexagram. Just as we stepped on, we felt the sky spin. The magic array's golden rays of light faded away with us into the air.

Whoosh. We all fell onto the floor at the same time. Thanks to the gold light we could see a bit of our surroundings in the pitch black darkness. 'We should be in the belly of the mountain.' The gold light in the center began to grow dimmer and dimmer before we were suddenly enveloped within complete darkness.

"Everyone don't move yet. Stay on guard while I recover my magic power for a bit. Then we'll continue forward."

"Light elements, my friends, I beseech of you to illuminate the earth." This was the first spell I had ever learned, illumination.

A light sparked from my hand and the environment shone as if it were day. I first saw everyone sitting in a single circle around me. Nobody had completely adapted to the dazzling light yet. The cave was as tall as two people and about five meters wide. The area ahead was so dark, we could

not tell how deep it reached. The entire cave's walls and floors were abnormally smooth. It was obviously polished.

Everyone began cautiously surveying the surroundings. Xiu Si said, "It seems that we're in the belly of the mountain. The Holy Sword should be in here."

Big Brother Zhan Hu said, "Everyone be cautious . Xiu Si and I will lead the way. Zhang Gong will be at the center. Gao De, Xing Ao and Dong Ri will be in the back. Let's go."

We kept formation as we walked onward. The illumination was only able to light up 10 meters ahead, so we treaded carefully forward. However, there seemed to be no end. We had already walked for an unknown amount of time and the circumstances had not changed one bit.

"Wait a moment everyone." I felt that there was something wrong with the situation so I had everyone halt. I took my magic staff out of my dimensional bag and continued, "I don't know if my feeling is right, but I think we're going in circles. I'll leave behind this seal and we'll see if we come across it again later."

Xiu Si said, "I feel the same. Let's hasten our pace."

We sped forward. Sure enough, in approximately half the time, we returned to where I had placed my magic staff. I picked up my staff from the ground and scowled."

Dong Ri said, "What are we going to do? Could it be that this is a labyrinth?

I said, "No, this shouldn't be a labyrinth. It seems we still haven't found the crucial location. There should be some kind of mechanism." With this said, I sat cross legged on the ground and released my spiritual energy to look for a way out. I felt my surroundings were made up of entirely impermeable mountain rock. Only the ground seemed to be hollow.

I stood up and had everyone stand apart. I pointed to the ground and said, "The ground is contrastingly empty. Let's try and see if we can break a hole through."

Big Brother Zhan Hu said, “I will.” He waved his knight’s sword and slashed with white battle spirit toward the ground. Bang. Dust filled the air.

Before the dust had even settled, the entire cave began shaking. I shouted, “This isn’t good! Everyone gather here quickly and concentrate your powers.” After everyone gathered around me, I cast a protective cover on all of us. In return, they all used their battle spirits to form a formidable energy cover. Right as they finished forming their energy covers, the floor beneath our feet crumbled away. We all fell into the bottomless abyss together.

Not knowing how far we dropped, the energy cover eventually hit the ground. Hong. The energy cover holding the six of us shattered and everyone scattered. The formidable impact made us all receive varying concussions, knocking us all out

I felt myself completely sink into a dark vortex. My surroundings had many vague things revolving around me. The feeling of dizziness circled around me.

Suddenly a warm voice called out to me, “Child. Come back. Don’t give up. Come back!”

A warm power surrounded me and the spinning surroundings gradually slowed down. Soon after, everything faded away and once again, I sunk into the darkness. Yet, my mind was gradually recovering.

## Chapter 44: Tale of the Gods

It hurt so much. It felt like my entire body was crushed. Although my body was feeling great pain, the warmth was very comfortable. A wave of warm energy comforted me and restored my damaged body. What was this?

I slowly opened my eyes and was stunned by the sight before me. I was inside an extraordinarily large shrine with many statues of gods. The floor spanned at least 10,000 square meters and the roof was over a hundred meters tall. Many large precious stones were embedded in the ceiling and walls. The main hall shone as if it were daytime. What a grand building!

We were all completely covered in light. It seems that they still hadn't woken up and that the warm energy came from the covering of light.

I tried to move, but was met with an unbearable pain. My body spasmed with pain. I tried to scream out in pain, but my voice just did not come out. When I panicked, I fainted again.

I don't know how much time passed before I woke up. Dong Ri's voice sounded in my ear. "Zhang Gong has awakened!"

I opened my eyes and realized that everyone was surrounding me. I moved my body, which already did not hurt anymore. It looks like that light had treated my wound.

"How is everyone?" I weakly asked.

"No problem, everyone is fine." Dong Ri answered.

I smiled and said, "That's great! It seems like we are in a God's shrine. This should be our destination. Have you found the Holy Sword?"

Xing Ao said, "We just woke up not long ago and roughly surveyed the area, but we have not found it."

Dong Ri helped me up. I inhaled deeply before checking my body's condition. My magic power had fully recovered. How did that happen? Did that light change my body?

I hurriedly asked the team, “Do you feel like something is different?”

Gao De said, “Yes, really different. It looks like my body has changed a lot. My six senses have increased greatly. However, my skills are still the same as before, but I feel that if I continue to train, my speed of improvement will increase greatly.”

Zhang Hu nodded his head and said, “That’s right! I feel the same. It is as though I have shed my mortal body and exchanged my bones.”

Just as I was about to say something, a benevolent voice suddenly resounded throughout the whole shrine. “I welcome you all, kind children.” It was a familiar voice.

We looked around at our surroundings, but we still could not figure out where the voice was coming from. The voice seemed to be coming from all directions at the same time.

The benevolent voice echoed again, “Stop searching. You will never find me. Otherwise, did you forgot who let you all in?”

Ah~ I remembered. I softly said, “Are you the grandpa barrier?”

“Haha, you remembered. However, I am not the grandpa barrier. Actually, to you, I should be called the God King.”

His words dumbfounded us. Dong Ri stuttered and said, “G-G-God King?”

“Correct. Could it be that you thought you would be able to breakthrough my barrier without my permission?”

We actually met a god. If that is the case, would he blame us for searching for him to obtain his Holy Sword? That should not be the case as the previous light was definitely released by him. If he had intended to harm us, he wouldn’t have saved us. However, I can’t be too complacent. I should be more vigilant. Thinking this, I said, “God King, we are here to find the Holy Sword. If you do not wish for us to obtain the Holy Sword, we will leave immediately. I just beg for you to let everyone else go. I shall shoulder the blame.”

Everyone heard what I said and began to comment angrily. Zhan Hu said, “No! If someone must be blamed, you should blame me instead. I am the eldest here. They are here under my encouragement.” Everyone else also pulled the blame back onto themselves. At this moment, the God King did not say anything. It was as if he was admiring our argument.

I shouted, “Stop fighting! You are here because of me. You are my best brothers and friends. I will definitely not allow you to be harmed for my sake.”

That benevolent voice echoed again, “Children, stop fighting. You are all good children and are not in the wrong. You were heavily tested before you arrived here. As you entered the God’s forest, you were all tested on your bravery, power, wisdom and temperament. If you had not passed, you would not have been able to come here.”

“That is to say, then, that you agree to bestow the Holy Sword upon us?”

“You don’t need to be so anxious Zhang Gong. Let me tell you all a story first.”

We all lifted our heads and quietly listened to the God King’s story.

“A long time ago, on this world, there was an extremely powerful race. They possessed wisdom, as great as that of the humans. It is not known how they were born because it happened too long ago. After generations of evolution, their race was really strong. As they were immortal, they lost their ability to reproduce. The total number of the clan remained at about three hundred. They were kind hearted, pure. They were also a species that loved all that is beautiful. They were known as the God Clan by later generations.”

After hearing this, I couldn’t help but let out an “Ahhh.”

The God King continued to say, “In the whole world’s surface, there were only 300 of them. It was really extremely lonely. After researching, they created all kinds of new species to coexist with them. In that way, they thought that they could brighten and beautify the world. They continued to create the highly intelligent human race, freedom loving magic race, kind hearted Nature Elves, simple and sincere dwarves, power

loving giant race, and the powerful dragon race. All of the races had their own good points. A swarm of races all over the continents unceasingly appeared, forming a flourishing scene. The God Clan became an object of reverence for all of the other clans, thus having an eminent position among them.”

The God King stopped speaking for a while, before saying, “Just when the whole world was filled with beauty, peace and harmony, out of nowhere, an evil clan emerged. They are known as the Demon Clan. They had a lot of powers that were not from the God’s Clan. Moreover, their numbers were large. Their mind set was full of thoughts for invasion, to terrorize, kill and steal. When they appeared in the world, they killed many races. Under the God Clan’s leadership, all of the clans formed an alliance to fight against the Demon Clan’s invasion.”

At this moment, the God king looked to really be in pain. It was as though he had returned to that moment pervaded by smoke.

## Chapter 45: God's Mission

"What was the outcome?" I asked anxiously.

The benevolent voice resounded once again, "Children, do not be anxious and listen to my words carefully. The Demon Clan was very strong, with number greater than the God Clan's. However, the combined allied races exceeded the Demon Clan. It was only after the brave sacrifices of many warriors from the various allied races with the God Clan that the flames of the Demon Clan's rampage were suppressed. Under the leadership of the God Clan, all of the clans launched a final attack against the Demon Clan and finally annihilated them. The Leader of the God Clan and the King of the Demon Clan also fought against each other, resulting in both suffering serious injuries."

However, the God Clan's Leader still managed to seal the Demon King. After the battle, only a few members of the God Clan survived. All of the allied clans involved in the battle suffered great repercussions, especially the Dragon Clan. The Dragon Clan was extremely formidable when first created, so their reproduction rate was quickly restricted by the God Clan. After the battle, the Dragon Clan had decreased in number and today, only about 200 dragons remain. The God Clan slowly faded from history; while the human race, Magic race and Beast race endlessly flourished and slowly became the new masters of the whole world. The story comes to an end here."

[TLC Ruze: The God Clan are the Protoss according to Google Translate. It looks like they finally won after building more pylons.]

"What happened to the God Clan afterwards?" Dong Ri questioned.

"After listening to this story, you should know that I am the God King and one of the last few members of the God Clan. We finally sealed the Demon King with the assistance of the God Clan Alliance after the year long war but suffered serious injuries. To this day, even after hundreds of thousands of years have passed, we have still not fully recovered. Currently, you may be wondering how the story I just told you is related to obtaining the Holy Sword. I told you this story so you can understand the

reason why I am now requesting your help.”

Xing Ao unusually said, “Do you also need our help?”

Zhan Hu, who was standing at the side, pulled Xing Ao closer and interrupted him by whispering, “Don’t make irresponsible remarks!”

The God King laughed and said, “It does not matter, what he says is true. I do indeed need your help. Actually, you are also helping yourselves as this matter relates to the whole world’s life or death.”

Ah~ thinking that this was a really serious situation, I asked, “In the end, what happened? Did the Demon King break through your seal? Even your God Clan barely managed to win, what can we humans do to help?”

“You are half right. This does involve the Demon King, but he has not broken free from my seal yet. He has slowly regained his strength from hundreds of thousands of years of cultivation after I sealed him. He has begun to continuously attack the barriers of the residences of Gods. Once, one of the God Clan’s member was careless and allowed a bit of the demonic energy to escape. That demonic energy contained a portion of the Demon King’s power and awareness so it started to cause harm to the world. We cannot both keep the Demon King from escaping and also go out to fight his clone that is seeking to destroy the world. Thus, I am asking you to find and eliminate his clone.”

“Can we really do it? How strong is he?” Xiu Si asked.

“Although that is only a small portion of his power, it is indeed still very strong. It is not something that you can fight against with your current capability. You must continue to improve your skills, before you will be capable of eliminating him. If you can eliminate the Demon King’s clone, we can gather all of our powers to eliminate the remaining demon power in the seal to make him perish forever.”

“Why were you all unable to annihilate him initially?” I asked curiously.

The God King sighed and said, “The war left us too weakened and if we had eliminated him at that moment, the Demon Clan would have perished. However, at that time, I believed that all of the clans possessed

the right to survive and that as time flowed, the Demon King might be redeemed. During that moment of soft heartedness, I decided to only seal him. However, I didn't expect that even after thousands of years, his innately evil character had not weakened at all. Currently, it turns out that it is an extremely gruelling task to try and eliminate him. If you can eliminate his clone that has escaped into this world, it will decrease his total power and allow us to annihilate him once and for all."

As we listened to this point, we finally understood what the God King meant. Thinking in my heart, does this not mean we are going to throw our lives away? Who knows how strong the Demon King really is?"

In order to escape the situation, I asked, "Can we really find him? Is he out in the world causing harm again?"

The God King saw through my heart and said, "Child, continuing to avoid the situation is not a solution, the only solution is to face him. The Demon King has already spent many years in the world preparing. It is not just him; he has a lot of subordinates. They are all moving in secret. Just like the human and magic races, the reason why the beast race fights is because of the Demon King's instigation from the shadows. Heeding the call of the Demon King, they are trying to break the peace and harmony in the world. Once the Demon King starts to rule the world, the other races will be destroyed, including our God Clan."

So it was this terrible, I had not even opened my mouth before Zhan Hu started to speak. "Please be reassured, we will definitely annihilate the Demon King." Since he had already said that, all I could do was agree to help.

"If we plan on eliminating him, when should we start?" I asked.

The God King said, "You do not need to be impatient in this matter, and you also do not need to find him. When the world goes to war, he will appear. In this period of time before the war you need to work hard at training and improving yourself, and to assemble many people that share the same feelings and ambitions as you do. You must improve your abilities! As you are the whole world's hope, you must work hard!"

Except me, everyone else was already burning with anger and one after another, they declared their heroic aspirations. Even though I was a little scared, for our survival I definitely could not cower.

"Will you be giving us the Holy Sword to increase our strength?" It was necessary to negotiate some terms with the God King so as to increase our survival rate and safety while carrying out the task.

"Little child, don't worry, I will definitely give you some items to improve your strength. When you first arrived, I used my God Powers to help you shed your mortal bodies and exchange your bones. During your next training sessions, your strength will improve twice as much with only half the effort needed. Now, I will give each of you a few more good items. Listen to me, go and stand in front of the center of the God's image."

"Zhan Hu, I shall grant you the protection armor of a war god, I hope for you to become a genuine war god." Zhan Hu walked in front of the lofty image of God and a golden light shone on his body. After the golden light flashed, a dark blue body armor and helmet appeared on Zhan Hu's body. A three pronged helmet appeared on his head. In the center of the helmet's crest, there was an oval, blue colored gemstone. There were four layers to the shoulder protection. The top layer was in line with his shoulders. At every succeeding layer, it was shorter than the previous layer.

The last two layers slightly pointed downwards. The chest armor was also large. At the center of his chest, there was an oval, blue coloured gem similar to the one on his helmet, but much larger. For the abdomen part of the chest armor, it had a similar shape as Zhan Hu's muscles. His legs and the arms had also been surrounded by scale-like pieces of armor, and even his hands had been completely covered. Lastly, there was a black cape that appeared on his back. With Zhan Hu standing two meters tall, he showed a formidable and majestic look. He really looked as if a war god had just been revitalized.

## Chapter 46: God's reward

Zhan Hu looked at his new armor and tried moving in it. Anyone could see that he was very excited. He fell to his knees and respectfully kowtowed towards the God King three times, with his head touching the ground each time, before saying, "Your Majesty, I will definitely not let you down. The eradication of the Demon King will become my only goal."

The God King praised him and said, "Good, you must do well in your cultivation so that you will be worthy of using this War God's armor."

Zhan Hu walked back to the team and said, "Wearing this armor, I feel like my whole body is filled with power. It is weightless and the feeling when wearing it is just amazing."

Everyone looked at him enviously and wondered what they would get.

The God King spoke again, "Next, Xiu Si."

When he heard the God King's command, Xiu Si immediately walked in front of the God statue. The God King said, "Xiu Si, I shall grant you the Sky God's horn. By using it, you can recover your life's vitality, so long as you are not yet dead."

The same golden light flashed, and a small, delicate horn suddenly appeared in Xiu Si's hand.

"As for how to use it, you will have to rely on your own abilities to figure it out."

Xiu Si bowed towards the God King and respectfully said, "Thank you for your gift, Your Majesty." After saying that, he walked back to where the team was standing. He looked at the horn that had a spiralling line of shining golden light on it and fiddled with it admiringly .

"Next, Xing Ao." After hearing his name, Xing Ao moved as quickly as possible to stand in front of the statue. With his eyes filled with expectation, he looked at the God statue.

"Xing Ao, I shall grant you the Titan God's hammer. Although you have been using a heavy sword, once you start using the hammer, your power

should increase greatly.” A golden light flashed, and a 1.5 meter long handle and 50 cm in diameter hammer suddenly appeared in Xing Ao’s hand. Judging from his relaxed posture, it seemed that the hammer was not too heavy.

“Thank you for your gift, Your Majesty.” Xing Ao was extremely satisfied with his new weapon and ran back to the team in high spirits.

“Gao De.” The God King spoke again and Gao De elatedly ran to stand in front of the God statue.

“I shall grant you the Lightning God’s shield. You can use it to block any kind of physical attack.” The golden light flashed, and a small, exquisite shield with a diameter of ten centimeters suddenly appeared on Gao De left arm.

[ED Note: Think of a Buckler. ]

“Thank you for your gift, Your Majesty.” Gao De looked at his tiny shield and was a little unsatisfied.

[TL Miki: Hey you, don’t underestimate small things. It is powerful !!! \* (like a certain thing in your pants?)]

Dong Ri and I were the only ones left, yet to receive any gift. I could not refrain myself from muttering to myself, why have I not been called out yet? The next one should be me.

“Dong Ri.”

Dong Ri came forward and said, “Yes.”

“I shall grant you the Wind God’s bow. I hope you will bring splendor to the Wind God’s archery.” A golden light flashed, and a small, delicate golden short bow appeared in Dong Ri’s hand.

“Thank you for your gift, Your Majesty.”

“Good. I hope that all of you can fully understand your weapon. You must use your hearts to communicate with them, in order to pull out their true powers. Every Godly weapon has its own special spiritual method. As for how to use it, you will have to rely on your own abilities. Therefore,

you must train harder and improve your strength. You must not become arrogant or impatient. Only then will you not let me down.”

Except for me, everybody bowed at the same time and said, “We shall follow and respect Your Majesty’s tutelage.”

I looked left and right. Everyone had a Godly weapon, only I did not have one. Did I offend the God King just now? I also desperately wanted a Godly weapon.

I asked carefully, “God King, why did I not receive a weapon?”

The God King laughed and said, “And I thought you were not anxious at all, haha.” Could it be that even God could tease people?

I awkwardly scratched my head and said, “I am definitely anxious as the Holy Sword is my purpose for coming here.”

“Good, come forward.” Is it finally my turn? That’s great! I hurriedly ran in front of the God statue, and waited to receive the treasure that I long yearned for.

“I shall grant you the Radiant Holy Sword. I hope that you will use it to lead everyone in annihilating the demons.” That’s just too amazing! With the name of Radiant, it must be of extraordinary power. This was different from everyone else. There was no golden light that shone on me, instead a golden ball slowly flew toward me. I reached my hand out to receive it, but when once it came in front of me, it instantly entered my chest and vanished.

What is going on? I touched my chest. Where is the Radiant Holy Sword? Where is it?

“Stop looking for it, the Radiant Holy Sword is already in your body. However, with your current abilities, you are still incapable of using its power.”

“If that is the case, then why can everyone else use their weapons?”

The God King’s voice rung in my ears, as though I was the only one that could hear it, saying, “They can only use a very small portion of their

Godly weapons' powers. Their Godly weapons are second rank Godly weapons, so they are easier to control. On the other hand, the Radiant Holy Sword used to be my companion sword. I had previously given the sword to the Radiant God's battle angel, Mi Jia Lei, until the great war of the Gods against the demons. For the final victory, he sacrificed himself. At that moment, I took back the sword. Currently, the difference between your power and the Holy Sword's power is significant. Therefore, you will need to allow the Holy Sword to temporarily sleep in your body. Once you obtain sufficient power to use it, it will naturally awaken."

I understand what is going on now. "When will I be able to wield enough power to use it?"

"That will be your next goal. At the west border of the human and Devil lands, there is a place called Sky Splitting Great Valley. You must head there. That year before the Holy God's battle angel, Mi Jia Lei, died, some of the power was shifted there. A magic spell was used to seal the power. You just need to go there and obtain the Holy God's inheritance in order for the Holy Sword to be at its full power. However, you need not be anxious. You still need to work hard on your training. From my estimation, in the coming five years, the Demon King will not have sufficient energy. During this time frame, you have to improve yourself. As your power increases, your chance of receiving the inheritance increases as well."

So it turned out to be like that. I had already gotten the Godly weapon, but I had no way of taking it out for everyone to have a look.

The God King said, "Children, you all have received Godly weapons. I shall now teach you a magic spell. This spell is an important spell that can be used to hold back the demon king. Once your powers are close to the War God's powers, you can then start to practice the spell, but Zhang Gong's requirement to practice the spell with the others will be much higher. He must become a Grand Magister before he can practice the spell together with the team."

I interrupted and said, "What must I accomplish to become a Grand Magister? From what my teacher said before, the inner body has to form

six Gold Dans. Is that all? “

The God King said, “You got only a portion correct. That is when you reach six apertures, which are the Gold Dans you just spoke of, you are certainly entering the grand magister’s realm. However, initially you will only be slightly stronger than a sword saint warrior. You must train until you reach nine apertures. Only then will you become a true grand magister. The nine apertures are not literally the nine Gold Dans you mentioned before. Nine is only a figurative number. It is really when your body does not have any space not possessing a Gold Dan. When your whole body becomes the largest possible Gold Dan, you will finally reach the true realm of a Great Magister. At that point, you will have sufficient Godly powers to fight against the demons.”

The God King once again used a voice only I could hear, and said, “You just need to receive the Holy God’s inheritance. Probably at that time, you will be able to break through to the grand magister’s realm. Therefore, you must head there.”

## Chapter 47: The Forbidden

“Alright, I will definitely head there.” In order to be able to use the Holy Sword’s power and become a Grand Magister, there is no possibility that I will not head there.

“I shall first teach you a spell chant. After that, you will have to figure it out on your own.” After speaking, six golden lights shone from the God’s image, especially aimed at our upper dantian. We all felt as though something was added to our minds.

The God King said, “I have already engraved the spell’s chants in your minds so you will remember them forever.”

After a moment of haziness, a line of small words distinctly appeared. We subconsciously started to read those small words.

Zhan Hu said, “The God King bestowed upon me the War God’s armor. No evil shall pass me for I shall obstruct the evil demons.”

Xiu Si said, “The God King bestowed upon me the Sky God’s horn. My horn’s roar will pierce through the nine heavens.”

Xin Ao said, “The God King bestowed upon me the Titan God’s hammer. I will shake the heavens and move the earth to protect the righteous path”  
Gao De said, “The God King bestowed upon me the Lightning God’s shield. Even ten thousand blades shall not stop me.”

Dong Ri said, “The God King bestowed upon me the Wind God’s bow. My ethereal arrows will flash rapidly and violently.”

I said, “The God King bestowed upon me the Radiant Holy Sword. It shall shine with the soaring radiance of the vault of the heavens.”

“That’s enough, stop chanting. If you continue to chant the spell, you will not be able to stop it. Only by improving yourselves will you start to understand how powerful the spell is. In the God’s Clan, this spell is regarded as a top grade spell. It will be much more powerful than your human’s forbidden spells. Therefore, I shall name it as the top spells of spells- All God’s Awakening Symphony.”

We listened to what the God King told us and stopped chanting the spell. Although the spell was incomplete, we could still imagine how powerful the spell would have been if we had finished the chants.

The God King said, "That will be all. Children, I have already explained and given you everything I wanted to give to you. For the rest of the mission, you will have to rely on your own abilities. I believe that you will definitely be able to annihilate all of the demons, bringing harmony and peace back to the world for all eternity."

At this moment, I was moved as I listened to the God's rousing speech. We all deeply bowed towards the God's image.

The God King said, "It's alright, you do not need to do that. Your Godly weapons can be hidden in your bodies. They rely on the your control of your spiritual power. When you meet the Demon King and his subordinates, I hope that you will not expose your powers too early. Even if you are just training to use the Godly weapons, you have to find an isolated area to train. I shall now send you out of the God's forest. For the next five years, you have to work hard at your training. I plead for you to do just that. After today, this Godly forest will cease to exist and become an ordinary forest. After you leave, I will head back to the God's shrine and join up with the rest of the God Clan's members to strengthen the Demon King's seal. Children, we shall meet again."

We kneeled down and I said to the God's image, "In our heart, you will forever be our God. We will miss you."

The God's King laughed and said, "Wait until you annihilate the Demon King, we will still meet again. By my title as the Gods' King, send the humans and elf before me back to where they came ." A large golden halo shone from the God's image and covered us. With a flash of the light, we had returned to the front of the Gods' forest.

If there were not any signs of the shining Godly weapons in our hands and bodies; it was as though nothing had happened. We looked at each other, feeling as if we had returned to reality again.

Zhan Hu sighed and said, "I did not believe that after this dangerous

experience, we had all actually inherited Godly weapons. Now, we have found our next goal. We must work hard!"

Xiu Si twiddled with the Sky King's bugle horn and said, "That's right! We must not let the Demon King succeed."

"Let's go, we shall visit the Nature Elf village before we head back." I knew that everyone would soon have to split up, as we all have our own personal issues to settle.

"You all try to keep your Godly Weapons inside your bodies. We cannot always bring them around with us. Otherwise, we would be known as Gods that had descended, haha."

Xin Ao brandished his Titan God's hammer and said, "How? My Godly weapon is so big. Can I really keep it in my body?"

I chuckled after hearing what he said. "These Godly weapons can exist as pure energy so they will not take up any space in your bodies. You just need to think of them returning into your bodies."

After saying so, the Wind God's bow in Dong Ri's hands instantly vanished. He elatedly said, "I succeeded!" In order to familiarize himself with the action, he tried to bring it out and send it back in a couple of times. Everyone did as I told them to. After a few moments, they completely mastered the action of summoning their Godly weapons.

The Nature Elves village was just as beautiful as the first time we had arrived. Since it was daytime, the Nature Elves were busy working. By returning here, I felt as though I had come home. Just as we reached the entrance of the village, we were discovered. A young elf flew over and said, "Zhang Gong, you all have returned!"

"That's right! How is the village? Is it alright? Did the dark elves attack again?" I amiably asked him.

"No, they did not dare to come again. Even if they do, they will experience the might of light magic."

"That's right. You should spend more time practicing light magic when you are free. Once light magic combines with your innate abilities, you

will never need to fear them again.”

At this moment, the Nature Elf King brought over four elders and said, “We welcome your safe return. Come, let’s enter the village.”

Only then did I suddenly remember that I was still at the village entrance. We started to follow the Nature Elf King. We passed through the familiar route and reached the conference lounge. Except for the four elder elves, the Nature Elf King made all of the elves leave. The fact that we had gotten Godly weapons was a secret so only the Nature Elf King and the four elders could know.

Nature Elf King asked, “How was it? Did you gain any profits from coming here?”

I told him all about our dangerous experiences, but left out the part where we all got Godly weapons. I just explained the part where the God changed our bodies.

After listening to us, the Nature Elf King and the four elders displayed an expression of reverence. The Nature Elf King said, “I hadn’t expected that you would be approved by the God King. Be at ease, when you have to fight the Demon King, we, the Nature Elves, will also take part. For the world’s peace and harmony, this is what we should do.”

Zhan Hu smiled, “That’s great! With your help, our fighting power will increase. That’s right, do you still have any more of your fruits wine? Can you bring some out?”

The four elders showed fearful expressions, and the third elder said, “I am afraid that at the moment we don’t have any. You drank all of the wine when you were here previously.” Actually, they still had five more bottles of wine, but when I was leaving the village previously, I had asked for them. This time, they really did not have any more wine.

After hearing the third elder’s words, everyone except for me, showed disappointed expressions.

[ TL Miki: sneaky, but smart, Zhang Gong xD]

To stop putting them on the spot, I said, “We would like to rest here for

the day and head back tomorrow. The God King said that we had approximately five years before the war. We also had no knowledge of his plans. During this time frame, we have to work harder in our training as preparations to annihilate the Demon King.”

# Credits

Translator: [Radiant Translations](#)

Epub: [Estevam / dotNOVEL](#)